DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20350-3000

NAVMC DIR 3500.100
C 469
11 Aug 06

NAVMC DIRECTIVE 3500.100

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL, (SHORT TITLE: TANK T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A
(b) MCO 1553.3A
(c) MCO 3400.3F
(d) MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM
(e) MCRP 3-0A
(f) MCRP 3-0B
(g) MCO 1553.2A

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this T&R Manual establishes Core Capability Mission Essential Tasks (MET) for readiness reporting and required events for standardization training of Marines and Navy personnel assigned to the Marine Corps tank battalion. Additionally, it provides tasking for formal schools preparing personnel for service in the Marine Corps tank battalion.

2. Cancellation. MCO 3501.14, MCO 3501.23, and MCO 1510.98B

3. Scope

a. The Core Capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) in this manual is used in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) by all tank battalions for the assessment and reporting of unit readiness. Units achieve training readiness for reporting in DRRS by gaining and sustaining proficiency in the training events in this manual at both collective (unit) and individual levels.

b. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute each MET, and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency in each MET. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps, and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines. Commanders will use reference (c) to incorporate nuclear, biological, and chemical defense training into training plans and reference (d) to integrate operational risk management. References (e) and (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

c. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (g) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual, and provide career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

4. Information. CG, TECOM will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders, and to ensure a current Core Capabilities METL is available for use in DRRS by the Marine Corps tank battalion. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: Commanding General, TECOM (Ground Training Branch C 469), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

5. Command. This Directive is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

GEORGE J. FLYNN
By direction

Distribution: PCN 10303372100

Copy to: 7000260 (2)
8145001 (1)

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL (short title: TANK T&R)

Location: _____
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

TANK T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1 . . . . . OVERVIEW

2 . . . . . MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

3 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK BATTALION

4 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK COMPANY

5 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK PLATOON

6 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING ANTI-TANK TOW PLATOON

7 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING SCOUT PLATOON

8 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING AT-TOW/SCOUT CREW LEVEL GUNNERY TABLES

9 . . . . . INDIVIDUAL TRAINING 1802 TANK OFFICER

10. . . . . INDIVIDUAL TRAINING 1812 TANK CREWMAN

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING	1002	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT	1003	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING	1004	1-3
ORGANIZATION	1005	1-4
T&R EVENT CODING	1006	1-4
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE	1007	1-5
EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS	1008	1-6
CRP CALCULATION	1009	1-6
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION	1010	1-7
NBC TRAINING	1011	1-9
NIGHT TRAINING	1012	1-9
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)	1013	1-10
MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM	1014	1-10

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1001. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training, and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). T&R manuals are built around these METLs and all events contained in T&R manuals relate directly to this METL. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

1002. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.

2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core capabilities METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major OPLAN/CONPLAN or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). Tactical

training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.

3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1003. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles, explained in reference (b), provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- Train as you fight
- Make commanders responsible for training
- Use standards-based training
- Use performance-oriented training
- Use mission-oriented training
- Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
- Train to sustain proficiency
- Train to challenge

3. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (a) through (g).

1004. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation).

2. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. Whether it involves individual or collective training events, they must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or

before expiration of the designated sustainment interval. Performance of the training event, however, is not sufficient to ensure combat readiness. Leaders at all levels must evaluate the performance of their Marines and the unit as they complete training events, and only record successful accomplishment of training based upon the evaluation. The goal of evaluation is to ensure that correct methods are employed to achieve the desired standard, or the Marines understand how they need to improve in order to attain the standard. Leaders must determine whether credit for completing a training event is recorded if the standard was not achieved. While successful accomplishment is desired, debriefing of errors can result in successful learning that will allow ethical recording of training event completion. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

3. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1005. ORGANIZATION

1. T&R Manuals are organized in one of two methods: unit-based or community-based. Unit-based T&R Manuals are written to support a type of unit (Infantry, Artillery, Tanks, etc.) and contain both collective and individual training standards. Community-based are written to support an Occupational Field, a group of related Military Occupational Specialties (MOSs), or billets within an organization (EOD, NBC, Intel, etc.), and usually only contain individual training standards. T&R Manuals are comprised of chapters that contain unit METs, collective training standards (CTS), and individual training standards (ITS) for each MOS, billet, etc.

2. The Tank T&R Manual is a unit-based manual comprised of 10 chapters. Chapter 2 lists the Core Capability METs and their related Battalion and Company-level events. Chapters 3 through 8 contain collective events. Chapters 9 and 10 contain individual events.

1006. T&R EVENT CODING

1. T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4-digit identifier. The first four digits are referred to as a "community" and represent the unit type or occupation (TANK, TOW, 1802, etc.). The second four digits represent the functional or duty area (TAC, CMDC, GNRY, etc.). The last four digits represent the level and sequence of the event.

2. The T&R levels are illustrated in Figure 1. An example of the T&R coding used in this Manual is shown in Figure 2.

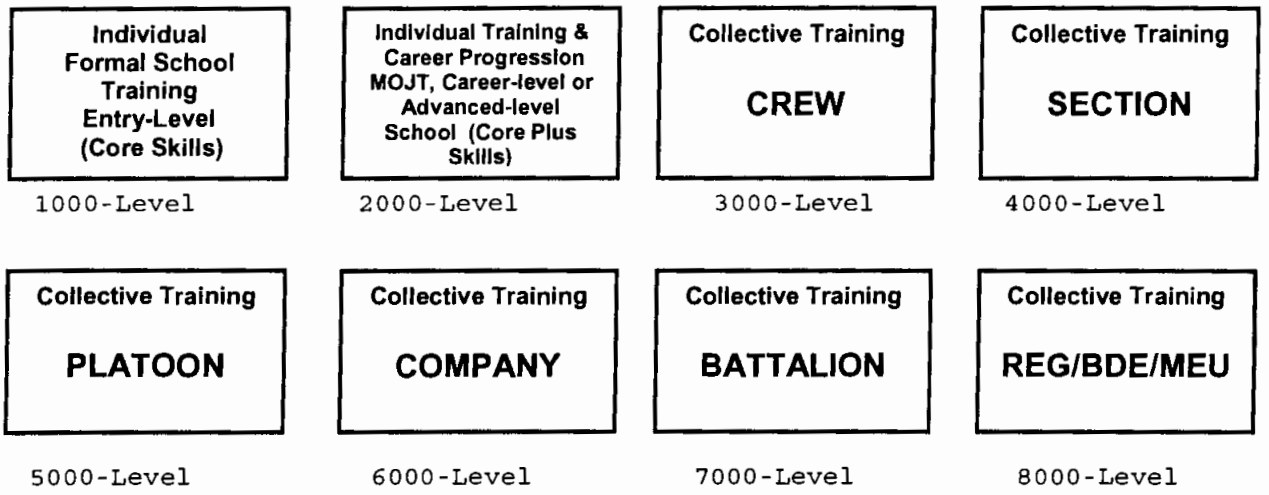

Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

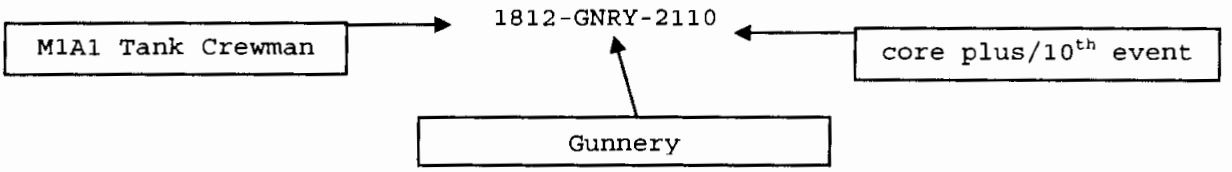

Figure 2: T&R Event Coding

1007. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage", as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. In unit-based T&R Manuals, unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

4. Individual combat readiness, in both unit-based and community-based T&R Manuals, is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events

for his/her MOS and grade (or billet) that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.

1008. EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS

1. Unit-type T&R Manuals can contain numerous unit events, some for the whole unit and others for integral parts that serve as building blocks for training. To simplify training management and readiness assessment, only collective events that are critical components of a mission essential task (MET), or key indicators of a unit's readiness, are used to generate CRP for a MET. These critical or key events are designated in the T&R Manual as Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded) events. Formal evaluation of unit performance in these events is recommended because of their value in assessing combat readiness. Only E-Coded events are used to calculate CRP for each MET.

2. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training. This makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

1009. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000 level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. Using the battalion-based (unit) model, the battalion (7000-level) has collective events that directly support a MET on the METL. These collective events are E-Coded and the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has 4 E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: 75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP)/ 5 (total number of METS) = 65%

1010. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items are included in all events in each T&R manual.

a. Event Code (see Sect 1006). The event code is a 4-4-4 character set. For individual training events, the first 4 characters indicate the occupational function. The second 4 characters indicate functional area (TAC, CBTS, VOPS, etc.). The third 4 characters are simply a numerical designator for the event.

b. Event Title. The event title is the name of the event.

c. E-Coded. This is a "yes/no" category to indicate whether or not the event is E-Coded. If yes, the event contributes toward the CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-Coded event is based on number of E-Coded events for that MET. Refer to paragraph 1008 for detailed explanation of E-Coded events.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals are adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency.

f. Billet. Individual training events may contain a list of billets within the community that are responsible for performing that event. This ensures that the billet's expected tasks are clearly articulated and a Marine's readiness to perform in that billet is measured.

g. Grade. Each individual training event will list the rank(s) at which Marines are required to learn and sustain the training event.

h. Event Description. Provide a description of the event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge (e.g. Camouflage the M1A1 Tank).

i. Condition. Describe the condition(s), under which tasks are performed. Conditions are based on a "real world" operational environment. They indicate what is provided (equipment, materials, manuals, aids, etc.),

environmental constraints, conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this is stated.

j. Standard. The standard indicates the basis for judging effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and is strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events is general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. While the standard for individual events specifically describe to what proficiency level in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is accomplished.

k. Event Components. Describe the actions composing the event and help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

l. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

m. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

n. Related Events. Provide a list of all Individual Training Standards that support the event.

o. References. The training references are utilized to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. References are also important to the development of detailed training plans.

p. Distance Learning Products (IMI, CBT, MCI, etc.). Include this component when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

q. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials

- Other Units/Personnel
- Other Support Requirements

r. Miscellaneous. Provide any additional information that assists in the planning and execution of the event. Miscellaneous information may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

2. Community-based T&R manuals have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R manuals. These additions do not apply to this T&R Manual.

1011. NBC TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in nuclear, biological, and chemical defense (NBCD), in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive NBC attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in an NBC environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an NBC environment, NBCD training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under NBC conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1012. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every climate and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on individual, crew, and unit proficiency.

1013. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the

probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers will integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM is found in references (b) and (d).

1014. MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for Ground T&R Program is to publish a T&R Manual for every readiness-reporting unit so that core capability METs are clearly defined with supporting collective training standards, and to publish community-based T&R Manuals for all occupational fields whose personnel augment other units to increase their combat and/or logistic capabilities. The vision for this program includes plans to provide a Marine Corps training management information system that enables tracking of unit and individual training accomplishments by unit commanders and small unit leaders, automatically computing CRP for both units and individual Marines based upon MOS and rank (or billet). Linkage of T&R Events to the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), through the core capability METs, has enabled objective assessment of training readiness in the DRRS.

2. DRRS measures and reports on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. With unit CRP based on the unit's training toward its METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to units' METLs.

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
TANK MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST	2000	2-2

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. TANK MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST. The list below includes the core capability Mission Essential Task List and the Battalion-Level Events and Company-Level Events that support each MET. All METS are derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL).

MET#/MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK

MET 1 - MCT 1.1 PROVIDE FORCES	
TANK-CMDC-7205	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-7207	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
TANK-CMDC-7210	Conduct Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7214	Conduct a Rehearsal
TANK-CSS-7502	Conduct Logistics Operations
TANK-EXPD-7603	Plan and Conduct a Deployment
TANK-EXPD-7604	Plan and Conduct a Redeployment
TANK-CMDC-6203	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-6204	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)
TANK-CMDC-6205	Conduct a Rehearsal
MET 2 - MCT 1.6.1 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
TANK-CMDC-7201	Establish a Command Group
TANK-CMDC-7202	Establish a Command Post
TANK-CMDC-7205	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-7206	Conduct Intelligence Operations
TANK-CMDC-7207	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
TANK-CMDC-7208	Develop and Execute a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan
TANK-CMDC-7209	Integrate Sniper Operations
TANK-CMDC-7210	Conduct Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7211	Plan Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7212	Prepare for Operations
TANK-CMDC-7213	Conduct Battle Tracking
TANK-CMDC-7214	Conduct a Rehearsal
TANK-CMDC-7215	Conduct Communications Operations

TANK-CMDC-7216	Maintain Information Security
TANK-CBTS-7401	Establish and Operate a Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC)
TANK-CBTS-7402	Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Fire Support
TANK-CBTS-7403	Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Aviation Assets
TANK-CBTS-7404	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and Survivability Operations
TANK-CBTS-7405	Plan and Employ Engineer Assets
TANK-CBTS-7406	Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-7407	React to a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-7408	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-7409	React to a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-7410	Cross a Contaminated Area
TANK-CBTS-7413	React to Enemy Indirect Fires
TANK-CBTS-7414	Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CSS-7501	Conduct Personnel Administration
TANK-CSS-7502	Conduct Logistics Operations
TANK-CSS-7503	Conduct Maintenance/Recovery Support
TANK-CSS-7504	Plan and Provide Combat Health Support
TANK-EXPD-7605	Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing
TANK-OTH-7701	Support Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
TANK-TAC-7804	Conduct Tactical Movement
TANK-TAC-7805	Conduct a Movement to Contact and Employ Actions on Contact
TANK-TAC-7806	Conduct a Hasty Attack
TANK-TAC-7807	Conduct a Deliberate Attack
TANK-TAC-7808	Follow and Support
TANK-TAC-7809	Conduct an Attack by Fire
TANK-TAC-7810	Conduct a Bypass
TANK-TAC-7811	Conduct a Raid
TANK-TAC-7812	Conduct a Feint
TANK-TAC-7813	Conduct a Demonstration
TANK-TAC-7814	Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-7820	Employ a Reserve Force
TANK-TAC-7825	Conduct a Breakout From Encirclement
TANK-CMDC-6201	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
TANK-CMDC-6202	Establish and Employ Company Command Post
TANK-CMDC-6203	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-6204	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)
TANK-CMDC-6205	Conduct a Rehearsal
TANK-CMDC-6206	Prepare for Combat
TANK-CMDC-6207	Conduct Reconnaissance

TANK-CMDC-6208	Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance
TANK-CBTS-6401	Conduct Fire Support Coordination in the Offense
TANK-CBTS-6404	Employ Engineer Assets
TANK-CBTS-6405	Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-6406	React to a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-6407	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-6408	React to a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-6409	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area
TANK-CBTS-6411	React to Enemy Indirect Fire
TANK-CBTS-6412	Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CBTS-6413	React to Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CSS-6501	Conduct Logistical Planning
TANK-CSS-6502	Conduct Resupply Operations
TANK-CSS-6503	Conduct Maintenance Operations
TANK-EXPD-6603	Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing
TANK-OTH-6702	Conduct a Quick Reaction Force (QRF)
TANK-TAC-6804	Conduct Tactical Movement
TANK-TAC-6805	Conduct a Movement to Contact
TANK-TAC-6806	Conduct Actions on Contact
TANK-TAC-6807	Conduct a Hasty Attack
TANK-TAC-6808	Conduct a Deliberate Attack
TANK-TAC-6809	Follow and Support
TANK-TAC-6810	Conduct an Attack by Fire
TANK-TAC-6811	Conduct Support by Fire
TANK-TAC-6812	Conduct a Bypass
TANK-TAC-6813	Conduct an Assault
TANK-TAC-6814	Conduct an Ambush
TANK-TAC-6815	Conduct a Clearance
TANK-TAC-6816	Conduct a Raid
TANK-TAC-6817	Conduct a Feint
TANK-TAC-6818	Conduct a Demonstration
TANK-TAC-6819	Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-6826	Conduct Reserve Operations
TANK-TAC-6831	Conduct a Breakout from Encirclement
MET 3 - MCT 1.6.4 CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
TANK-CMDC-7201	Establish a Command Group
TANK-CMDC-7202	Establish a Command Post
TANK-CMDC-7205	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-7206	Conduct Intelligence Operations

TANK-CMDC-7207	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
TANK-CMDC-7208	Develop and Execute a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan
TANK-CMDC-7209	Integrate Sniper Operations
TANK-CMDC-7210	Conduct Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7211	Plan Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7212	Prepare for Operations
TANK-CMDC-7213	Conduct Battle Tracking
TANK-CMDC-7214	Conduct a Rehearsal
TANK-CMDC-7215	Conduct Communications Operations
TANK-CMDC-7216	Maintain Information Security
TANK-CBTS-7401	Establish and Operate a Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC)
TANK-CBTS-7402	Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Fire Support
TANK-CBTS-7403	Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Aviation Assets
TANK-CBTS-7404	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and Survivability Operations
TANK-CBTS-7405	Plan and Employ Engineer Assets
TANK-CBTS-7406	Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-7407	React to a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-7408	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-7409	React to a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-7413	React to Enemy Indirect Fires
TANK-CBTS-7414	Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CSS-7501	Conduct Personnel Administration
TANK-CSS-7502	Conduct Logistics Operations
TANK-CSS-7503	Conduct Maintenance/Recovery Support
TANK-CSS-7504	Plan and Provide Combat Health Support
TANK-OTH-7701	Support Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
TANK-TAC-7802	Conduct Consolidation
TANK-TAC-7803	Conduct Reorganization
TANK-TAC-7815	Conduct a Defense (Defend in Sector, Defend a Battle Position, Defend a Strongpoint)
TANK-TAC-7816	Defend an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-7820	Employ a Reserve Force
TANK-TAC-7829	Conduct a Delay
TANK-TAC-7832	Conduct Rear Area Operations
TANK-CMDC-6201	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
TANK-CMDC-6202	Establish and Employ Company Command Post
TANK-CMDC-6203	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-6204	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)
TANK-CMDC-6205	Conduct a Rehearsal

TANK-CMDC-6206	Prepare for Combat
TANK-CMDC-6207	Conduct Reconnaissance
TANK-CMDC-6208	Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance
TANK-CBTS-6402	Conduct Fire Support Coordination in the Defense
TANK-CBTS-6403	Emplace an Obstacle
TANK-CBTS-6404	Employ Engineer Assets
TANK-CBTS-6405	Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-6406	React to a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-6407	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-6408	React to a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-6411	React to Enemy Indirect Fire
TANK-CBTS-6412	Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CBTS-6413	React to Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CSS-6501	Conduct Logistical Planning
TANK-CSS-6502	Conduct Resupply Operations
TANK-CSS-6503	Conduct Maintenance Operations
TANK-TAC-6802	Conduct Consolidation
TANK-TAC-6803	Conduct Reorganization
TANK-TAC-6820	Defend in Sector
TANK-TAC-6821	Defend a Battle Position
TANK-TAC-6822	Defend a Strongpoint
TANK-TAC-6823	Defend an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-6826	Conduct Reserve Operations
TANK-TAC-6834	Conduct a Delay
TANK-TAC-6840	Conduct Rear Area Operations
MET 4 - MCT 1.6.5 CONDUCT TACTICAL OPERATIONS	
TANK-CMDC-7201	Establish a Command Group
TANK-CMDC-7202	Establish a Command Post
TANK-CMDC-7203	Displace a Command Post
TANK-CMDC-7204	Transfer Command and Control Functions Before Displacement and After Establishment of a Command Post
TANK-CMDC-7205	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-7206	Conduct Intelligence Operations
TANK-CMDC-7207	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
TANK-CMDC-7208	Develop and Execute a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan
TANK-CMDC-7209	Integrate Sniper Operations
TANK-CMDC-7210	Conduct Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7211	Plan Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7212	Prepare for Operations

TANK-CMDC-7214	Conduct a Rehearsal
TANK-CMDC-7213	Conduct Battle Tracking
TANK-CMDC-7215	Conduct Communications Operations
TANK-CMDC-7216	Maintain Information Security
TANK-CBTS-7401	Establish and Operate a Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC)
TANK-CBTS-7402	Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Fire Support
TANK-CBTS-7403	Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Aviation Assets
TANK-CBTS-7404	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and Survivability Operations
TANK-CBTS-7405	Plan and Employ Engineer Assets
TANK-CBTS-7406	Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-7407	React to a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-7408	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-7409	React to a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-7410	Cross a Contaminated Area
TANK-CBTS-7411	Conduct Operational Decontamination
TANK-CBTS-7412	Conduct Thorough Decontamination
TANK-CBTS-7413	React to Enemy Indirect Fires
TANK-CBTS-7414	Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CSS-7501	Conduct Personnel Administration
TANK-CSS-7502	Conduct Logistics Operations
TANK-CSS-7503	Conduct Maintenance/Recovery Support
TANK-CSS-7504	Plan and Provide Combat Health Support
TANK-EXPD-7601	Conduct Amphibious Staff Planning
TANK-EXPD-7602	Develop an Amphibious Landing Plan
TANK-EXPD-7606	Conduct an Amphibious Withdrawal
TANK-OTH-7701	Support Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
TANK-OTH-7702	Conduct Civil Military Operations
TANK-OTH-7703	Establish a Base Camp
TANK-OTH-7704	Conduct a Cordon and Search
TANK-OTH-7705	Secure Civilians During Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
TANK-OTH-7706	Conduct Negotiations
TANK-TAC-7801	Occupy an Assembly Area
TANK-TAC-7802	Conduct Consolidation
TANK-TAC-7803	Conduct Reorganization
TANK-TAC-7804	Conduct Tactical Movement
TANK-TAC-7817	Conduct a Guard
TANK-TAC-7818	Conduct a Screen
TANK-TAC-7819	Conduct Reserve Operations

TANK-TAC-7820	Employ a Reserve Force
TANK-TAC-7821	Conduct a Linkup
TANK-TAC-7822	Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Moving Unit
TANK-TAC-7823	Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Stationary Unit
TANK-TAC-7824	Conduct a Relief in Place
TANK-TAC-7826	Conduct a Breach
TANK-TAC-7827	Conduct a Gap/Water Crossing
TANK-TAC-7828	Conduct Retrograde Operations
TANK-TAC-7829	Conduct a Delay
TANK-TAC-7830	Conduct an Infiltration/Exfiltration
TANK-TAC-7831	Conduct a Tactical Road March
TANK-TAC-7832	Conduct Rear Area Operations
TANK-CMDC-6201	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
TANK-CMDC-6202	Establish and Employ Company Command Post
TANK-CMDC-6203	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-6204	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)
TANK-CMDC-6205	Conduct a Rehearsal
TANK-CMDC-6206	Prepare for Combat
TANK-CMDC-6207	Conduct Reconnaissance
TANK-CMDC-6208	Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance
TANK-CBTS-6404	Employ Engineer Assets
TANK-CBTS-6405	Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-6406	React to a Chemical/Biological Attack
TANK-CBTS-6407	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-6408	React to a Nuclear Attack
TANK-CBTS-6409	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area
TANK-CBTS-6410	Conduct Operational Decontamination
TANK-CBTS-6411	React to Enemy Indirect Fire
TANK-CBTS-6412	Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CBTS-6413	React to Enemy Air Attack
TANK-CSS-6501	Conduct Logistical Planning
TANK-CSS-6502	Conduct Resupply Operations
TANK-CSS-6503	Conduct Maintenance Operations
TANK-CSS-6504	Provide Medical Evacuation and Treatment of Casualties
TANK-CSS-6505	Process Enemy Prisoners of War
TANK-EXPD-6601	Conduct Amphibious Planning
TANK-EXPD-6602	Assist in the Development of the Amphibious Landing Plan
TANK-OTH-6701	Establish a Base Camp
TANK-OTH-6702	Conduct a Quick Reaction Force (QRF)
TANK-OTH-6703	Conduct Convoy Security
TANK-OTH-6704	Conduct Checkpoint Operations

TANK-OTH-6706	Conduct a Cordon and Search
TANK-OTH-6707	Conduct Presence Operations
TANK-TAC-6801	Occupy an Assembly Area
TANK-TAC-6802	Conduct Consolidation
TANK-TAC-6803	Conduct Reorganization
TANK-TAC-6804	Conduct Tactical Movement
TANK-TAC-6824	Conduct a Guard
TANK-TAC-6825	Conduct a Screen
TANK-TAC-6826	Conduct Reserve Operations
TANK-TAC-6827	Conduct a Linkup
TANK-TAC-6828	Conduct Passage of Lines as a Moving Unit
TANK-TAC-6829	Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Stationary Unit
TANK-TAC-6830	Conduct a Relief in Place
TANK-TAC-6832	Conduct a Breach
TANK-TAC-6833	Conduct Gap/Water Crossing
TANK-TAC-6834	Conduct a Delay
TANK-TAC-6835	Conduct a Withdrawal Under Enemy Pressure
TANK-TAC-6836	Conduct a Withdrawal Not Under Enemy Pressure
TANK-TAC-6837	Conduct a Retirement
TANK-TAC-6838	Conduct an Infiltration/Exfiltration
TANK-TAC-6839	Conduct a Tactical Road March
TANK-TAC-6840	Conduct Rear Area Operations
MET 5 - MCT 3.2.4.1 CONDUCT DIRECT FIRE	
TANK-CMDC-7205	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-CMDC-7210	Conduct Tactical Operations
TANK-CMDC-7215	Conduct Communications Operations
TANK-EXPD-7605	Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing
TANK-TAC-7805	Conduct a Movement to Contact and Employ Actions on Contact
TANK-TAC-7806	Conduct a Hasty Attack
TANK-TAC-7807	Conduct a Deliberate Attack
TANK-TAC-7809	Conduct an Attack by Fire
TANK-TAC-7811	Conduct a Raid
TANK-TAC-7814	Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-7815	Conduct a Defense (Defend in Sector, Defend a Battle Position, Defend a Strongpoint)
TANK-TAC-7816	Defend an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-7817	Conduct a Guard
TANK-TAC-7818	Conduct a Screen

TANK-TAC-7826	Conduct a Breach
TANK-CMDC-6201	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
TANK-CMDC-6203	Conduct Risk Management
TANK-EXPD-6603	Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing
TANK-TAC-6805	Conduct a Movement to Contact
TANK-TAC-6806	Conduct Actions on Contact
TANK-TAC-6807	Conduct a Hasty Attack
TANK-TAC-6808	Conduct a Deliberate Attack
TANK-TAC-6810	Conduct an Attack by Fire
TANK-TAC-6811	Conduct Support by Fire
TANK-TAC-6813	Conduct an Assault
TANK-TAC-6814	Conduct an Ambush
TANK-TAC-6815	Conduct a Clearance
TANK-TAC-6816	Conduct a Raid
TANK-TAC-6820	Defend in Sector
TANK-TAC-6821	Defend a Battle Position
TANK-TAC-6822	Defend a Strongpoint
TANK-TAC-6823	Defend an Urban Area
TANK-TAC-6824	Conduct a Guard
TANK-TAC-6825	Conduct a Screen
TANK-TAC-6832	Conduct a Breach

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK BATTALION

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING	3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	3002	3-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	3003	3-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA	3004	3-4
BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3005	3-6

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK BATTALION

3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion level tank unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies [Mission Essential Tasks (METs)] and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the focal point for the Company and Platoon training, detailed in the subsequent chapters.

3001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion level are:

CMDC - Command and Control	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	EXPD - Expeditionary Operations
OTH - Other Operations	TAC - Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which Battalion and/or Company collective events under a MET will be E-coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, participates in, and conducts operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Participates in, and conducts a passage of lines, relief in place, and link up as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.

4. Prepares for and conducts Military Operations Other than War (MOOTW) missions.

5. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.

6. Supports another unit by fire.

7. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations in urban environments.

8. Participates in and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

9. Constructs and breaches obstacles.

10. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

11. Defends against air attack.

12. Processes enemy prisoners of war.

13. Employs inorganic assets to include AAVs and support aircraft.

14. Processes and evacuates casualties.

15. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts route, area, and zone reconnaissance operations.

16. Prepares for, plans, and executes battalion level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, raid, defend, delay, infiltrate, exfiltrate, screen, guard, ambush, disengage, retrograde, and consolidate.

17. Contributes to and conducts tactical and operational logistics planning.

18. Processes intelligence information.

19. Participates in and conducts fire support planning and execution.

20. Operates a battalion combat operation center.

21. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts amphibious planning and operations.

22. Logistically sustain the battalion.

3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TANK-CMDC-7201	**Yes**	**Establish a Command Group**	**3-6**
TANK-CMDC-7202		Establish a Command Post	3-7
TANK-CMDC-7203		Displace a Command Post	3-9
TANK-CMDC-7204		Transfer Command and Control Functions Before Displacement and After Establishment of a Command Post	3-10
TANK-CMDC-7205		Conduct Risk Management	3-11
TANK-CMDC-7206		Conduct Intelligence Operations	3-13
TANK-CMDC-7207		Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures	3-15
TANK-CMDC-7208		Develop and Execute a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan	3-17
TANK-CMDC-7209		Integrate Sniper Operations	3-19
TANK-CMDC-7210		Conduct Tactical Operations	3-21
TANK-CMDC-7211		Plan Tactical Operations	3-23
TANK-CMDC-7212		Prepare for Operations	3-25
TANK-CMDC-7213		Conduct Battle Tracking	3-27
TANK-CMDC-7214		Conduct a Rehearsal	3-29
TANK-CMDC-7215		Conduct Communications Operations	3-30
TANK-CMDC-7216		Maintain Information Security	3-32
TANK-CBTS-7401	**Yes**	**Establish and Operate a Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC)**	**3-35**
TANK-CBTS-7402		Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Fire Support	3-36
TANK-CBTS-7403		Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Aviation Assets	3-40
TANK-CBTS-7404		Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and Survivability Operations	3-43
TANK-CBTS-7405		Plan and Employ Engineer Assets	3-47
TANK-CBTS-7406		Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack	3-50
TANK-CBTS-7407		React to a Chemical/Biological Attack	3-52
TANK-CBTS-7408		Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	3-54
TANK-CBTS-7409		React to a Nuclear Attack	3-56
TANK-CBTS-7410		Cross a Contaminated Area	3-57
TANK-CBTS-7411		Conduct Operational Decontamination	3-59
TANK-CBTS-7412		Conduct Thorough Decontamination	3-62
TANK-CBTS-7413		React to Enemy Indirect Fires	3-64
TANK-CBTS-7414		Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack	3-65
TANK-CSS-7501		Conduct Personnel Administration	3-67
TANK-CSS-7502		Conduct Logistics Operations	3-69
TANK-CSS-7503	**Yes**	**Conduct Maintenance/Recovery Support**	**3-74**
TANK-CSS-7504		Plan and Provide Combat Health Support	3-77
TANK-EXPD-7601		Conduct Amphibious Staff Planning	3-81
TANK-EXPD-7602		Develop an Amphibious Landing Plan	3-83
TANK-EXPD-7603	**Yes**	**Plan and Conduct a Deployment**	**3-85**
TANK-EXPD-7604	**Yes**	**Plan and Conduct a Redeployment**	**3-87**
TANK-EXPD-7605		Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing	3-90
TANK-EXPD-7606		Conduct an Amphibious Withdrawal	3-92
TANK-OTH-7701		Support Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)	3-94
TANK-OTH-7702		Conduct Civil Military Operations	3-98

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TANK-OTH-7703		Establish a Base Camp	3-102
TANK-OTH-7704		Conduct a Cordon and Search	3-106
TANK-OTH-7705		Secure Civilians During Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)	3-111
TANK-OTH-7706		Conduct Negotiations	3-113
TANK-TAC-7801		Occupy an Assembly Area	3-115
TANK-TAC-7802		Conduct Consolidation	3-117
TANK-TAC-7803		Conduct Reorganization	3-118
TANK-TAC-7804	**Yes**	**Conduct Tactical Movement**	**3-119**
TANK-TAC-7805	**Yes**	**Conduct a Movement to Contact and Employ Actions on Contact**	**3-121**
TANK-TAC-7806		Conduct a Hasty Attack	3-125
TANK-TAC-7807	**Yes**	**Conduct a Deliberate Attack**	**3-126**
TANK-TAC-7808		Follow and Support	3-129
TANK-TAC-7809		Conduct an Attack by Fire	3-130
TANK-TAC-7810		Conduct a Bypass	3-132
TANK-TAC-7811		Conduct a Raid	3-134
TANK-TAC-7812		Conduct a Feint	3-136
TANK-TAC-7813		Conduct a Demonstration	3-138
TANK-TAC-7814		Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area	3-140
TANK-TAC-7815	**Yes**	**Conduct a Defense (Defend in Sector, Defend a Battle Position, Defend a Strongpoint**	**3-143**
TANK-TAC-7816		Defend an Urban Area	3-146
TANK-TAC-7817		Conduct a Guard	3-148
TANK-TAC-7818		Conduct a Screen	3-150
TANK-TAC-7819		Conduct Reserve Operations	3-153
TANK-TAC-7820		Employ a Reserve Force	3-155
TANK-TAC-7821		Conduct a Linkup	3-157
TANK-TAC-7822	**Yes**	**Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Moving Unit**	**3-160**
TANK-TAC-7823	**Yes**	**Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Stationary Unit**	**3-163**
TANK-TAC-7824	**Yes**	**Conduct a Relief in Place**	**3-166**
TANK-TAC-7825		Conduct a Breakout From Encirclement	3-170
TANK-TAC-7826	**Yes**	**Conduct a Breach**	**3-172**
TANK-TAC-7827		Conduct a Gap/Water Crossing	3-176
TANK-TAC-7828		Conduct Retrograde Operations	3-179
TANK-TAC-7829		Conduct a Delay	3-183
TANK-TAC-7830		Conduct an Infiltration/Exfiltration	3-187
TANK-TAC-7831		Conduct a Tactical Road March	3-191
TANK-TAC-7832		Conduct Rear Area Operations	3-194

3005. BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

TANK-CMDC-7201: Establish a Command Group

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A command group is a small group of individuals that accompanies the commander to command and control the battalion. It is organized and equipped to suit the commander and normally provides local security and other personnel assistance as he requires, in order to control a battle. Command group operations are the actions a commander takes to command and control the battalion during a battle.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The staff is monitoring the situation. The battalion receives an operations order or FRAGO to conduct a tactical operation or changes to the current tactical situation require control or coordination actions. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The command group coordinates and directs the maneuver of combat forces, controls direct and indirect fires, and coordinates other critical activities to win the battle. The commander informs the main CP of anticipated changes in subordinate unit missions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The command group is located where it can control the battle; the command group survives, can see the critical activities on the battlefield, and is positioned to maintain communications with critical elements.
2. The command group monitors the development of the enemy and friendly situation.
3. The command group makes a determination on the required changes to execute the desired actions; changes are based on the enemy and friendly situation and directions from higher headquarters.
4. The command group directs the maneuver and fires of combat forces; the battalion commander directs changes in missions/tasks for fire support, scout platoon, TOW platoon, engineers, CSS, and combat elements by giving a FRAGO; FRAGO corrects elements not following the OPORD, changes the original OPORD to respond to new METT-TC factors or directs fires on the enemy; the battalion commander controls directly or by instructing the main CP to issue a FRAGO.
5. The Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) coordinates the execution of fire support; the Artillery LNO coordinates indirect fires; the Air Officer coordinates air assets; the FSCC actions support the scheme of maneuver and do not fire on friendly units.
6. The command group performs lateral coordination with adjacent battalions; the battalion commander coordinates directly or instructs the main CP to conduct coordination.

7. The command group reports to higher headquarters; the battalion commander reports directly or instructs the main CP to conduct reporting; the main CP augments reporting as necessary to clarify situation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7213 TANK-CMDC-7202 TANK-CMDC-7215

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7202: Establish a Command Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A command post is a unit's headquarters where the commander, staff, and support representatives perform their activities. It is the principle facility employed by the commander to control combat operations.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to establish the command post (CP). A reconnaissance of the new location is conducted, the site secured, and the CP is moved. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The battalion has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion establishes the CP in accordance with the standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, or higher commander's guidance. CP personnel establish local area security and a communications network. CP personnel complete communication checks and assume control of the operation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Battalion Commander and staff leaders maintain situational understanding using all available information sources.
2. The battalion S-3 officer establishes the main CP as the Alpha Command; the battalion S-3A officer establishes an alternate CP as the Bravo Command. CPs are configured in accordance with SOP, available resources,

and the mission; representatives from S-2 and S-3 sections, fire support element (FSE), engineers, artillery elements, HQSVC company support elements, and representatives of attached units, are used as required; CP defense is delegated to attached security element; the security element establishes air guards and OPs to support all around protection for the CP.

3. Battalion commander establishes the tactical command post (CP); configures the CP IAW SOP, available resources, the mission, and commander's guidance; include representatives from the S-2 and S-3 sections and special staff as required.
4. The S-1 and S-4 establish the combat trains (or rear) CP and configure the CP IAW SOP, available resources, and the mission; representatives include S-1, S-4, S-4 chief, maintenance representatives, logistic support representative, communications representative and attached security personnel; perform detailed combat service support (CSS) and personnel planning and tracking (annotating graphic control measures and building essential support plans); track current tactical situation.
5. The S-4 coordinates: location of combat trains command post (CP) with the main CP, essential and detailed CSS planning with the higher headquarters G-4/S-4 and service support units, the movement of the field trains with the HQSVC company commander, and security for the combat trains; the S-1 coordinates essential and detailed personnel planning with the higher headquarters G-1/S-1; the CP is prepared to serve as the alternate main CP as required.
6. The HQSVC company commander establishes the field trains CP; configure the CP IAW SOP, available resources, and the mission; representatives include S-1 chief, maintenance officer, embark officer, motor transport platoon commander, S-4A, logistic support representative, communications representative and security representative; perform detailed combat service support (CSS) tracking and coordination with higher headquarters S-4/G-4 and service support units; establishes security for the field trains CP; coordinate the movement of the field trains with the unit S-4.
7. The S-3 establishes CP operation, completes all communications checks, posts and updates situation map (conventionally and digitally), verifies appropriate overlays are set, and directs sections to update personnel on critical events occurring during movement.
8. The battalion S-3/S-3 chief accomplish the following tasks: verifies that all functions are transferred and the CP is prepared to assume control of operations, opens operations log and verifies significant events are recorded in the appropriate, and initiates net call (digital and voice) to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging assumption of control.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-7502	TANK-CSS-7501	TANK-CBTS-7401
TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7215	TANK-CMDC-7206

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7203: Displace a Command Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A command post is divided into echelons; the tactical command post (CP), the main CP, and rear CP. These CPs have dedicated communications nets through which the commander communicates. The CPs move about the battlefield maintaining control and communications.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to employ and move the CP. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The battalion has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion displaces the CP in accordance with the standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and the tactical situation. CP personnel establish local area security and a communications network. CP personnel complete communication checks and assume control of the operation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Battalion leaders maintain situational awareness using all available information sources during movement.
2. The CP (alpha or bravo) conducting a move conducts a transfer command and control functions with the alternate CP.
3. The elements of the CP are prepared to move, equipment is stowed and vehicles are prepared to move, and the security element is collapsed and mounted into vehicles.
4. The S-3 for the alpha command and the S-3A for the bravo command conduct the movement of the CP; movement is conducted to maintain survivability while meeting operational requirements; the CP moves to the new site on a covered and concealed route; security elements move in advance of the CP in order to ensure its protection; the new CP site is secured by the security element; all elements of the CP are brought into the CP site and the security perimeter.
5. The CP is establish and configured in accordance with SOP, the mission, and tactical situation.
6. The S-3 conducts a transfer of command and control functions in accordance with SOP in order to assume control of the battle.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7204

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCDP 6 Command and Control
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7204: Transfer Command and Control Functions Before Displacement and After Establishment of a Command Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The transfer of command and control between command posts (CPs) is the formal process which transfers tactical control from the CP currently in control of the mission to a subsequent CP that will take control allowing the initial CP to move to a new position.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation that requires the relocation of the CP. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The CP is operational. The bravo command deploys to a new location, establishes operations, and is preparing to assume operational control of the battle. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit transfers command and control (C2) functions during displacement of the CP in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and tactical situation. C2 of the current operations is transferred between CPs without a break in continuity or efficiency.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The S-3A of the bravo command or alternate CP (the jump element) notifies the displacing element that he is prepared to assume control of unit operations.
3. The S-3 of the displacing element (the main CP or alpha command) notifies the jump element or alternate CP of the anticipated time of transfer.
4. Staff sections of the displacing element (CP) and jump element or alternate CP transfer information and functions of the current operation.

5. Provide the following information: friendly unit status, location, and activity information, enemy location and activity information, combat service support (CSS) status, data distribution configuration scheme, and plans so jump element or alternate CP can execute branches and sequels.
6. Verify the following information: both element CPs have the same common operational picture and understand the situation and future actions to be executed, communications are established with higher, subordinate, and adjacent headquarters as required, and net control station (NCS) functions for all CP nets are assumed.
7. The S-3A of jump element or alternate CP performs the following tasks: verify that all functions are transferred and jump element or alternate CP is prepared to assume control of the unit, initiate net call (digital and voice) to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging assumption of control.
8. Unit rear CP (S-1 and S-4 section) monitor transfer of C2; on order, prepare to assume control of the current operation in accordance with the SOP when the main CP is unable to assume C2 of the battalion.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7203 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7215

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7205: Conduct Risk Management

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Risk management is the process of detecting, assessing, and controlling risk arising from operational factors and making decisions to balance risk costs with mission benefits. It is an element of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time

specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. Fratricide prevention is addressed. The unit complies with the rules of engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards; identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, and ROE; identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks; integrate safety into every phase of planning process; identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards; conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
3. Unit commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations; identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions; compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives; identify unwarranted risks; calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records; describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental).
4. Unit commander and leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards; select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk; develop procedures that reduce risk; provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation; prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.
5. Unit personnel implement risk control procedures; practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations; correct unsafe acts on the spot; report all risk and safety violations to commander and unit safety officer.
6. Unit commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls; enforces standards and controls; evaluates effectiveness of controls and adjust and or update as necessary; complies with orders, SOP, commander's guidance, ROE.

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6203

REFERENCES:

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

5. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7206: Conduct Intelligence Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The battalion conducts intelligence operations to support the intelligence functions of the command group. These functions include maintaining the intelligence estimate, the dissemination of information, tracking the enemy situation in the current battle, assists in the development of the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan, participates in the target selection process, coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities and determines map requirements and requisitions maps as necessary. The S-2 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The S-2 is responsible for these functions and is assisted by the battalion S-2 chief.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The S-2 section is established and provides support to operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts intellignece operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The S-2 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The S-2 section prepares, updates, and maintains the intelligence estimate. The S-2 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information and tracks the current battle. The S-2 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The S-2 supervises the S-2 section and personnel. The S-2 section coordinates, supervises, and enforces the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The S-2 participates in the target selection process. The S-2 section coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities. The S-2 section assists in preparing deception plans. The S-2 section determines map requirements and requisitions maps as necessary. The S-2 section considers rules of engagement (ROE) during planning.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-2 and staff section leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-2 section participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP). Note: The S-2's first priority at this level is to ensure a detailed intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process to drive staff planning.
3. Receive and analyze mission.
4. Request support or information from higher headquarters if items or information are not available organically.
5. Obtain signal operating instructions (SOI), sign and countersign information through unit S-6.
6. Brief staff on abbreviated intelligence estimate to assist their mission planning.
7. Issue warning order (WARNO) to R&S assets.
8. Describe the battlefield's effects.
9. Assess other characteristics of the battlefield (mission dependent).
10. Evaluate enemy.
11. Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
12. Develop intelligence synchronization matrix (ISM).
13. Participate in staff wargame of decision support template (DST) and targeting plan (as enemy commander).
14. Develop ISR plan and overlay to support DST (with support from S-3, fire support officer [FSO], engineer, and air defense officer if available).
15. Unit S-2 section participates in the preparation, coordination, authentication, and distribution of orders and operations plans (OPLANs).
16. Unit S-2 section develops and provides applicable graphics to subordinate elements.
17. Unit S-2 coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities.
18. Prepare, update, and maintain the intelligence estimate and situational and event templates and assists with the preparation of the DST by nominating commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
19. Provide commander with input during COA analysis.
20. Assist commander by developing collection plan. Note: The S-2 identifies sufficient PIR, IR, NAIs, TAIs, and decision points (DPs) needed to control the battle.
21. Direct and coordinate intelligence collection activities
22. Request information from other sources.
23. Analyze available intelligence.
24. Assist with operations security (OPSEC) and counterreconnaissance.
25. Report intelligence IAW TSOP or as directed.
26. Unit S-2 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.
27. Access higher headquarters enemy situation database for updates.
28. Unit S-2 section maintains the enemy situation.
29. Unit S-2 section coordinates with the S-3 for processing materials (with intelligence purposes) taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and civilian internees.
30. Unit S-2 section assists the S-3 in preparing deception plans.
31. Unit S-2 section synchronizes tactical operations with all staff.
32. Unit S-2 section determines map requirements and requests maps from higher headquarters.
33. Unit S-2 section assesses and tracks the current battle and monitors the

execution of decisions.
34. Unit S-2 provides immediate and continuous feedback to the commander when new or updated intelligence is received.
35. Unit S-2 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems.
36. Unit S-2 supervises the S-2 section and S-2 personnel.
37. Unit S-2 section complies with ROE and ROI.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7216	TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CMDC-7207

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6208	SCT-CMDC-5207
SCT-CMDC-5210	SCT-CMDC-5208	SCT-CMDC-5209
TANK-CMDC-6204		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
5. MCDP 2 Intelligence
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
8. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
9. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
10. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections
11. MCWP 2-21 Imagery Intelligence
12. MCWP 2-22 Signals Intelligence
13. MCWP 2-24B Remote Sensor Operations
14. MCWP 2-26 Geographic Intelligence
15. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
16. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
17. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
18. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7207: Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Active and passive measures that a unit practices including noise, light, litter, and communications measures in order to deny friendly information to enemy forces. It is a component of force protection which conserves the fighting potential of a force. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) are operational and information is passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting

elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit employs OPSEC measures in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and eliminates or controls indicators which are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The unit practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.
3. Identify indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.
4. Develop a deception plan when planning missions.
5. Unit prepares for OPSEC.
6. Brief subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success.
7. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
8. Conduct extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
9. Unit executes the OPSEC plan.
10. Enforce measures that protect friendly information.
11. Prohibit fraternization with local civilians.
12. Make sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle.
13. Conduct inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).
14. Enforce safeguards for weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.
15. Ensure all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas.
16. Man and perform surveillance from observation posts (OPs).
17. Conduct counter reconnaissance patrols if possible.
18. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.
19. Conduct stand-to procedures.
20. Establish local security and specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
21. Use camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions.
22. Cover all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.
23. Use terrain and vegetation for concealment.
24. Avoid footpaths, trails, and or roads where possible.
25. Erase tracks leading into positions.

26. Control movement.
27. Use the proper movement formation and movement technique.
28. Enforce radio discipline.
29. Ensure subordinate elements change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and SOP.
30. Ensure subordinate elements use: varied transmission schedules and lengths, establish formats to expedite transmissions, encode messages or use secure voice, brevity codes when possible, the lowest power settings possible, and maintain radio silence as directed.
31. Ensure subordinate elements avoid transmission patterns.
32. Ensure subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected.
33. Continue to operate, disconnect the antenna, switch to the highest power, relocate the radio, use directional antennas, turn squelch off, use messenger and wire whenever possible when in static positions, and use the radio in the quiet, message mode.
34. Transmit an arranged number of taps or use the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner.
35. Enforce litter discipline.
36. Collect and back-haul trash during logistics runs during stationary periods.
37. Carry trash until it can be disposed of securely.
38. Enforce light and noise discipline.
39. Ensure subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map.
40. Enforce information assurance.
41. Unit leaders assess OPSEC measures.
42. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
43. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
44. Direct adjustments as necessary.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6204

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCDP 2 Intelligence
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
8. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
12. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TANK-CMDC-7208: Develop and Execute a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: Reconnaissance is a mission undertaken to obtain, by visual

observation or other detection methods, information about the activities and resources of an enemy. Forms of reconnaissance include route, area, and zone. Surveillance is the systematic observation of a zone (places, persons or things), by visual, electronic, aural, photographic or other means. The reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan is prepared by the S-2 in close coordination with the plan prepared by G-3/S-3. It assigns tasks to subordinates to develop information which satisfies the intelligence requirements the commander has established. It focuses assets on the targeted areas of interest (TAIs) and named areas of interest (NAIs).

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP). A reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) planning team is designated. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit staff plans R&S to support the commander's intent in accordance with the standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit R&S team develops initial R&S requirements, identifies asset requirements, and develops the R&S plan that supports the commander's intelligence requirements (IR). The unit staff develops and prioritizes specific orders and requests. The unit S-2 section identifies collection gaps and submits requests for information (RFIs) to higher headquarters. The unit staff develops an IR for each NAI. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The battalion S-3 assembles the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) planning team consisting of an S-2 representative and the Scout Platoon commander.
2. Unit R&S team, in conjunction with the staff, develops initial R&S requirements as part of mission analysis.
3. Unit R&S team converts the SIRs to production and collection requirements.
4. Unit R&S team develops the initial R&S plan.
5. The S-2 develops R&S scheme of support in coordination with the S-3.
6. The S-2 develops and prioritizes SOR and completes initial R&S plan.
7. Unit S-3 section tasks the appropriate unit in the form of a mission tasking order (OPORD or FRAGO) and disseminates R&S order to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.
8. Unit S-2 section identifies collection gaps and submits RFIs to higher headquarters.
9. Unit R&S team, in cooperation with the staff, develops a refined R&S plan as part of staff wargaming.
10. R&S team, in cooperation with the staff, completes the final R&S plan.
11. Unit R&S team updates the R&S plan as necessary based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil

considerations (METT-TC).
12. The R&S plan is put into execution.
13. The Scout Platoon and UAV assets conduct assigned R&S tasks.
14. The collection assets provide the R&S team with updated information as it becomes available.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CMDC-7207	TANK-CMDC-7206

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6208	TANK-CMDC-6207	SCT-CMDC-5210
SCT-CMDC-5208	SCT-CMDC-5209	SCT-CMDC-5207

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
5. MCDP 2 Intelligence
6. MCDP 6 Command and Control
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
9. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
10. MCRP 3-14.1A Scout Leader's Handbook
11. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
12. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
13. MCWP 2-21 Imagery Intelligence
14. MCWP 2-22 Signals Intelligence
15. MCWP 2-24B Remote Sensor Operations
16. MCWP 2-26 Geographic Intelligence
17. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
18. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
19. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
20. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
21. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
22. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
23. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7209: Integrate Sniper Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The integration of sniper operations is a command function that includes actions taken to task snipers and coordinate their mission with all elements on the battlefield. The battalion commander briefs snipers on the current situation, purposes of the mission, specific targets and desired results. Subsequently, the staff coordinates all sniper missions with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct operations at the location and time specified. The order includes all

applicable overlays and or graphics. Snipers are given specific missions (target criteria and priority) based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The unit integrates sniper(s) into unit operations in accordance with the tactical situation, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit commander and staff brief snipers on the current situation, purpose of the mission, specific targets, and the desired results. The unit commander and staff debriefs snipers after the completion of the sniper mission. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit commander and staff plan the employment of snipers using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
2. Conduct a map reconnaissance and update the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
3. Develop a reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the planning process.
4. Address sniper employment during course of action (COA) development.
5. Assign specific targets or specific types of targets.
6. Ensure targets are prioritized.
7. Determine the best mix of sniper teams.
8. Ensure proper terrain management with unit sniper assets.
9. Develop criteria that would allow sniper(s) to select key targets.
10. Unit commander, S-3, and S-2 brief sniper(s) on current situation. Note: During mission execution, there will be limited time for a formal briefing; in many cases, based on the tactical situation, the S-3 will brief and synchronize the actions and missions of the snipers.
11. Ensure sniper(s) understand the task(s) the commander wants and the purpose of each task.
12. Ensure sniper(s) understand the commander's priority of targets.
13. Describe the effects or results the commander expects.
14. Unit controls sniper teams from a central location.
15. Unit S-2 debriefs snipers upon completion of their mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7206 TANK-CMDC-7208 TANK-CMDC-7210
TANK-CMDC-7211

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6208 TANK-CMDC-6207

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-10 Sniper Training
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations

7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7210: Conduct Tactical Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The S-3 section organizes in order to plan, coordinate, create orders, and perform command and control activities to ensure the successful accomplishment of the mission.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Command Posts (CPs) are established and functioning. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts tactical operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The S-3 section plans, coordinates, creates orders, and performs command and control activities to ensure successful accomplishment of the mission. The S-3 section prepares, updates, and maintains the operations estimate. The S-3 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The S-3 section monitors the execution of decisions and tracks the current battle. The S-3 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The S-3 officer supervises the S-3 section and personnel. The S-3 section considers ROE and ROI during planning. The unit S-3 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The S-3 and staff section leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-3 coordinates the Marine Corps Planning Process.
3. Unit S-3 section prepares, coordinates, authenticates, publishes, and distributes the SOP, OPORDs, FRAGOs, warning orders (WARNOs), and operations plans (OPLANs) in coordination with other staff officers.
4. Unit S-3 section develops and provides applicable graphics to subordinate elements.
5. Unit S-3 section prepares, updates, and maintains operations estimate IAW SOP and or commander's guidance.
6. Unit S-3 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.
7. Unit S-3 section issues FRAGOs to implement guidance or directions of the commander.

8. Unit S-3 participates in targeting.
9. Unit S-3 section conducts staff coordination.
10. Unit S-3 section monitors the battle.
11. Unit S-3 coordinates with the S-2 to write the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) annex.
12. Unit S-3 recommends intelligence requirements (IR) to the S-2.
13. Unit S-3 section integrates fire support into all operations.
14. Unit S-3 plans tactical troop movement, including route selection, priority of movement, timing, security, bivouacking, quartering, staging, and preparing of the movement order.
15. Unit S-3 recommends priorities for allocating critical command resources.
16. Unit S-3 coordinates and directs terrain management (overall ground manager).
17. Unit S-3 determines combat service support (CSS) resource requirements in coordination with the S-1 and S-4.
18. Unit S-3 participates in course of action (COA) and decision support template (DST) development with other staff officers.
19. Unit S-3 recommends the general locations of command posts.
20. Unit S-3 recommends task organization and assigning missions to subordinate elements.
21. Unit S-3 plans and supervises OPSEC and force protection.
22. Unit S-3 exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the following special staff officers: air officer, fire support coordinator, artillery LNO, NBC officer, engineer officer, and S-6 officer.
23. Unit S-3 in concert with engineer LNO and other staff sections plans and coordinates mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.
24. Unit S-3 plans and coordinates air defense.
25. Unit S-3 and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) section plan and coordinate NBC defense.
26. Unit S-3 section assesses and tracks the current battle and monitors the execution of decisions.
27. Unit S-3 section coordinates information impacting operations with forward, adjacent, supporting, and supported elements.
28. Unit S-3 section supports the command group's command, control, and coordination of the battle.
29. Unit S-3 section executes contingency plans.
30. Unit S-3 section complies with ROE and ROI.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CMDC-7204	TANK-CMDC-7203
TANK-CMDC-7213	TANK-CMDC-7212	TANK-CBTS-7401
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CBTS-7403
TANK-CBTS-7402	TANK-CMDC-7211	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6206	TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-CBTS-6401

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
6. MCDP 5 Planning

7. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
8. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
9. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
10. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
11. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
12. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
13. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
14. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
15. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
16. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
17. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
18. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
19. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
20. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
21. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
22. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
23. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7211: Plan Tactical Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The battalion plans tactical operations as part of the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an OPORD, WARNO, or FRAGO to conduct an operation at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit plans operations as part of the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP) in accordance with appropriate references, standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. This process is abbreviated as necessary given the time available and the tactical situation. The unit S-3 section issues a WARNO to staff alerting them of pending planning process. The unit staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools. The unit commander and staff complete a quick initial assessment determining time available from mission receipt to mission execution. The unit commander issues planning guidance to the staff. The unit commander and staff conduct mission analysis. The unit commander approves the restated mission. The unit issues WARNOs as necessary during the planning process. The unit staff develops courses of action (COAs) for analysis and comparison. The unit staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy COA and most dangerous enemy COA. The unit staff briefs the selected COA and develops a plan that supports the higher commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-3 and staff section leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the MCPP; the unit executive officer (XO) is the time keeper for the MCPP and coordinates and synchronizes activities of all staff officers.
3. Unit commander identifies what is to be displayed as the common operational picture (COP).
4. Unit staff ensure that the COP is updated and maintained during the MCPP.
5. Unit S-3 section issues a WARNO to staff alerting them of a pending tactical operation and the planning process.
6. Unit XO coordinates staff actions required to ensure staff estimates are current and staff elements have necessary mission analysis tools.
7. Unit staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools.
8. Unit commander and staff complete quick initial assessment.
9. Unit commander determines whether time permits conduct of a full or an abbreviated (time-constrained environment) MCPP.
10. Unit commander issues his initial guidance.
11. Unit commander and staff deploy R&S assets early in the planning process but not before determining the initial R&S requirements.
12. Unit S-3 section issues the WARNO 1 to subordinate and supporting units.
13. Unit XO coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel as directed.
14. Unit commander and staff conduct mission analysis; each staff officer analyzes the mission and order for his area of expertise and or responsibility.
15. Unit commander approves restated mission.
16. Unit commander develops his initial intent; during mission analysis, the commander begins his visualization and develops his initial intent for the operation.
17. Unit commander issues the commander's guidance.
18. Unit S-3 section issues a WARNO 2 to subordinate and supporting elements immediately after the unit commander provides his guidance.
19. Unit commander and staff perform the following functions during the rest of the planning process: review periodically all available facts and assumptions for new or changed information, assess impact of changes on the plan, and make necessary adjustments.
20. Unit staff, upon receipt of commander's guidance, develops COAs for analysis and comparison.
21. Unit staff conducts course of action analysis (wargaming) for each COA.
22. Unit staff conducts an (internal) wargame briefing; this briefing is OPTIONAL and is normally given to the XO.
23. Unit staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy COA and most dangerous enemy COA.
24. Unit S-3 presents the decision briefing.
25. Unit commander approves a COA.
26. Unit S-3 section issues WARNO with essential information so subordinate elements can refine their plans.
27. Unit staff refines the COA based on the commander's decision and final guidance.
28. Unit staff prepares the order or plan by turning it into a clear, concise concept of operations, a scheme of maneuver, and the required fire support.

29. Unit commander reviews and approves orders before the staff reproduces and briefs them.
30. Unit staff reproduces, briefs, and distributes order.
31. Unit begins preparing for operations and conducts a rehearsal.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CBTS-7402
TANK-CBTS-7403	TANK-CBTS-7405	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
13. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
14. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
15. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
16. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
17. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
18. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7212: Prepare for Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Preparing for operations includes the actions a unit and its staff takes to prepare for combat operations.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The commander and staff completed the planning phase for the mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit prepares for operations in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, appropriate references, and higher commander's guidance. Unit leaders refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. The unit conducts extensive reconnaissance and

surveillance (R&S). Unit leaders conduct precombat checks. Unit leaders supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. The unit conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-3 and staff section leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff prepare for operations.
3. Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
4. Conduct backbriefs.
5. Update staff estimates when new information is received.
6. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
7. Ensure support plans are integrated with the tactical plan at each level.
8. Consider specific branches of the current plan or contingency planning of future (sequel) operations.
9. Look for changes in conditions that will result in new or significantly altered missions and thus cause the planning process to start again.
10. Direct or recommend actions to deal with forecasted changes.
11. Conduct extensive reconnaissance.
12. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
13. Ensure subordinates conduct equipment precombat checks and preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS).
14. Coordinate vertically and horizontally to exchange information and to synchronize actions that may impact on each staff officer's functional area.
15. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
16. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility, if possible, based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
17. Position forces IAW the plan.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7211

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6201	TANK-CMDC-6205	TANK-CMDC-6208
TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6206	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 5 Planning
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
13. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
14. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
15. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
16. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
17. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
18. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7213: Conduct Battle Tracking

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The battalion staff receives, analyzes, posts, and distributes information on the friendly and enemy situations. The staff updates the commander on the current situation and provides higher, adjacent, and subordinate units with a common picture of the battlefield.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All command posts (CPs) are operational and can send and receive reports and overlays. Analog and digital systems are operational and are passing information in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit commander gives his guidance, specifies his intent, and issues commander's critical information requirements (CCIR). The decision support template (DST) and synchronization matrix are developed and disseminated. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit tracks the tactical situation and operations in accordance with SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit staff receives, analyzes, posts, and distributes information and makes recommendations. The staff updates the commander on the current situation as required. The unit staff provides higher, subordinate, and adjacent units with a common picture of the battlefield. The unit staff maintains current situation map (SITMAP) and journals. The staff assesses when decision points require action and determines if adjustments are needed for the tactical plan. The staff keeps commander updated on future operations planning, current operation, and critical information coming in and going out of the unit headquarters. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The battalion staff section leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-3 defines CCIRs, related decisions and triggers, commander's

intent, mission, and situation of the current operation for the staff.
3. Unit S-3 or S-3 chief coordinate and manage battlefield update briefs and shift changes.
4. The S-3 chief ensures that personnel are briefed (orally or in writing) on who is responsible for tracking which reports and what to do when they do not receive one.
5. The S-3 chief initiates staff log to record key events.
6. The CP tracks as a minimum the following: subordinate unit locations and movement, adjacent and supporting unit locations and movement, enemy size, location, movement, and activity, weather status, friendly minefields, obstacles, NBC contamination in the AO, fire support coordination measures, fire support systems status, friendly and enemy contacts, civilians on the battlefield and location, aviation readiness and status, supply and personnel status, critical equipment status, status of current order execution, reports to higher headquarters, reports from subordinate headquarters, CCIRs, and, current OPORD/FRAGOs issued by the higher headquarters.
7. The S-3 ensures the operations chief (S-3C) maintains a copy of all current information.
8. The staff develops detailed graphics that convey critical information (control measures, weapons locations, and minefields).
9. The S-3 ensures periodic updates are focused, follow a prescribed format, and are attended by key personnel.
10. The S-3 chief develops a significant activities chart to brief the commander and visitors and assist in coordinating actions.
11. Radio operators distribute messages expeditiously to the relevant staff officer.
12. The staff processes incoming information.
13. Unit staff sections analyze reports to update charts and maps.
14. The S-3 provides staff analysis to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units as necessary to synchronize current operations.
15. The staff performs liaison activities with adjacent, supporting, or supported units.
16. The staff monitors mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.
17. The staff plans future operations, maintains situational awareness for the current operation, and manages information going in and out of the headquarters.
18. The staff keeps commander updated on future operations planning, current operation, and critical information coming in and going out of the unit headquarters.
19. The staff assesses operations.
20. The staff operates on a 24-hour basis with shift changes in accordance with standing operating procedures.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202 TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
13. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7214: Conduct a Rehearsal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A rehearsal is the process of practicing a plan before actual execution. Rehearsals assist units in clarifying the scheme of maneuver, synchronizing the battlefield operating systems, orienting subordinates to the positions and actions of other units, and practicing any possible branches and sequels from the decision support matrix. The rehearsal will not digress into a wargame. If the commander identifies problems with the synchronization, he should direct a rehearsal after the issues are resolved to ensure all participants clearly understand the required actions.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is preparing for a mission. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff is functioning. Mission planning and coordination are accomplished. The unit operations order (OPORD) is developed and briefed. The commander directs the S-3 to conduct a rehearsal. All critical commanders, staff, attachments, and operational control (OPCON) and attached leaders are present. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit plans, prepares for, and executes the rehearsal in accordance with the appropriate manual, the standard operating procedures (SOP), and commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key and critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate commanders and units to execute their mission. The unit commander and staff develop a rehearsal script. The unit commander and staff identify and prioritize key events to rehearse. The unit commander and staff coordinate and allocate time for key events requiring rehearsal. Designated personnel brief rehearsal participants. Unit leaders direct adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The unit commander and staff reinforce ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-3 and staff section leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.
3. Unit commander prepares for rehearsal.
4. The S-3 prepares for rehearsal.
5. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal.
6. Unit staff prepares for the rehearsal.
7. Unit moves to rehearsal site.
8. Unit executes rehearsal.
9. Unit leaders assess the rehearsal.
10. Recorder accomplishes the following after the rehearsal is complete: restates any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander and estimates the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.
11. Unit provides staff updates, issues OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix.
12. Commander assembles participants to conduct an after action review (AAR).

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7211 TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6205 SCT-CMDC-5204 TOW-CMDC-5204

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
9. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
10. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
11. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
13. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-7215: Conduct Communications Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The S-6 section establishes, maintains, and monitors information and communication systems in order to support unit operations. The S-6 establishes network connectivity by sending and receiving messages with higher, lower, and adjacent units via voice and digital systems.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit S-6 personnel and communications or data transfer equipment are available. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts communications operations in accordance with SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The S-6 section establishes, maintains, and monitors information systems to support unit operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-6 section staff gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-6 section plans, integrates, synchronizes, troubleshoots, maintains, and supervises signal support for unit operations.
3. Conduct mission analysis to determine specified and implied communication tasks.
4. Participate in intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) to determine the signal threat.
5. Coordinate with the S-2 on electronic countermeasure (ECM) threat and electronic counter countermeasure (ECCM) procedures.
6. Participate with a representative from the S-3 to determine command post (CP) sites.
7. Coordinate with the S-3 for placement of communications equipment and line-of-sight analysis.
8. Coordinate with the S-3 on manipulative communications deception and tactical ECCM.
9. Identify, coordinate, and provide for task force communication requirements.
10. Conduct network systems planning for the tactical internet (TI).
11. Produce the TI mission data package (MDP).
12. Determine TI router connectivity and loads into computer.
13. Review frequency allocation plan for all unit emitters.
14. Ensure all task organized units are supported by plan.
15. Confirm network management communication channels are in place.
16. Include adequate name service to include connectivity between name servers and managed objects.
17. Conduct retransmission (RETRANS) planning for the unit to include comparing assets with projected requirements.
18. Coordinate with next higher echelon signal officer for additional communications support if required.
19. Coordinate for maintenance support with the S-4.
20. Provide technical staff supervision over signal support activities throughout the unit.
21. Exercise OPCON of all communications assets assigned or attached to the unit.
22. Assume supervisory responsibility for all communications security (COMSEC) items within the unit to include accountability, distribution, destruction, and security.
23. Inspect subordinate unit signal support sections.
24. Review signal prescribed load lists (PLLs) and ensure scheduled services are completed on unit communications equipment.

25. Provide organizational level COMSEC maintenance to support the unit.
26. Unit S-6 section constructs the signal annex to the unit OPORD.
27. Provide annex to the S-3 for inclusion in the unit order.
28. Include the frequency modulation (FM) retransmission plan to support the commander's directed scheme of maneuver.
29. Prepare the digital subscriber table and or address book for the unit TI.
30. Unit S-6 section provides unit communications support.
31. Unit S-6 section manages TI network initialization functions.
32. Unit S-6 section ensures communication activities continue to support unit operations through changing situations and conditions.
33. Unit S-6 section provides communications security (COMSEC) management.
34. Unit S-6, in concert with the unit S-2 and unit S-3, processes interference reports and submits meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) FEEDER voice template message reports to higher headquarters by secure means as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7216 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7207

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6204 TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
9. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TANK-CMDC-7216: Maintain Information Security

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Information security includes all measures taken to maintain the security of information systems and data of every description. It includes the protection of information systems against unauthorized access or modification of information whether in storage, processing, or transit. It includes measures against denial of service to unauthorized users or providing access to authorized users, including those measures necessary to detect, document, and counter such threats.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all

applicable overlays and or graphics. Communication systems are operational and passing information in accordance with SOP. All information systems are accredited to process and store SECRET data. Security guidelines and procedures for all information systems are distributed down to the user level. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts information security in accordance with the SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-2 section verifies that all new and replacement users and operators have a minimum of a SECRET security clearance and updates the unit access roster. The S-6 section uses tools to identify and neutralize possible threats to the unit communications network. Staff sections monitor their sections for security breaches and suspicious activities. Staff sections account for all communications security (COMSEC) equipment and classified material. All command post (CP) personnel understand the unit's emergency destruction procedures and continuity of operations plan (COOP). Some iterations of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit S-6 and staff develop the information assurance (IA) plan.
2. Conduct mission analysis to determine specific issues for all information systems.
3. Identify possible threat factors to command assets, vulnerabilities, and personnel security issues.
4. Determine what security architecture will be utilized to protect systems, networks, and information from attacks and intrusion.
5. Determine information assurance management (security manager, security officer, and communications security [COMSEC]).
6. Identify the main areas of concern for information assurance.
7. Design security architecture to ensure data integrity, confidentiality, authentication, and availability of network resources.
8. Develop emergency destruction procedures when information systems are subject to imminent danger or capture.
9. Unit commander, with staff input, monitors and implements changes to IA security level.
10. Change IA security level based on reassessment of risks in current and future operating environment.
11. Direct changes in command post (CP) security measures (operations sergeant).
12. Implement changes in section security, computer system security, and network security (staff sections).
13. Verify that changes in CP security have been accomplished (operations sergeant).
14. Unit staff sections update CP access roster.
15. Notify S-2 section of changes in personnel requiring access to the CP (staff sections).
16. Verify that all unit personnel with access to classified systems and networks have the appropriate security clearance level (S-2 section).
17. Unit staff sections maintain control of information systems within their area of responsibility.
18. Notify section information security officer (ISO) when changes are made to computer system hardware and or software.

19. Update computer system with latest virus definition update.
20. Report all incidents of virus infections to the staff section ISO IAW SOP or guidance from higher headquarters and or appropriate regulations.
21. Secure computer system classified material IAW SOP, guidance from higher headquarters.
22. Report all suspicious activities or suspected computer system or network compromises to the section ISO.
23. Maintain accreditation packets for all automation systems assigned to the section IAW SOP, guidance from higher headquarters.
24. Unit S-6 maintains control of information systems within the unit area of responsibility.
25. Unit staff sections control COMSEC material
26. Maintain control of COMSEC material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate regulations.
27. Update cryptographic (CRYPTO) at designated times.
28. Document the destruction of COMSEC material IAW SOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate regulations.
29. Unit COMSEC custodian operates COMSEC field account, provides COMSEC support, issues new COMSEC material, directs the change of CRYPTO variables, accounts for the issue, turn-in, or destruction of COMSEC material, reports all suspected COMSEC compromises to higher headquarters S-6, and directs the initiation of the emergency destruction plan.
30. Unit staff sections control classified material (other than automation or COMSEC).
31. Unit S-2 security manager establishes classified document field account IAW SOP, provides classified document support, distributes new classified material, accounts for the issue, turn-in, or destruction of classified material, reports all suspected classified document compromises to the division G-2, and directs the initiation of the emergency destruction plan.
32. Unit S-6 prepares the information assurance annex to the unit operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6204 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7207

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7206 TANK-CMDC-7210 TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-CMDC-7215

REFERENCES:

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCDP 2 Intelligence
5. MCDP 6 Command and Control
6. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
11. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
14. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TANK-CBTS-7401: Establish and Operate a Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An element of a command post, consisting of fire support and communication personnel and equipment, by means of which the commander exercises coordination of all forms of fire support. The FSCC is responsible for targeting coordination and integrating fires on targets by means of fire support assets organic to the battalion or in general support.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to establish the FSCC. A reconnaissance of the new location is completed, the site secured, and the CP moved. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The battalion has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion establishes the FSCC in accordance with standard operating procedures and higher commander's guidance. FSCC personnel provide timely and effective tactical and technical fire control in support of current operations. The FSCC ensures that all targets are adequately covered by appropriate available weapon systems.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-3, Fire Support Coordinator (FSC), Artillery Liaison Officer (Arty LNO), Naval Gunfire Liaison Officer (NGLO) and Air Officer (AO) maintain situational understanding using all available information sources.
2. The battalion S-3 controls the FSCC in the main CP or Alpha Command; the battalion S-3A controls the FSCC in the alternate CP or Bravo Command.
3. The FSC, Artillery LNO, AO, NGLO and radio operators form the FSCC are used as required depending on assets available.
4. The FSC coordinates the actions of the FSCC to support the scheme of maneuver.
5. The Artillery LNO coordinates all artillery related fire support requests with the direct support artillery unit.
6. The AO coordinates all aviation related fire support requests with higher headquarters.
7. The AO monitors and controls the routing and tasking of aviation assets in support of the battalion.
8. The NGLO coordinates all naval gunfire support requests and tasks with the naval fire control agency.
9. The FSCC personnel are accommodated (mounted or dismounted) to allow immediate communication and coordination.
10. The FSCC personnel use a common map for coordination to prevent errors.
11. The FSCC personnel have direct access to communications assets (voice or digital) to support coordination with higher, adjacent and subordinate

units.
12. The FSC is accommodated to allow direct communication with the S-3.
13. The FSC, Artillery LNO, AO, NGLO and radio operators establish and prepare the FSCC for operations.
14. Complete all communications checks on support and higher headquarters communication nets (voice and / or digital).
15. Post and update situation map (SITMAP), conventional and digital, verify appropriate overlays are set and control procedures are established.
16. Update the commander, S-3 and staff on critical events occurring during movement.
17. The FSC, Artillery LNO, AO, NGLO and radio operators accomplish the following tasks upon the transfer of control between CPs: verify that all functions have been transferred and alternate CP counterparts are prepared to assume control of fire support coordination center operations; and initiate net call (digital and voice) to subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging passing and assumption of control.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7215		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-CBTS-6401

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
9. MCWP 3-16.1 Artillery Operations
10. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
11. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
12. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
13. MCWP 3-22.2 Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD)
14. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
15. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
16. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CBTS-7402: Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Fire Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The collective and coordinated integration and synchronization of the fires and effects of armed aircraft, land-based and sea-based indirect fire systems, and electronic warfare systems that directly support combat forces against ground and tactical objectives.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The unit has priority of fires from a direct support (DS) artillery battalion or battery and is given close air support (CAS) sorties (fixed-wing and/or rotary-wing) for planning purposes. Immediate or additional sorties are available upon request. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit employs fire support in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The fire support element participates in the targeting process (through a liaison officer and/or Fire Support Coordinator). The S-3 and FSC conducts battle tracking to stay abreast of the situation. The unit executes fire support in support of the close battle. The S-3, FSC and Air Officer (AO) coordinate and deconflict all fire support and maneuver. The FSC and AO expedite immediate fire support requests (both indirect and CAS). The FSC ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives are achieved. The AO controls and coordinates CAS to meet attack objectives. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit S-3, FSC, Artillery LNO, and AO gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The FSC, Artillery LNO and AO participate in the targeting process.
3. Unit commander provides guidance for the targeting effort: include essential fires support tasks (EFSTs); how he intends to shape the battlefield with fire support assets; critical enemy formation, function, or facility that, if attacked will lead most directly to mission accomplishment; targeting assessment requirements; and how aviation support will be integrated into the unit scheme of maneuver.
4. AO coordinates aviation assets and advises the unit commander and staff on the employment of aviation and understands the unit commander's intent, scheme of maneuver, and how aviation assets are to be integrated into the scheme of maneuver; coordinates with aviation unit; informs the commander and S-3 on the status of aviation assets; advises the commander and S-3 on the proper employment and missions for Army aviation; and coordinates with the S-2 to obtain information pertinent to Army aviation planning.
5. AO obtains target location(s), objective, or engagement area (EA) locations; summary or synopsis of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB); priority intelligence requirements (PIR), essential elements of friendly information (EEFI), and friendly force information requirements (FFIR); and weather and terrain information.
6. AO advises the S-3 on requesting additional aviation assets and supporting elements if required.
7. S-3 assisted by the AO develops the aviation appendix to the OPORD.
8. S-3 addresses air corridors to and from the forward line of own troops (FLOT) to include penetration corridor, movement to the objective, suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) operations, actions on the

objective, movement from the objective, deception plan, special instructions for Army aviation integration into the unit air defense effort, and coordination instructions.

9. The FSC, Artillery LNO and AO determine surface targets to be attacked while participating in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
10. The FSC, Artillery LNO and AO obtain EFSTs from higher headquarters order, and analyze relative combat power.
11. The FSC, Artillery LNO and AO focuses on arranging specified and implied tasks on the battlefield in time and space, analyzing necessary combat power needed to achieve the tasks, friendly capabilities pertaining to the operation (combat, combat support, and combat service support), what type operations may be possible from both friendly and enemy perspectives, and how and where the enemy may be vulnerable.
12. Analyze relative force ratios (friendly versus enemy) and compares strengths and weaknesses of each.
13. Establish the HPTs and HVTs list.
14. Ensure targeting members have HVTs list for each enemy course of action (COA).
15. Portray the HVTs in time and space on a map background with respect to a situation template (SITEMP).
16. Review choke points or areas favorable to engaging forces.
17. Establish the initial target notional overlay.
18. Analyze HVTs against friendly mission and assets to develop an initial HPT list by phase for each COA.
19. Refine the HPT list and the target overlay(s) as part of COA analysis (wargaming).
20. Determine time and method to engage the HPTs and or HVTs and incorporates conclusions into the attack guidance matrix (AGM).
21. Determine how to locate and track HPTs and or HVTs by developing the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
22. Determine if, when, and how target assessment will be accomplished.
23. FSC and S-2 consolidate the HPT and or HVT list and AGM in order to produce the fire support execution matrix (FSEM).
24. Unit S-2 section presents the weather, current, projected enemy set, scheme of maneuver, and presents priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and enemy decision points.
25. Unit S-3 section presents the current and projected friendly set and scheme of maneuver.
26. Unit S-3 and FSC present the concept of fires, HPTL and AGM guidelines for approval.
27. Unit commander approves the concept of fires, HPT and or HVT list and AGM or provides further guidance.
28. Unit targeting team produces and disseminates FRAGO or incorporates targeting products (fire support plan) into the OPORD.
29. Unit targeting team updates the targeting products based upon battle update briefs, changes to friendly or enemy situation, FRAGO, and unplanned events.
30. The S-3, FSC, Artillery LNO and AO ensure planned fire support is updated based on the evolving tactical situation.
31. AO acts as liaison between air defense units and air control units.
32. The AO receives, processes, and disseminates air defense information, intelligence, and control measures to subordinate units using secure communications and disseminates air defense information to aviation assets OPCON to the unit.
33. The AO coordinates with the fire support element for fire support and

aviation communications requirements.

34. The AO coordinates with higher headquarters and the aviation squadron.
35. The AO relays area of operations (AO) information, air defense warnings, ROE, weapons control status, and hostile engagement criteria, coordinating altitudes, weather, and positive and procedural control measures.
36. The AO monitors aviation operations supporting the unit, ensures aviation forces are properly employed and are in compliance with the unit commander's intent and overall scheme of maneuver, ensures all aviation-related reports to higher headquarters are accurate and submitted in a timely manner, and maintains a current status of aviation assets.
37. The AO assists in the identification and resolution of airspace conflicts, monitors current operations of airspace users; informs airspace users at each echelon of any loss of communication affecting any airspace user; identifies and correlates situations affecting airspace use for unscheduled events; analyzes airspace use on the situation map (SITMAP) to determine and resolve conflicts; recommends shifting or ending fires when affecting high priority aviation missions; disseminates changes of control or restriction measures affecting airspace users; analyzes future OPORD and operations plans (OPLANs) for possible conflicts of flight control measures, artillery and ADA locations, and flight obstructions.
38. The S-3, FSC, and AO update situation boards and charts, conduct battle tracking, and monitor maneuver, enemy, and fire support situation.
39. The S-3 and FSC conduct fire support operations in support of the close battle, resolve any outstanding conflicts between the scheme of maneuver and the scheme of fires, assess target intelligence information and target production to facilitate timely and accurate engagements, coordinate and synchronize the timely detection and attack of HPTs with the targeting team.
40. FSC tracks preplanned fires in the fire support plan.
41. FSC ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives have been achieved.
42. FSC and AO validate continued compliance with current ROE and troop safety guidelines through adherence to FS coordination procedures; coordinate as required with higher, lower, and adjacent units, other services, allies, and host nation to clear fires for engagements across unit boundaries and to prevent potential fratricide situations; issue fire mission request; and provide attack assets.
43. FSC and AO expedite immediate fire support requests.
44. The S-3, S-2, FSC, and AO monitor battle damage assessment (BDA) requirements and results.
45. AO executes immediate CAS.
46. FSC and Artillery LNO update the direct support (DS) artillery unit.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7213	TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7210	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CBTS-6402

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCDP 5 Planning
5. MCDP 6 Command and Control
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
8. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
9. MCRP 3-16A Tactics, Techniques, And Procedures For The Targeting Process
10. MCRP 3-16B The Joint Targeting Process and Procedures for Targeting Time-Critical Targets
11. MCRP 3-16C Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Combined Arms Commander
12. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
13. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
14. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
15. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
16. MCWP 3-16.1 Artillery Operations
17. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
18. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
19. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
20. MCWP 3-22.2 Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD)
21. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
22. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
23. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
24. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
25. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-7403: Plan, Coordinate, and Employ Aviation Assets

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The act of planning for the employment and coordination of all defensive measures designed to destroy attacking enemy aircraft or missiles or to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of such attack.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. Air defense assets are placed in an operational control (OPCON) status to the unit. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts air defense planning activities in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-3 and air officer (AO) coordinate air defense assets

and advise the unit commander and staff on employment. The unit employs air defense assets within their capabilities. The unit monitors current operations of airspace users. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP) and integrate air defense support into the unit scheme of maneuver.
3. The unit S-3 and air officer (AO) coordinate air defense and advise the unit commander and staff on the employment of air defense assets.
4. The unit S-3 understands the unit commander's intent, scheme of maneuver, and how air defense assets are to be integrated into the scheme of maneuver.
5. The unit S-3 and AO coordinate with air defense unit.
6. The air defense unit commander informs the S-3 on the status of assets OPCON to the unit.
7. The air defense unit commander advises the commander and or S-3 on the proper employment, coverage priority and missions for air defense assets.
8. The air defense unit commander and S-3 coordinate with S-2 to obtain information pertinent to air defense planning.
9. The battalion commander and S-3 determine air defense weapon employment (centralized / decentralized) and positioning.
10. The unit S-3, AO, and air defense unit commander develop the air defense appendix to the OPORD.
11. Address air corridors to and from the forward line of own troops (FLOT) to include penetration corridor, passive measures (dispersion, air guards and the use of covered and concealed routes), movement to the objective, actions on the objective, movement from the objective, special instructions for aviation integration into the unit air defense effort, and coordination instructions.
12. The S-3 disseminates enemy air approaches, air defense status and weapons control status.
13. The S-3 and AO coordinate aviation employment with the air defense unit commander.
14. The S-3 receives, processes, and disseminates air defense information, intelligence, and control measures to subordinate units.
15. The AO disseminates air defense information to aviation assets OPCON to the unit to include early warning, air defense artillery unit locations, known enemy AD locations, minimum risk routes, coordinating altitudes, and all known positive and procedural controls.
16. The AO advises AD commander on types of aircraft and unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) use.
17. The S-3 and AO coordinate with higher headquarters.
18. The S-3 monitors all air defense operations and all air defense assets supporting the unit.
19. The S-3 ensures air defense are properly employed and are in compliance with the unit commander's intent and overall scheme of maneuver, all air defense-related reports to higher headquarters are accurate and submitted in a timely manner, and maintains a current status of all air defense assets.
20. The S-3, AO, and air defense unit commander coordinate in the

identification and resolution of airspace conflicts.

21. The AO and air defense unit commander monitor current operations of airspace users.
22. The S-3 and S-2 monitor intelligence reports.
23. The AO identifies, coordinates, and disseminates unscheduled use of airspace in the battalion zone.
24. The S-3 informs subordinate leaders of any loss of communication affecting the use of air or air defense assets.
25. The AO recommends shifting or holding air defense assets when affecting high priority aviation missions.
26. The S-3, FSC, AO and air defense unit commander disseminate changes of control or restriction measures.
27. The unit employs passive measures in accordance with the threat and mission (cover routes, camouflage, dispersion and air guards).
28. Air defense assets cover the battalion's elements in accordance with the commanders intent and scheme of maneuver.
29. The unit reacts to an enemy air defense warning.
30. Warning is disseminated immediately to all subordinate elements and weapons control and AD status are adjusted as necessary.
31. The unit reacts to an enemy air attack.
32. Warning is disseminated immediately to all subordinate elements.
33. Weapons control status is not violated.
34. Enemy aircraft are engaged by all AD assets and an other weapon systems in accordance with weapons control status.
35. All of the units elements take evasive actions as aircraft begin attacking.
36. The air defense unit commander controls all AD engagements.
37. The air defense unit does not engage friendly aircraft.
38. The S-3, AO and air defense unit commander analyze future OPORD and or operations plans (OPLANs) for possible conflicts of flight corridors, control measures, and AD locations, and flight obstructions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7213	TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CBTS-7401
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-CBTS-6401

REFERENCES:

1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 44-8 (FM 3-01.8) Combined Arms for Air Defense
5. MCDP 5 Planning
6. MCDP 6 Command and Control
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
12. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
13. MCWP 3-22.2 Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD)
14. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
15. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations

16. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
17. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
18. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-7404: Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and Survivability Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The actions a unit takes to provide force protection and freedom of maneuver during tactical operations. The primary purpose of mobility operations is to maintain freedom of movement for maneuver units. The primary purpose of countermobility operations is to delay, disrupt, or destroy the enemy, increase time for target acquisition, and increase weapon effectiveness. The primary purpose of survivability operations is to protect the unit and deceive the enemy, including the construction of protective positions to reduce the effectiveness of enemy weapon systems and concealment to prevent enemy observation.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission (offensive or defensive) at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has engineer assets in direct support (DS) or attached. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit integrates and synchronizes combat support based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The unit conducts extensive R&S of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and terrain. The unit executes mobile and area defense engineer tasks IAW the commander's intent. The unit executes offensive engineer tasks IAW the commander's intent. The unit identifies and breaches obstacles to provide force protection and freedom of maneuver. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit engineer and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and plan using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order and conduct a map reconnaissance.
4. Ensure that all available information-gathering assets are employed, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate

the enemy, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).

5. Include location and orientation of enemy forces, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
6. Develop reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
7. Synchronize fires to suppress, neutralize, or destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's mission.
8. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, and defending enemy positions or key weapons.
9. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
10. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
11. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
12. Plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
13. Develop a scheme-of-obstacle overlay and obstacle-execution matrix IAW the mission.
14. Plan to support defensive operations.
15. Develop a plan that focuses on maintaining the unit's freedom of maneuver.
16. Plan an obstacle system that not only attacks the enemy where desired but also assists counterattacks and facilitates future operations IAW the commander's intent.
17. Identify critical engineer tasks early.
18. Develop operations security (OPSEC) measures and a specific counterreconnaissance plan.
19. Task organize engineers so they can support a rapid transition to the offense.
20. Designate engineers to support the reserve.
21. Plan obstacles that allow spoiling and counterattacks to succeed.
22. Designate engineers that are not held in reserve but remain committed and work on the commander's priority tasks.
23. Plan obstacles for forward deployed forces.
24. Clear counterattack routes of obstacles.
25. Prepare breaches through friendly obstacles.
26. Construct combat roads and trails for counterattacks and lateral movement between fighting positions.
27. Plan to conduct breaching and assault-bridging operations for reserves or the counterattack force.
28. Plan to support offensive operations.
29. Develop a plan that focuses on sustaining the offense's momentum.
30. Plan for a highly mobile engineer force well forward and integrated into maneuver formations.

31. Designate engineers or maneuver elements that are responsible for

reporting and marking lanes or bypasses through or around obstacles.

32. Identify special considerations for engineer equipment such as replacement bridges for armored launchers, follow-on tactical bridging, lift capability for mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC) reloading, and lane-marking materials to replenish marking systems.
33. Plan for combined-arms obstacle-breaching rehearsals to ensure that all elements involved are synchronized.
34. Identify general engineering requirements that will increase during offensive combat since lines of communications (LOCs) will lengthen.
35. Plan for an on call rapid-mining and rapid-obstacle emplacement capability that is essential for flank security.
36. Designate engineers to emplace obstacles rapidly to protect attacking forces from enemy counterattacks once on the objective.
37. Plan for a transition to the defense (this is essential because of the long lead time needed to obtain and move engineer Class IV and Class V materials).
38. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
39. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available.
40. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
41. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
42. Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults.
43. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
44. Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).
45. Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement.
46. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
47. Plan combat service support (CSS).
48. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
49. Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort (the S-4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward R&S assets).
50. Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
51. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
52. Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.
53. Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.
54. Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable).
55. Conduct risk management.
56. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
57. Unit prepares for the mission.
58. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.

59. Conduct extensive R&S of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and

terrain.

60. Locate all obstacles.
61. Determine size and boundaries, composition and breaching requirements, gaps and bypass routes, enemy weapons covering each obstacle, available amount of cover and concealment on routes and approaches, best terrain for sighting friendly obstacles.
62. Conduct precombat checks.
63. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
64. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
65. Position forces IAW the plan.
66. Unit executes defensive tasks.
67. Execute mobile defense tasks IAW the commander's intent.
68. Construct combat roads and trails to allow friendly forces in defensive positions to reposition from one position to another.
69. Site tactical obstacles to disrupt and delay enemy forces, to assist in the separation of echelons, and to turn the enemy into engagement and objective areas .
70. Site fixed obstacles to support the enemy's destruction by fires.
71. Assist in developing survivability positions in depth.
72. Breach friendly obstacles to allow freedom of maneuver for the unit.
73. Breach enemy obstacles emplaced by air, artillery, or ground means.
74. Execute area defense tasks IAW the commander's intent.
75. Retain centralized control over engineer elements and their resources.
76. Withdraw engineers to work on subsequent defenses in depth (once the battle is underway).
77. Site tactical obstacles to: force the enemy into engagement areas, block enemy further advance, block the enemy from using avenues of approach that will allow him to avoid the main defense, and fragment the enemy force and allow the defender to deal with only a small portion of the enemy at a time (disrupting obstacles used just forward of EAs).
78. Unit breaches obstacles.
79. Report obstacles and breaches.
80. Report all friendly obstacles and existing or enemy obstacles that impact on friendly maneuver and or movement and locations of breaches are reported to the higher headquarters.
81. Make the breach quickly considering the size and coverage of the obstacle.
82. Mark lanes and distribute information within unit.
83. Guide follow-on elements through the breach without any losses due to mines.
84. Unit conducts survivability actions whenever the unit stops for more than one hour.
85. Position all vehicles in full defilade positions and uses available concealment and camouflage.
86. Protect all dismounted Marines against indirect fire.
87. Ensure elements are not positioned on obvious terrain (terrain that would be picked by the enemy on a map reconnaissance).
88. Ensure all vehicles have alternate and supplementary positions and covered routes (natural or prepared).
89. Unit conducts survivability actions whenever the unit stops for longer than eight hours.
90. Ensure all Marines have dug in positions.
91. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6404	TANK-CBTS-6403	SCT-CMDC-5211

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. FM 5-102 Countermobility
4. FM 5-103 Survivability
5. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
6. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
13. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-7405: Plan and Employ Engineer Assets

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

DESCRIPTION: The act of coordinating and integrating engineer assets into a ground scheme of maneuver.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The unit has an engineer platoon in direct support (DS) or attached. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit staff develops an engineer estimate in accordance with standard operating procedure, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The engineer is integrated into the unit staff and participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP). The engineer, with input from the unit staff, conducts the Engineer Battlefield Assessment (EBA) and develops the engineer plan. The engineer recommends the allocation of engineer assets that supports the unit commander's intent and scheme of maneuver. The unit engineer monitors the battle. The engineer makes operational reports through the unit S-3 and provides other required reports through engineer channels as necessary. The unit staff considers ROE and ROI during planning and enforces it during execution.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The engineer, with assistance of staff, conducts battlespace assessment as part of the MCPP.
3. Obtain commander's planning guidance and develop the EBA.
4. Conduct terrain analysis (terrain analysis is a major component of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield).
5. Analyze the terrain's impact on the battlefield using observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach (OCOKA) framework; advantages and disadvantages that the terrain offers the enemy and friendly forces; conclusions on the terrain's impact on accomplishing the mission.
6. Conduct enemy mission and mobility and survivability capabilities.
7. Support the S-2 during the enemy evaluation by focusing on the enemy's mission as it relates to its engineer capabilities.
8. Develop an estimate of the enemy's engineer capabilities using the S-2's order of battle and the knowledge of enemy engineer organizations and other assets (such as combat-vehicle self-entrenching capabilities that may impact engineer operations).
9. Use the S-2's situation template (SITEMP) and the enemy's capabilities estimate to plot the enemy's engineer effort and its location.
10. Coordinate with the S-2 and recommend priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and the engineer force needed to augment the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) effort that will confirm or deny the SITEMP.
11. Determine the enemy's mobility capabilities and location in its formation, enemy's use of scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), enemy engineers that support the reconnaissance effort, high value targets (such as bridging assets, breaching assets, and SCATMINE delivery systems), countermobility and survivability capabilities in a transition to a defense, enemy's tactical and protective obstacle effort, use of SCATMINEs, and survivability and fortification efforts.
12. Conduct friendly mission and mobility and survivability capabilities.
13. Determine engineer forces task-organized to the unit as well as the assets that other members of the combined-arms team have (such as mine plows) to determine the assets that are available.
14. Use standard engineer planning factors or known unit work rates to determine the total engineer capabilities.
15. Combine the analysis of the terrain, enemy capabilities, and friendly capabilities to form facts and assumptions.
16. Form facts and assumptions that focus on the information required by the unit commander and his battle staff to make decisions, likely enemy engineer effort and the most probable enemy course of action (COA), potential enemy vulnerabilities, critical friendly requirements, and the impact these factors have on the mission.
17. Focus on the components of the basic order and engineer annex when the mission is received to include the enemy situation, mission paragraph, task organization, and logistics paragraph.
18. Determine type of operation (offensive or defensive), current intelligence picture, engineer assets available, and time available.
19. Identify engineer specified, implied, and essential tasks that are mission-critical and have an impact on the overall mission.
20. Determine engineer constraints.
21. Conduct risk assessment.
22. Issue a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate engineer elements.

23. Develop the asset allocation and a SOEO that is generic, without a specific engineer force allocation or unit designation.
24. Analyze relative combat power and compare the anticipated enemy engineer capability with the friendly engineer's capability needed to defeat the enemy.
25. Assess engineer requirements based on the maneuver COA, situation analysis, mission analysis, and commander's intent.
26. Focus on how engineer efforts integrate into and support the maneuver COA.
27. Address all phases of the operation, especially where engineer priorities must change to support the maneuver COA.
28. Balance available assets against support requirements.
29. Prepare a statement describing the asset allocation.
30. Wargame the engineer plan, as part of the MCPP.
31. Ensure that the asset allocation supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff elements.
32. Identify weaknesses in his plan and make adjustments if necessary.
33. Ensure that the unit S-2 integrates enemy engineer assets and actions as he plays the enemy force.
34. Compare COAs in terms of which asset allocation best supports mission accomplishment (the engineer's comparison is only part of the total comparison by the staff).
35. Recommend a COA. Note: The engineer may have to consider a COA that he can least support if, from the other staff perspectives, it is the best selection.
36. Finalize the engineer plan and participates in developing the order.
37. The engineer assists the staff in producing the order or plan.
38. State clearly engineer priorities to maneuver units or tasks.
39. State the SCATMINE concept and briefly states how the commander intends to use SCATMINEs, by system type. Note: It gives control measures to facilitate future maneuvers and includes approval authority for employing short and long self-destruct mines.
40. List engineer tasks identified throughout the estimate process.
41. Include required material or services to support engineers and their missions.
42. The engineer develops the Engineer Annex to the OPORD.
43. Include critical information derived from the EBA process: all critical information and tasks not covered elsewhere in the order; items not covered in the SOPs, information and tasks directed to major subordinate elements of the supported unit, not supporting engineer units; information and instructions that have been fully coordinated with other parts of the OPORD, supported-unit commander, and staff; all existing and proposed friendly obstacles and control measures (obstacles, restrictions, and lanes, directed or tactical reserve obstacles, and situational obstacles), including associated named areas of interest (NAI) and target areas of interest (TAI); known and plotted enemy obstacles (must also be on the situation template); logistic locations and routes, as they apply to engineer operations; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated areas; SCATMINE restrictions; river-crossing locations and restrictions.
44. The engineer receives subordinate unit's obstacle plans and incorporates them into the unit obstacle data base.
45. The engineer participates in the OPORD brief to the assembled command group.
46. The engineer prepares for operations.

47. Coordinate with the staff to ensure integration of engineer operations into the maneuver plan.
48. Monitor intelligence updates and provides information to the unit commander and staff as necessary.
49. Coordinate for additional engineer assets and resources.
50. Monitor precombat inspections and rehearsals of subordinate engineer elements as required.
51. The engineer monitors the battle.
52. Report the status of significant engineer events as they occur.
53. Monitor enemy and friendly locations and critical events.
54. Track the decision support template and synchronization matrix and keep the unit commander and staff informed.
55. Track the employment of enemy and friendly SCATMINE systems.
56. Send SCATMINE warning to subordinate elements.
57. Track battle losses and request replacements.
58. Track the positioning of class IV and class V supplies.
59. The engineer makes operational reports through the unit S-3 and provides other required reports through engineer channels as necessary.
60. The engineer controls engineer assets not task organized to subordinate elements.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CMDC-7210
TANK-CMDC-7201		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6403	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CBTS-6404

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
4. FM 5-101 Mobility
5. FM 5-102 Countermobility
6. FM 5-103 Survivability
7. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
8. FM 90-1 Countermobility
9. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
10. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
11. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
12. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
13. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
14. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
15. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
16. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
17. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

TANK-CBTS-7406: Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect itself

against chemical or biological attack based on the enemy's capabilities.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a chemical attack in its area of operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit prepares for a chemical/biological attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit constructs or reinforces positions, briefs or inspects personnel, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to subordinate elements.
3. Direct implementation of defensive preparations consistent with the mission and threat.
4. Direct members to assume MOPP4.
5. Ensure companies inspect personnel for proper fit of protective masks and clothing.
6. Implement procedures to prevent contamination of equipment and supplies IAW the SOP.
7. Ensure designated personnel conduct monitoring.
8. Operate the chemical agent alarm continuously and upwind when the unit is stationary.
9. Unit personnel take additional actions consistent with mission.
10. Employ proper field sanitation measures and personal hygiene.
11. Check operation of detection equipment as directed by leaders and supervisors.
12. Identify or construct protective shelters.
13. Use the buddy team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
14. Cover all exposed equipment and supplies.
15. Monitor area by testing with detector kits and or paper to determine level of contamination.
16. Cover equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
17. Attach M8 or M9 paper to overgarments, equipment, and supplies.
18. Leaders brief and inspect personnel.
19. Vehicle commanders and drivers prepare vehicles.
20. Store water, rations, and equipment, not being used, in the vehicle.
21. Close all hatches.
22. Place covers on crew-served weapons (dependent on the tactical

situation).
23. Unit conducts a rehearsal time permitting.
24. Unit takes cover.
25. Unit commander reports the results of monitoring IAW SOP and guidance from higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TOW-CBTS-5401 TANK-CBTS-6405 SCT-CBTS-5401

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
13. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
14. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
15. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
16. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7407: React to a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a chemical or biological attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to mitigate the effects of an attack.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to a chemical/biological attack. The unit headquarters initially deploys in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Automatic alarm(s) sound or detector paper changes color. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit reacts to a chemical attack in accordance with standard operating procedures or appropriate references. The unit sounds the alarm (vocal or non-vocal), conducts immediate decontamination, assumes the appropriate MOPP, takes cover, and notifies higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements.
EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander, staff, and subordinate leaders ensure Marines react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical/biological attack.
3. Ensure Marines spread the chemical/biological alarm to all unit elements IAW the SOP, put on protective masks within time standards, give the alarm, use collective protective shelters and cover (if available) or any other suitable shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination, and decontaminate exposed skin within one minute of contact and before going into MOPP 4.
4. Assume MOPP 4 as soon as possible.
5. Check Marines to ensure protective measures are followed.
6. Determine extent of and disseminate information on the area of contamination.
7. Ensure contaminated elements do not move through uncontaminated elements if applicable.
8. Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel initiate chemical monitoring IAW SOP.
9. Determine the type(s) of chemical(s) employed.
10. Determine the extent of contamination.
11. Unit headquarters takes additional protective measures.
12. Conduct skin decontamination.
13. Ensure Marines monitor their buddies for signs of chemical poisoning IAW the SOP, administer a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to Marines with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning, administer self-aid with nerve agent antidote, and perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
14. Conduct wipe down and perform spray down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decon kits within 15 minutes of attack.
15. Protect exposed equipment and supplies.
16. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.
17. Designated leader initiates unmasking procedures with the chemical agent detector kit (kit indicates negative results).
18. Choose two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area if possible.
19. Ensure test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear their masks.
20. Observe test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes.
21. If no symptoms of illness are detected, report "ALL CLEAR".
22. Direct the subordinate elements in the area to unmask (continues to watch for delayed symptoms).
23. Ensure casualties are provided medical care.
24. Report casualties.
25. Designated leader initiates unmasking procedures without chemical agent detector kit, using M8 detector paper.
26. Choose two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area, if possible.
27. Ensure test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear their masks.
28. Observe test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes.
29. If no symptoms of illness are detected, report "ALL CLEAR".
30. Direct the subordinate elements in the area to unmask.
31. Ensure casualties are provided medical care.

32. Report casualties.
33. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) situation dictates.
34. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
35. Ensure periodic chemical monitoring.
36. Unit submits NBC 1 report to higher headquarters immediately. Note: The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date-time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of agent and or burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).
37. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
38. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
39. Unit coordinates operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements within six hours of being contaminated.
40. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-7406

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6405	TANK-CBTS-6406	TANK-CBTS-6409
SCT-CBTS-5402	TOW-CBTS-5401	TOW-CBTS-5402
SCT-CBTS-5401	TANK-TAC-6806	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
13. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
14. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
15. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
16. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7408: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes to protect it and harden equipment against a nuclear attack.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a nuclear attack (friendly or enemy) in its area of operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit prepares for a nuclear attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit constructs or reinforces positions, briefs and inspects personnel, covers or hardens or otherwise protects equipment, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain and situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to unit elements.
3. Unit commander establishes and checks backup command and control procedures.
4. Coordinate and synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.
5. Use FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.
6. Unit commander or designated representative supervises preparations.
7. Ensure elements deploy for the best dispersion the tactical situation will permit.
8. Ensure companies position alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions as required.
9. Ensure individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs.
10. Ensure dosimeters are zeroed and initiates periodic monitoring.
11. Ensure equipment is shielded or otherwise protected within the unit's capability.
12. Ensure defensive positions or shelters are shielded or hardened within the unit's capability. Note: Unit leaders locate and select existing or reinforceable facilities, such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, tunnels, and empty ammunition storage bunkers, for use as defensive positions or for protective shelters.
13. Unit conducts a rehearsal time permitting.

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6407 SCT-CBTS-5403 TOW-CBTS-5403

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7409: React to a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Unit elements observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, a monitoring device detects a nuclear hazard, or the unit receives a strike warning (STRIKEWARN). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the commander is reached and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Marines take immediate protective actions without receiving a warning.
2. Close eyes immediately.
3. Drop to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drops down inside the vehicle).
4. Keep head and face down and helmet on.
5. Remain prone until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling.
6. Take action after receiving a warning.
7. Identify the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters).
8. Move to the shelter.
9. Take actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.
10. Keep clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.
11. Protect eyes and minimize exposed skin areas.
12. Commanders and leaders consolidate and reorganize the unit.
13. Reestablish chain of command.
14. Reestablish communications within unit and with higher headquarters.
15. Submit NBC 1 (Nuclear) report to higher headquarters. Note: The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).
16. Treat, report, and evacuate casualties.
17. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual radiation.

18. Implement continuous monitoring.
19. Monitor Marines for signs of radiation sickness.
20. Report personnel total dose daily to higher headquarters IAW the SOP.
21. Request guidance from higher headquarters on the operation exposure guidance (OEG) established by the higher headquarters commander. Note: If the unit receives fallout, the higher headquarters commander determines whether the unit should remain in position or move based on the mission, tactical situation, radiation dosage received, and current dosage rate.
22. Submit damage assessment to higher headquarters.
23. Initiate area damage control plan as required.
24. Send updated situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters as necessary.
25. Marines extinguish all fires before they spread out of control.
26. Leaders ensure weapon systems are operational.
27. Unit conducts immediate decontamination and coordinates operational decontamination (as soon as the tactical situation permits).
28. Marines right overturned vehicles if possible.
29. Check loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.
30. Perform operators maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.
31. Marines improve cover if applicable.
32. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-7408

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6407	TANK-CBTS-6408	TANK-CBTS-6409
SCT-CBTS-5404	TOW-CBTS-5403	TOW-CBTS-5404
SCT-CBTS-5403	TANK-TAC-6806	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7410: Cross a Contaminated Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The protective measures a unit takes to move through an area

where the presence of biological or chemical agents or radioactive material is identified. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must cross a biologically or chemically contaminated area in its area of operations. The unit has the necessary overlays of the contaminated area or is provided with an NBC-5 report. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit prepares for the crossing in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit crosses the contaminated area without loss of personnel and without delay to the unit's mission. The unit assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) and conducts the crossing.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The NBC officer (NBCO) and S-3 identify and disseminate information on the contaminated area to all subordinate elements.
3. The contaminated area is plotted on operations map in the CP to within 10 meters of all boundaries.
4. The S-3 and NBCO determine the best route through the contaminated area (subjective analysis determines the quickest, most secure route).
5. The unit prepares to cross the contaminated area.
6. The lead element of the battalion is halted 500 meters short of the contaminated area to upgrade MOPP level.
7. All remaining subordinate elements halt to upgrade MOPP level, battalion elements provide all around security while halted, personnel are at MOPP 4 before movement resumes, and externally stored equipment is placed inside vehicles or covered prior to movement.
8. M8/9 detection paper is placed on the outside of vehicles along skirts, sides and top of turrets.
9. Unit leaders ensure protective measures are followed.
10. All vehicle hatch and doors are closed.
11. Unit crossed contaminated area.
12. Extended vehicle interval is used (125 meters) to minimize exposure to dust from lead vehicles (interval is METT- TC dependant, but should seek to minimize contamination).
13. Unit continues movement without deviation from the designated route, exits the contaminated area, and does not halt until all elements have exited the contaminated area.
14. S-3 reports actions to higher headquarters.
15. Unit conducts hasty decontamination as necessary and if the tactical situation permits.
16. Marines monitor fellow Marines for signs of chemical poisoning IAW the

SOP.
17. Ensure Marines administer a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to Marines with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning, if applicable.
18. Ensure Marines administer self-aid with nerve agent antidote if applicable.
19. Ensure Marines or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within 5 minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
20. NBCO and S-3 update the NBC-4/NBC-5 report with new information obtained during the crossing.
21. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the situation dictates.
22. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
23. Ensure periodic chemical monitoring.
24. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
25. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
26. Unit coordinates operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements within six hours of being contaminated.
27. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-7804 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-CBTS-6409

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
11. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
15. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
16. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
17. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7411: Conduct Operational Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A decontamination operation that consists of two techniques,

the mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange and the vehicle/equipment wash-down. Decontamination is conducted on an individual or unit and restricted to specific parts of operationally essential equipment, material, or working areas in order to minimize contact, limit transfer hazards, and to sustain operations. This may include decontamination of the individual beyond the scope of immediate decontamination, as well as decontamination of mission-essential spares and limited terrain decontamination.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the unit resulting in contamination. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts operational decontamination in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit performs task to react to a chemical attack. The unit coordinates for operational decontamination. The unit moves to the decontamination site and conducts operational decontamination while maintaining security.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit reacts to chemical attack and reports contamination to higher headquarters.
3. Report location of the contaminated unit, time the unit became contaminated, number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated, and type of contamination.
4. Coordinate with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission.
5. Unit commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.
6. Unit commander or designated staff coordinates operational decontamination support from higher headquarters.
7. Coordinate decontamination site.
8. Ensure site has good overhead concealment, good drainage, is off the main route but within easy access for vehicles, large enough to handle vehicle wash-down and mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear exchange, and has adequate available water source.
9. Unit establishes communications with unit decontaminating equipment team.
10. Unit dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to prepare decontamination site.
11. Establish communications with NBC decontamination teams.
12. Establish site security.
13. Link up with NBC decontamination team at decontamination site.
14. Establish vehicle washdown site, in coordination with SOP.
15. Prepare MOPP gear exchange site at a clean area upwind from vehicle washdown.
16. Ensure the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains

additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
17. Ensure the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
18. Unit elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for operational decontamination.
19. Establish and maintain local security IAW SOP or commander's guidance.
20. Prepare vehicles for washdown.
21. Unit performs vehicle decontamination.
22. Ensure vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
23. Follow guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer in charge, or equipment crew in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
24. Subordinate unit personnel assist decon crew in decontaminating vehicles as required.
25. Move vehicles, if applicable, to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
26. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
27. Under supervision of the unit NBC officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.
28. Unit completes decontamination activities.
29. Mount vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post decontamination assembly area. Note: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.
30. Follow additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required.
31. Ensure that the decon crew covers, marks, and departs contaminated area.
32. Unit commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters.
33. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CBTS-7407	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CBTS-6406	SCT-CBTS-5402
SCT-CBTS-5405	TOW-CBTS-5402	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
12. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
13. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
14. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations

15. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
16. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
17. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
18. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
19. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
20. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7412: Conduct Thorough Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Decontamination carried out by a unit, with external support, to reduce contamination on personnel, equipment, materiel or working areas to the lowest possible levels. Thorough decontamination permits the partial or total removal of individual protective equipment and facilitates the continuation of operations with minimum degradation. Thorough decontamination involves detailed troop decontamination (DTD) and detailed equipment decontamination (DED) and is normally conducted as part of reconstitution or during breaks in combat operations. This may include terrain decontamination beyond the scope of operational decontamination.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the unit resulting in contamination. Higher headquarters establishes a decontamination site with service support personnel. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts thorough decontamination in accordance with higher headquarters standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit coordinates for thorough decontamination and moves to the decontamination site and conducts decontamination operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit reacts to chemical attack and reports contamination to higher headquarters.
3. Report location of the contaminated unit(s), time the unit(s) became contaminated, number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated, and type of contamination.
4. Coordinate with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission.
5. Unit commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.
6. Unit commander or designated staff coordinates thorough decontamination

support from higher headquarters.
7. Coordinate decontamination site.
8. Unit establishes communications with higher headquarters' decontaminating equipment team.
9. Unit dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to decontamination site.
10. Establish communications with higher headquarters NBC staff and decon team as necessary.
11. Link up with higher headquarters NBC staff and decon team at decontamination site.
12. Ensure the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
13. Unit subordinate elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for thorough decontamination.
14. Prepare for MOPP gear exchange and vehicle washdown.
15. Unit performs vehicle decontamination.
16. Ensure vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
17. Follow guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), or decon crew, in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
18. Assist decon crew in decontaminating vehicles as required.
19. Move vehicles to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or NCOIC.
20. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
21. Under supervision of the unit NBC officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.
22. Unit completes decontamination activities.
23. Mount vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post decontamination assembly area. Note: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.
24. Follow additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required.
25. Unit commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters.
26. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CBTS-7407
TANK-CBTS-7411	TANK-CMDC-7201	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	SCT-CBTS-5405	TOW-CBTS-5402
TANK-CBTS-6406		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook

10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
15. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
16. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
17. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-7413: React to Enemy Indirect Fires

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures and steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of enemy indirect fires on combat power. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to an indirect fire attack. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit reacts to an indirect fire attack in accordance with standard operating procedures or appropriate references. If moving, the unit continues movement until at least 300 meters from the impact area. If stationary, the unit takes cover within 10 seconds or moves out of the impact area within 3 minutes of the impact of the first round. The unit reports attack to higher headquarters.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The unit reacts to indirect fire while moving.
3. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("INCOMING" or appropriate code word).
4. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
5. All personnel close hatches and doors of vehicles with in 5 seconds.
6. All elements continue direction of movement, unless redirected by unit commander.
7. The S-3 and FSC report attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
8. The unit reacts to indirect fire while stationary.
9. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("INCOMING" or appropriate code word).
10. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
11. All Marines are under cover within 10 seconds.
12. If directed Marines mount vehicles within 3 minutes and move out to a

rally point.
13. All vehicles move to a designated rally point at distance and direction given by the unit commander.
14. S-3 and FSC report attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
15. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
16. Marines or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within 5 minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
17. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the situation dictates.
18. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
19. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
20. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-7804

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6411	TANK-TAC-6804	SCT-CBTS-5406
TOW-CBTS-5406	TANK-TAC-6806	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

TANK-CBTS-7414: Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active defensive measures and steps taken by a unit to engage enemy aircraft in order to destroy it or reduce the effectiveness of its attack. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The command post receives early warning of hostile aerial platform(s) in the area. All necessary CP personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit CP or trains personnel conduct active air defense

measures against hostile aerial platforms in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. CP or trains personnel visually identify hostile platforms, take cover, and destroy attacking hostile platforms or force them away from friendly positions. CP or trains personnel engage non-attacking hostile platforms as directed. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. CP and trains personnel employ preparatory air defense measures (CP is stationary).
3. Sound air attack alarm to alert all personnel of the presence of hostile aircraft.
4. Alert all unit elements if situation permits.
5. Seek cover.
6. Occupy predesignated fighting positions and field fortifications.
7. Mount vehicles if possible.
8. Employ available camouflage.
9. Search assigned sector for approaching aircraft.
10. Visually identify enemy aerial platforms.
11. Alert the unit with a contact report containing the following information: "CONTACT or BANDIT(S)" announced over tactical nets, make engagement decision, and report all aerial platform actions to higher headquarters.
12. CP or trains personnel employ preparatory air defense measures.
13. Alert vehicle commanders of the presence of hostile aircraft.
14. Alert all unit elements if situation permits.
15. Seek covered and concealed positions or routes.
16. Disperse vehicles laterally and in-depth or vehicle operators continue to move unit.
17. Move vehicles to covered and concealed positions.
18. CP or trains personnel engage hostile aircraft.
19. Engage non-attacking aircraft only as directed.
20. Engage attacking aircraft with all available small arms until destroyed or warded off.
21. Place weapon on highest rate of fire.
22. Select proper aim point for type of aircraft and direction of flight.
23. Leaders supervise post attack activities.
24. Give "ALL CLEAR" signal when hostile aircraft have departed the area.
25. Forward damage report and personnel status report to higher headquarters.
26. Coordinate casualty treatment and evacuation.
27. Direct clearing of mission-hindering destroyed supplies and equipment.
28. Coordinate replacement of equipment with higher headquarters.
29. CP or trains personnel perform post-attack activities.
30. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.
31. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) if any.
32. Treat and evacuate casualties.
33. Reconstruct damaged positions and field fortifications.
34. Unit continues operations as directed.

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TOW-CBTS-5407	TANK-CBTS-6412
SCT-CBTS-5408	SCT-CBTS-5407	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

TANK-CSS-7501: Conduct Personnel Administration

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The S-1 and staff section leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Command posts are established and functioning. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts personnel administration in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-1 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The unit S-1 section prepares, updates, and maintains the personnel estimate. The unit S-1 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The unit S-1 section monitors the execution of decisions, tracks the current battle, identifies and analyzes current and future problems, performs personnel readiness management, conducts personnel accounting and strength reporting, performs casualty operations management, and performs replacement management operations. The unit S-1 section considers ROE and ROI during planning.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The S-1 and staff section leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-1 section maintains the personnel database; coordinates all aspects of personnel management, finance services, chaplain activities, public affairs, and legal services; ensures activities support tactical plans, their branches and sequels, and the commander's desired end-state; establishes unit-unique personnel policies and procedures; assists the unit commander to influence and evaluate the command climate; coordinates

for law enforcement, civil and military operational requirements, stress management, straggler information, and family support activities; coordinates legal support of certain personnel activities to include service transfers and discharges, line of duty investigations, conscientious objectors processing, and military justice; processes, analyzes, and disseminates information; and identifies and analyzes current and future problems; directs the unit's critical personnel systems.

3. Perform the following: personnel readiness management, personnel accounting and strength reporting, casualty operations management, replacement management operations, personnel information management, postal operations management, essential personnel services.
4. Unit S-1 section coordinates morale, welfare, and recreation activities (if an MCCS coordinator is not appointed).
5. Coordinate with unit S-4 to ensure that Marines and civilians deploy with a 30-day supply of health and comfort packs.
6. Prepare an equipment and supply list and plan for unit MCCS activities prior to deployment.
7. Prepare pre-positioned requisitions for MCCS athletic and recreation equipment through home station supply channels.
8. Prepare requisitions for book kits at the sustaining base or mobilization station.
9. Ensure units include MCCS equipment and book kits in their basic load plans.
10. Appoint unit MCCS coordinators (military) to coordinate activities and maintain equipment.
11. Coordinate unit athletic and recreation programs to include acquisition, use, and maintenance of equipment and supplies.
12. Unit S-1 develops a media plan in conjunction with the commander and executive officer.
13. Develop security controls.
14. Brief Marines so they understand what is classified or sensitive information and cannot be discussed.
15. Develop media controls.
16. Develop plan to place personnel at arrival area to verify credentials and issue press badges, instructions on how to handle media personnel who did not receive advance clearance, and provide a military escort at all times for media safety.
17. Develop guidelines for interviews.
18. Develop a media card, if one is not provided by higher headquarters, that includes: whom to contact and how to contact him if a reporter arrives in the unit's area, responsibilities of a media escort, what information can or cannot be discussed, when to allow a media interview, how to treat reporters, and how to conduct an interview.
19. Anticipate, prepare, and respond within 24 hours to breaking news events.
20. Establish advance arrangements of interviews and photography shooting sessions.
21. Prepare press kits if time and resources allow.
22. Prepare plans for establishment of a press center facility if possible.
23. Plan transportation and support requirements.
24. Develop procedures for debriefing personnel after a media visit.
25. Unit S-1 section participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP) after receiving a copy of higher headquarters' operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.

26. Unit S-1 section monitors the tactical situation.
27. Monitor available digital and analog communications and or nets and the common operational picture (COP) to track the current battle.
28. Receive personnel status reports from supporting and supported units.
29. Provide information on battle situation and changing priorities to the unit commander and staff.
30. Communicate personnel requirements to the unit XO and higher headquarters.
31. Identify changes in the personnel situation that could have an impact on the unit operation.
32. Recommend adjustments to unit personnel operations based on changes of the tactical situation.
33. Unit S-1 section records actions taken in staff journals, advises the S-3 on the personnel implications of rear area protection operations, provides battle updates and shift change briefings, monitors the execution of decisions, considers ROE and ROI during planning, and enforces ROE and or ROI during execution.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-33.3 Marine Corps Public Affairs
8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CSS-7502: Conduct Logistics Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The S-4 section is responsible for supply, transportation, and maintenance functions as well as the coordination of field service functions and combat health support functions. The S-4 coordinates requisition and distribution of supplies to company supply sections and turns in captured supplies and equipment as directed. Personnel in the section are in the field trains and the combat trains CP. The S-4 section is supervised by the S-4 who is assisted by the battalion S-4 Chief. Field Services are essential services designed to enhance a Marine's quality of life during operations. They include food preparation, water purification, laundry and shower services, chaplain activities and cloth and light textile repair. It is an element of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force. The four components of force protection are operational security and

deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts logistics operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate field manual, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-4 establishes the combat trains command post as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1. The S-4 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The unit S-4 section prepares, updates, and maintains the logistics estimate and processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The unit S-4 section monitors the execution of decisions. The unit S-4 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The unit S-4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the unit. The unit S-4 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-4 and staff section leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-4 section establishes the combat trains as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1.
3. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.
4. Establish local area network (LAN) connections as appropriate.
5. Set up conventional and or digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays which show the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the unit's mission in accordance with SOP.
6. Set up conventional and or digital status boards.
7. Prepare sleep plan that allows support of tactical operations.
8. Establish policy file, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.
9. Unit S-4 identifies both continuous and mission support combat service support (CSS) requirements of the unit.
10. Unit S-4 section participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
11. Conduct mission analysis.
12. Retrieve a copy of higher headquarters operations plan (OPLAN) or OPORD and service support annex.
13. Identify specified and implied logistics tasks from the base order, annexes, and overlays; constraints and limitations and the acceptable level of risk that may have an impact on the higher mission; essential logistic tasks necessary to accomplish the mission.
14. Forecast vehicle and weapon status, identify available transportation assets, determine supply status of classes I, III, IV, V, and IX, and determine maintenance status.

15. Provide commander with input on combat service support (CSS) and supply operations that affect the unit mission.
16. Receive commander's planning guidance after briefing mission analysis.
17. Prepare and update the logistics estimate.
18. Establish a CSS planning cell at both the unit main CP and rear CPs to participate in staff planning.
19. Prepare and brief the logistics estimate and recommends a course of action that supports the maneuver plan logistically.
20. Coordinate estimate with other affected staff sections (higher, lower, and adjacent).
21. Submit logistics estimate to S-3, executive officer (XO), and higher headquarters S-4/G-4.
22. Unit S-4 section conducts planning.
23. Review mission, task organization, and concept of operations for all subordinate elements in the unit and higher headquarters CSS plans.
24. Identify branches and sequels, determine density of equipment of each subordinate unit, anticipate enemy CSS capabilities, and determine mission related consumption rates.
25. Plan for special equipment, supplies, and services; assets to separate, disassemble, configure, uncrate, or transload supplies above normal requirements; reconstitution and reorganization; support of reconnaissance forces, security operations, or deception efforts; class IV/V obstacle material; pre-positioning of supplies; emergency resupply; attrition; Weapon System Replacement Operations (WSRO); field sanitation; transportation of supplies, replacements, deceased, and enemy prisoners of war (EPW); construction of facilities except for fortifications; clothing and equipment exchange; food preparation and water purification; mortuary affairs; laundry and shower services; battlefield procurement and contracting; recommendation of main supply route(s) (MSRs) and logistical support areas to the S-3.
26. Identify and analyze current and future problems.
27. Unit S-4 section maintains the current status of equipment readiness in the unit.
28. Maintain consolidated unit weapons combat power status board.
29. Monitor maintenance operations to evaluate the capability to support current operations.
30. Provide the commander and staff with evaluation of maintenance conditions and their impact on current or future unit operations.
31. Recommend maintenance priorities to the unit commander and S-3.
32. Coordinate with the higher headquarters maintenance status and unit maintenance priorities.
33. Coordinate with the unit XO for execution of weapons system replacement operations plan.
34. Unit S-4 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.
35. Unit S-4 section compiles, authenticates, and distributes the administrative and logistics plan or order, paragraph 4 of the operation plan (OPLAN), OPORD, or CSS annex.
36. Coordinate with S-1 for preparation of plans and or orders.
37. Incorporate information from the S-1 regarding unit strength reporting, personnel management, enemy prisoners of war (EPW) status, and unit discipline, law, and order.
38. Coordinate with the unit S-1, G-1, and G-4 to provide input to the weapons system replacement operations plan.

39. Confirm and list logistics support requirements for unit intelligence

operations with the unit S-2.

40. Confirm EW equipment and supplies and psychological operations (PSYOP) equipment and supplies.
41. Confirm host nation support (HNS) and list logistics support requirements for unit civil and military operations based on the unit civil affairs or PSYOPS officer determination of mission to support civilian population.
42. Coordinate with the unit civil affairs or PSYOPS officer to plan for control of civilian refugees with the unit S-3.
43. Confirm number of civilian refugees and internees in each collection camp, assembly area, and dislocated civilian camp requiring logistical support from the unit.
44. Coordinate with the unit S-1 to identify personnel support priorities for incorporation into the service support overlay and paragraph of the unit OPORD.
45. Issue CSS annex to OPORD or OPLAN.
46. Approve and distribute administrative/logistics annex, prepare paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD or the CSS annex, submit paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD to S-3, develop administrative movement plans, prepare CSS overlay, prepare logistics matrix, recommend support and supply priorities and controlled supply rates (CSR), and determine required supply rates (RSR).
47. Unit S-4 section tracks tactical operations to provide the appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the unit, based on current and anticipated logistics requirement.
48. Plan transportation and movement.
49. Review and analyze all unit plans and orders for transportation impact.
50. Provide transportation input to all fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) issued subsequent to issue of OPORD or OPLAN.
51. Coordinate with higher elements for additional transportation assets, if required.
52. Assist the S-3 plans element in planning and preparing tactical and administrative motor marches, and prepare administrative movement orders and march tables.
53. Select MSRs and other supply routes.
54. Ensure route supports the heaviest vehicle in the unit, refugees do not block routes, and route supports bi-directional traffic.
55. Assist the S-3 in planning for logistical airlift.
56. Coordinate transportation and movement and identify transportation assets available in the unit.
57. Coordinate routes, traffic control, and timetables with the G-4, unit support unit staff, and higher headquarters' support command staff.
58. Coordinate with higher movement control elements when additional assets are required and organic assets are unavailable or inappropriate for use.
59. Monitor and coordinate emergency resupply by air with the unit Air Officer.
60. Coordinate administrative troop movement requirements with subordinate units.
61. Coordinate with the S-2 section to determine enemy capabilities that may interrupt use of routes (such as air threat, partisan activity, and chemical use).
62. Coordinate routes with the military police (MP) officer in the maneuver support cell or augmented highway traffic control.
63. Unit S-4 section supervises and facilitates transportation and movement.

64. Maintain contact with higher, subordinate, and adjacent movement control elements.
65. Provide technical assistance to all subordinate units on transportation requirements.
66. Continuously monitor transportation assets and advise the S-3 when additional assets are required.
67. Provide the movement control officer with guidance, basic plans, and assistance.
68. Unit S-4 section tracks the status of supplies.
69. Ensure accurate records of supplies on hand are maintained.
70. Track the requisition, acquisition, storage, and distribution of supplies.
71. Track the distribution of the CSR of ammunition.
72. Perform coordination with higher headquarters' G-4 for procurement of local civilian supplies.
73. Coordinate with augmenting units to identify requirements for nonstandard supplies or repair parts such as those used in psychological operations.
74. The unit performs supply operations from the field trains (LOGPACs) and the combat trains.
75. When possible basic loads are maintained at 90 percent.
76. Basic loads of water, class III items (bulk and package POL), class V items (individual and crew served) and class VIII items are replenished to at least 50 percent.
77. Requisitions for Class IX items for 95 percent of PLL shortages are submitted daily.
78. High priority requisitions for PLL are submitted within 8 hours to expedite repair parts flow and correct and PLL zero parts balance.
79. Mission supplies are delivered in accordance with commander's directions (i.e. barrier material for obstacles).
80. Company or platoon representative picks up LOGPAC within 10 minutes of arrival at the logistics pickup point.
81. Routine CSS coordination is performed between company or platoon representative and the S-1/S-4 representative.
82. LOGPAC has available resupply for all attached units.
83. Unit S-4 section coordinates reception of augmentations.
84. Receive augmentations and meet logistics requirements without degradation in the support provided to the unit.
85. Coordinate with higher headquarters for additional maintenance assets and integration of augmentations into CSS plans.
86. Establish priorities for employment.
87. Maintain CSS status of augmentations.
88. Unit S-4 monitor execution of command decisions.
89. Monitor the execution of logistics instructions, plans, and orders.
90. Formulate and supervise policies concerning logistics operations.
91. Ensure that organic, assigned, and supporting units accomplish tactical level missions in support of the unit commander's scheme of maneuver in the area of logistics.
92. Unit S-4 analyzes and clearly articulates all logistical information that can affect the mission, particularly commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
93. Record actions taken in staff journals.
94. Use information to provide battle updates and shift change briefings.
95. Unit S-4 integrates risk management into CSS plans/operations.
96. The unit chaplain coordinates religious and personnel services with the

battalion commander.
97. Unit S-4 enforces ROE or ROI during execution.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CSS-6501	SCT-CSS-5501
TANK-CSS-6503	TOW-CSS-5501	TANK-CSS-6502

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 4 Logistics
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
6. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
7. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
8. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
13. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
14. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
15. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
16. MCWP 4-11.6 Bulk Liquid Operations
17. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
18. MCWP 4-24 Commander's Guide to Maintenance
19. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
20. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
21. NAVSEA OP 2165 Transportation Safety Handbook for AMMO & Explosives
22. NAVSEA OP 2165 VOL 1 Navy Transportation Safety Handbook
23. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
24. SL-4 Repair, Maintenance, and Management Lists
25. TM 55-601 Railcar Loading Procedures
26. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
27. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams
28. UM 4400-124 Sassy Using Unit Procedures
29. UM 4400-15 Organic Property Control

TANK-CSS-7503: Conduct Maintenance/Recovery Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Maintenance operations involve inspecting, testing, servicing, repairing, requisitioning, and recovering equipment in order to sustain the unit. The S-4 determines maintenance support priorities for subordinate

units based on operational requirements of the task force and on recommendations of the battalion maintenance officer.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts maintenance and recovery support in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-4 establishes the combat trains command post as the Rear CP. The S-4 section plans, coordinates, and dispatches maintenance and recovery support. The unit S-4 section updates the logistics estimate based on recovery operations. The unit S-4 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems and advises the commander. The unit S-4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted maintenance and recovery support to the unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-4 and maintenance section leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-4 section establishes the combat trains as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1.
3. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.
4. Unit S-4 section participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
5. Conduct mission analysis.
6. Provide commander with input on maintenance and recovery support issues that affect the unit mission
7. Receive commander's planning guidance after briefing mission analysis.
8. Prepare and update the logistics estimate.
9. Unit S-4 section conducts planning; reviews mission, task organization, and concept of operations for all subordinate elements in the unit; reviews higher headquarters' CSS plans; identifies branches and sequels; determines density of equipment of each subordinate unit; determines mission related consumption rates; plans for unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs); and identifies and analyzes current and future problems.
10. Identify and analyze current and future problems.
11. The S-4 section, in conjunction with the headquarters company, maintains the current status of equipment readiness in the unit.
12. Maintain consolidated unit weapons combat power status board.
13. Monitor maintenance and recovery operations to evaluate the capability to support current operations.
14. Provide the commander and staff with evaluation of maintenance conditions and their impact on current or future unit operations.
15. Recommend maintenance priorities to the unit commander and S-3.
16. Coordinate with higher headquarters maintenance status and unit

maintenance priorities.

17. Coordinate with the field trains support personnel and higher headquarters G-4/S-4 and for execution of weapons system replacement operations plan.
18. The unit performs UMCP activities.
19. UMCPs are coordinated with medical collection points, located forward and location and movement is coordinated with the combat trains, are accessible and directions to the different maintenance areas are marked.
20. UMCP sites have "dirty" maintenance area for contaminated vehicles.
21. Maintenance assets are task organized and positioned to provide coverage for all subordinate elements.
22. Guidelines for recovery from company train areas and UMCP are established to provide for forward repair and to prevent enemy interference with repair and recovery.
23. Contact/recovery teams are dispatched to repair and recover forward damaged vehicles beyond company maintenance capabilities within 30 minutes of notification.
24. Repairs are conducted in accordance with appropriate TM and commander's guidance.
25. All vehicles that cannot be repaired at units within the established guidelines (time, type of damage, etc.) are evacuated to the UMCP.
26. All vehicles that cannot be repaired at UMCP with the established guidelines are evacuated to the DS maintenance support collection point or field trains.
27. The unit recovers, repairs, and returns non-mission capable equipment.
28. Non-mission capable equipment is diagnosed and appropriate action initiated within one hour.
29. Recovery/repair operations of non-mission capable equipment are conducted as quickly as possible.
30. Repaired vehicles/equipment are moved forward on the next LOGPAC if repaired in the field trains.
31. Repaired vehicles/systems are picked up by companies within one hour if repaired in the UMCP (crews stay with vehicles).
32. Repaired/replacement vehicles come forward prepared to fight (combat loaded).
33. Unit S-4 section tracks tactical operations to provide the appropriate and uninterrupted maintenance and recovery support to the unit based on current and anticipated logistics requirement.
34. Plan and coordinate transportation and movement of vehicles.
35. Review and analyze all unit plans and orders for transportation impact.
36. Coordinate with higher elements for additional transportation assets, if required.
37. Assist the S-3 plans element in planning and preparing tactical and administrative motor marches, and prepares administrative movement orders and march tables.
38. Identify transportation assets available in the unit.
39. Coordinate routes, traffic control, and timetables with the G-4, unit support staff, and higher headquarters' support command staff.
40. Coordinate with higher movement control elements when additional assets are required and organic assets are unavailable or inappropriate for use.
41. Monitor and coordinate emergency recovery with the S-3.
42. Unit S-4 section tracks the status of supplies.
43. Ensure accurate maintenance records are maintained.
44. Track the requisition, acquisition, storage, and distribution of parts.

45. Perform coordination with higher headquarters G-4 for procurement of repair parts.
46. Coordinate with augmenting units to identify requirements for nonstandard supplies or repair parts.
47. Unit S-4 analyzes and clearly articulates all logistical information that can affect the mission, particularly commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
48. Record actions taken in staff journals.
49. Use information to provide battle updates and briefings.
50. Unit S-4 integrates risk management into maintenance and recovery support operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-7502 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-6501 TANK-CSS-6503

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 4 Logistics
4. MCO 3000.11 MARES/LM2 Reporting System
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
7. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
8. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
13. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
14. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
15. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
16. MCWP 4-24 Commander's Guide to Maintenance
17. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
18. SL-4 Repair, Maintenance, and Management Lists
19. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
20. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

TANK-CSS-7504: Plan and Provide Combat Health Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The purpose of combat health support is to conserve the fighting strength of a unit. Health services are employed to provide the most benefit to the maximum number of personnel. The battalion medical officer is responsible for these functions. It is a component of force

protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an operation at the location and time specified. Planning is initiated to support the MCPP. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit aid station is operational. All command posts (CPs) are operational. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Subsequently, the battalion is conducting operations and enemy contact is broken. Marines are wounded and may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Unit medical personnel are treating the wounded. Field-expedient or natural shelters are available. The unit aid station is operational. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit plans combat health support (CHS) activities in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit aid station commander, as the unit surgeon, plans CHS to support the commander's intent. The unit surgeon monitors the health of the command in order to advise the commander on measures to counter disease and injury threats. The unit surgeon provides input to paragraph 4 (service support) and prepares the CHS annex and appendix to the OPORD. The unit surgeon considers ROE and ROI during planning. The unit aid station provides emergency lifesaving measures, sick call services, combat stress control preventive measures, and casualty collection and evacuation to the unit aid station. The unit aid station personnel comply with ROE and ROI. At mission oriented protection posture (MOPP) level 4 performance degradation factors increase casualty treatment and evacuation times.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit surgeon retrieves a copy of higher headquarters operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.
3. Identify CHS mission requirements by reviewing the order.
4. Identify all specified and implied CHS tasks in the order.
5. Assist with the identification of CHS constraints and restrictions.
6. Unit surgeon determines the CHS situation.
7. Review friendly situation based on input from the S-3 and incorporate the enemy situation based on input from the S-2.
8. Review the CHS issues that may effect the situation and civil-military situation based on input from the XO.
9. Provide status of sick and wounded Marines in the medical system to the commander and staff as required.
10. Unit surgeon analyzes CHS assets available to the unit.
11. Provide current status of assets and task organization to commander and or staff.

12. Provide projected locations of supported units to the commander and staff.
13. Unit surgeon prepares the CHS estimate and medical threat for inclusion in the commander's estimate, develop a CHS course of action (COA) for each maneuver COA as an overlay, analyze the supporting CHS COA with each maneuver COA.
14. Verify CHS plan supports the commander's intent.
15. Refine the concept of CHS if needed.
16. Determine the supportability of each COA based upon the evaluation criteria.
17. Record the advantages and disadvantages of each COA with emphasis on supportability.
18. Complete COA comparison by rank ordering each COA based upon supportability.
19. Recommend the COA that best supports the operation from the CHS point of view.
20. Unit surgeon updates the CHS support estimate based on COA analysis and any new data received.
21. Distribute the CHS estimate to commander, staff, supporting medical company, and others as required.
22. Unit surgeon completes detailed planning needed for the selected CHS COA.
23. Plan for CHS operations.
24. Ensure that platoon is included in logistical information systems and medical communications for combat casualty care (MC4) if available.
25. Ensure CHS request procedures are established.
26. Unit surgeon provides input to paragraph 4.
27. Develop casualty estimate for area of operations (AO) in coordination with the S-1.
28. Determine augmentation support requirements for CHS from higher headquarters OPORD.
29. Determine subordinate unit locations for effective CHS coverage.
30. Tailor CHS assets to support the unit based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
31. Determine medical material requirements for the unit.
32. Reference higher headquarters service support paragraph when it is lengthy and the details are included in higher headquarters service support paragraph.
33. Unit surgeon prepares the CHS annex and or appendix to the OPORD.
34. Include medical personnel and material replacement plan, locations of all unit medical elements for each phase of the operation, and on order and AO coverage requirements for all unit medical elements.
35. Provide treatment guidelines to include evacuation policy and the location of echelon III facilities.
36. Develop policy for the treatment and evacuation of detained personnel, enemy prisoners of war (EPW) casualties.
37. Provide casualty evacuation guidelines to include medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) frequencies, call signs, and evacuation routes.
38. Provide class VIII guidance.
39. Coordinate with higher headquarters for the disposition of captured class VIII materials.
40. Determine the higher headquarters policy concerning the use of EPW medical personnel and captured class VIII supplies IAW the Geneva Conventions.

41. Include special instructions for each unit medical element as needed.
42. Unit surgeon performs staff coordination.
43. Coordinate with higher headquarters for CHS operations, combat health logistics and blood management requirements for the unit, and medical health intelligence requirements IAW the appropriate references.
44. Coordinate with supporting medical company for patient evacuation from forward areas to supporting medical treatment facilities (MTFs).
45. Coordinate with the supporting veterinary element pertaining to subsistence and animal disease surveillance.
46. Unit surgeon supervises CHS activities.
47. Monitor implementation of CHS annex of the SOP for compliance with commander's intent and guidance.
48. Determine the allocation of medical resources within the unit.
49. Supervise technical training of medical personnel and the combat lifesaver program in the unit.
50. Determine procedures, techniques, and limitations in conducting routine medical care and emergency medical treatment (EMT).
51. Monitor the health of the command in order to advise the commander on measures to counter disease and injury threats.
52. Plan and prioritize preventive medicine missions and combat stress control missions.
53. Monitor the implementation of automated medical systems for compliance with directives.
54. Monitor air and ground evacuation for timeliness and adequacy.
55. Provide staff medical advice to unit medical squads and or section as required.
56. Monitor sustainment training of medical and combat lifesaver personnel for continued proficiency.
57. Provide daily update on the status of the CHS situation to the commander and higher headquarters.
58. Request patient evacuation operations from forward areas to supporting medical treatment facilities (MTFs).
59. Unit surgeon assists with tracking of patient disposition throughout the unit.
60. Manage the automated medical systems available.
61. Prepare required patient statistical reports IAW the SOP.
62. Forward patient statistical reports to higher headquarters IAW the SOP.
63. Unit surgeon considers ROE and or ROI during planning CHS.
64. Unit medical platoon provides Echelon I CHS.
65. Decontaminate the casualty IAW the appropriate references and the SOP, as far forward as the situation permits.
66. Provide immediate lifesaving measures.
67. Survey casualties and check for responsiveness, breathing, bleeding, head injury, shock, fractures (to include cervical spine and back fractures), and burns.
68. Wear protective surgical masks and gloves.
69. Clear all objects from throat of casualty.
70. Use jaw thrust method to open the airway if cervical spine injury is suspected.
71. Perform cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) using the one or two rescuer method.
72. Control hemorrhages, prevent shock, provide treatment for injuries, and provide sick call services.
73. Advise unit commander on combat stress control preventive measures.
74. Advise unit commander to issue warning orders, OPORDs, and FRAGOs to the

lowest possible level.
75. Advise unit commander to provide Marines an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.
76. Advise unit commander to encourage a positive attitude throughout the unit.
77. Advise unit commander to implement and enforce a sleep plan.
78. Advise unit commander to alternate cross-trained personnel on critical tasks.
79. Advise unit commander to rotate personnel between demanding and non-demanding tasks.
80. Advise unit commander to implement stress-coping and management techniques.
81. Advise unit commander to implement stress control treatment techniques.
82. Advise unit commander to ensure personnel employ stress prevention measures.
83. Provide casualty collection and evacuation to the unit aid station.
84. Unit aid station personnel comply with ROE and ROI.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-6504 SCT-CSS-5502 TOW-CSS-5502

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
4. FM 4-02.7 Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
7. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
8. MCRP 4-11.1D Field Hygiene and Sanitation
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-EXPD-7601: Conduct Amphibious Staff Planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

DESCRIPTION: The landing plan is the basis upon which an orderly ship-to-shore movement is conducted by the landing force. The ship-to-shore movement plan includes the detailed plans, tables, diagrams, and schedules prepared by both Navy and landing force commanders, and the plans establish priorities for landing units of the landing force. When subordinate units of the tank battalion are attached to infantry units, their plan for landing is reflected in the landing document of the units they are supporting. Plans for the landing of tactical units are found in the landing plan appendix to the amphibious operations annex of the operation plan.

CONDITION: The battalion is part of the Ground Combat Element of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) that is alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious operation. The Amphibious Task Force (ATF) is currently in transit. The initiating directive is received. A Carrier Battle Group (CVBG) is also enroute. Threat forces have direct and indirect fire weapons, and Electronic Warfare (EW) capabilities. It is anticipated that operations ashore will be of limited duration. The initial planning conference is complete and the Commander Landing Force (CLF) issues the MAGTF planning directive. The battalion staff and subordinate leaders begin their initial planning.

STANDARD: The battalion analyzes the mission and coordinates with appropriate GCE and MAGTF agencies to ensure coordinated initial planning and is prepared to develop the landing plan.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion commander/staff analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
2. Battalion staff develops preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidance provided by the MAGTF and GCE commanders.
3. Formulate basic requirements, essential elements of friendly information (EEFI's) and other intelligence requirements (OIR's).
4. Identify intelligence gaps to request response/collection from higher, lower and adjacent headquarters.
5. Battalion commander issues planning guidance to his staff and subordinate element leaders.
6. Battalion conducts concurrent planning with the GCE staff to select recommended landing area, Landing Force (LF) objectives, and beachhead for CLF/Commander Amphibious Task Force (CATF) approval.
7. Develop, in coordination with the planning guidance and approved ATF/LF objectives, additional battalion objectives.
8. Brief estimate of supportability to the GCE commander.
9. Battalion commander announces his overall concept of operations in the form of an outline plan that includes the tentative task organization and provides guidance for the concurrent development of the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
10. Plan is issued to subordinate and supporting unit commanders to guide them in planning preparation.
11. Battalion staff conducts a thorough and continuous analysis of the terrain, weather, hydrographic conditions, and enemy situation throughout the planning process.
12. Battalion staff conducts concurrent and parallel planning with all elements of the MAGTF during the development of the detailed scheme of a maneuver, fire support plan, and landing plan.
13. Battalion staff maintains close and continuous liaison throughout planning with all elements of the MAGTF.
14. Battalion develops, publishes, and disseminates the operation plan, embarkation plan, landing plan, and/or alternate plans if those are not incorporated into SOP or the MAGTF plans.
15. Battalion coordinates with the GCE, ACE and MAGTF Air Officer for the development and dissemination of the Helicopter Availability Tables, Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table, Helicopter Wave and Serial Assignment Table, and the Helicopter Landing Diagram as appropriate/necessary.

16. Battalion establishes procedures which provide for the continual review of reinforcement requirements and updating of the troop list.
17. Battalion arranges for staff reconnaissance of the Amphibious Objective Area (AOA) if the situation permits.
18. Battalion uses planning aids such as maps, aerial photos, charts, and relief maps during detailed planning.
19. Battalion receives NBC policy guidance from the GCE or MAGTF, and plans procedures for subordinate elements to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, required MOPP conditions, and passive and active defensive measures.
20. Battalion coordinates and consolidates enroute training plans for subordinate units and forwards them to the GCE.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7210 TANK-CMDC-7211 TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-EXPD-6601

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
8. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
11. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
12. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-7602: Develop an Amphibious Landing Plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

DESCRIPTION: The landing plan is the basis upon which an orderly ship-to-shore movement is conducted by the landing force. The ship-to-shore movement plan includes the detailed plans, tables, diagrams, and schedules prepared by both Navy and landing force commanders.

CONDITION: The battalion receives the GCE/MAGTF concept of operations and has developed a plan of attack which is approved. Sufficient landing craft are available. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or during periods of limited visibility.

STANDARD: The battalion commander ensures that the landing plan supports accomplishment of the mission. The landing plan must provide for the delivery of the assaulting elements, in the desired formations, with the necessary equipment, over the selected beaches, at the time set by the

commander. Flexibility is preserved through the selective scheduling and subsequent cross decking (if required), of on-call waves so that the reserve and other critical combat support elements may be brought ashore, as required, by either surface or air lift. The assault schedule and supporting landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment tables/heliteam wave and serial assignment tables should provide for the rapid buildup of combat power ashore. Additionally, forward air controller's, and naval surface fire support (NSFS) spot teams must be included with the assault elements to direct fires against appropriate targets.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The battalion determines the requirements for ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
2. The battalion considers enemy capabilities to counter surface assaults.
3. The battalion plans for flexibility in the landing of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
4. Battalion assigns subordinate elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
5. Battalion ensures that the development of the landing plan is totally integrated with the initial scheme of maneuver and fire support plan; provide for the rapid buildup of combat power during the initial phase of the assault.
6. Battalion allocates assets for use by subordinate elements and ensures that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible; forward these documents to GCE/MAGTF for approval/consolidation.
7. Battalion ensures that the development of the proposed Serial Assignment Table is based on the task organization for the landing; forward to the GCE/MAGTF commander for approval.
8. Battalion ensures that the development of the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with effected units, is compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents, provides for the rapid buildup of combat power, and that the tactical integrity of the attack is maintained.
9. Battalion coordinates with the GCE or ACE to ensure that the development of the Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table, and the Heliteam Wave and Serial Assignment Table is compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents.
10. Battalion provides input for the development of the Approach Schedule.
11. Battalion develops Debarkation Schedule (prepared jointly with the ship's commanding officer), when applicable, and ensures distribution to all personnel responsible for the control of debarkation.
12. Battalion completes the landing plan in a timely manner to allow for responsive and accurate embarkation planning if cross-decking will be required.
13. Battalion develops alternate plans to cover foul weather and/or changes in enemy capabilities.
14. Battalion assigns personnel as needed to the Tactical-Logistics Group (TACLOG) to advise MAGTF and Navy control personnel on the location of troops, equipment, supplies, landing requirements, and of adjustments to the landing sequence.
15. Battalion coordinates planning with the CGE/MAGTF command element for pre D-Day transfers of landing force units and equipment.

16. Battalion's plan allows for flexibility based on communications capabilities/limitations and the potential loss of communications equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7211 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-EXPD-6602

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
7. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
10. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-7603: Plan and Conduct a Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Deployment is the physical relocation of forces and material to the designated area of operations.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is located at home station and receives a movement order. The unit command post is established. The gaining theater command or higher headquarters provides a deployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The unit headquarters communicates with higher headquarters, installation operations center, installation transportation office, and all other appropriate headquarters, supporting organizations, and subordinate units. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The unit conducts deployment activities in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. Support activity teams are identified and established to prepare personnel for deployment. A rear detachment is established to support non-deploying Marines and families. The unit observes operations security (OPSEC).

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.

2. Unit conducts predeployment activities.
3. Conduct planning and training validation.
4. Focus on mission essential tasks.
5. Focus on individual and collective tasks that support their wartime mission.
6. Identify enabler teams to assist in deployment planning and execution as required.
7. Ensure additional duty personnel required to plan and conduct the deployment have been identified and placed on orders.
8. Ensure rear detachment leaders and personnel are identified.
9. Unit conducts alert phase.
10. Receive and verify deployment orders.
11. Initiate recall of personnel on temporary duty, attending schools, or in authorized leave status.
12. Complete Marine readiness activities.
13. Up-load vehicles with equipment (if applicable).
14. Configure pallets and containerized loads.
15. Issue communications security (COMSEC) materials.
16. Issue movement orders and instructions.
17. Prepare manifest lists for movement.
18. Transfer all nondeploying equipment to rear detachment.
19. Update critical equipment shortage lists.
20. Pick up ammunition from ammunition supply point (ASP).
21. Conduct OPSEC sweeps of the unit area and analysis of higher headquarters order.
22. Up-load contingency stocks for class I and chemical detection equipment (CDE).
23. Conduct personal property inventories of deploying Marines.
24. Prepare shipping labels.
25. Unit conducts deployment phase.
26. Clear the installation.
27. Finalize deployment plans.
28. Conduct any final coordination with the higher headquarters or installation.
29. Deploy an advance party to the Aerial or Sea Port of Debarkation (APOD/SPOD).
30. Deploy an advance party to the Aerial or Sea port of Embarkation (APOE/SPOE).
31. Conduct all coordination with division or installation transportation offices for movement times and routes from unit marshalling areas to the APOE/SPOE.
32. Confirm unit area security, privately owned vehicles (POV) storage areas, and arms rooms.
33. Unit moves to the APOE.
34. Unit arrives at Aerial or Sea Port of Debarkation (APOD / SPOD).
35. Unit conducts movement to AA.
36. Conduct coordination with the higher headquarters.
37. Conduct linkup with transportation assets.
38. Arrive in AA.
39. Unit begins linkup of equipment.
40. Conduct coordination with the advance party and equipment enablers.
41. Process and inventory equipment.
42. Equipment is assigned and custody is assumed by subordinate leaders.
43. Unit begins precombat checks.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-7502	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7207
TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. JOINT PUB 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCDP 4 Logistics
6. MCDP 5 Planning
7. MCDP 6 Command and Control
8. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
9. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
10. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
11. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
12. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
13. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
14. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
15. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
16. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning

TANK-EXPD-7604: Plan and Conduct a Redeployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Redeployment is the physical relocation of forces and material deployed in one area to another area for the purposes of further employment.

CONDITION: Hostilities have ended. The tank battalion receives a movement order for redeployment. The unit arrives at the designated assembly area (AA), but has not completed Phase I (Reconstitution for Strategic Movement) activities. The redeployment assembly area and Aerial or Sea Port of Embarkation (APOE/SPOE) are specified in the movement order. A not later than (NLT) time is specified for arrival of the unit at the APOE. External assets required to execute the redeployment is provided by higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts redeployment in accordance with the appropriate references, the standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit conducts Phase I activities.
3. Conduct reconstitution and initial cross-leveling.
4. Repack and load containers under US Customs and US Department of

Agriculture supervision.

5. Reconcile unit movement data (UMD) through documentation, inventory, and coordination of movement instructions from the controlling movement control agency representatives.
6. Complete reconstitution and cross-leveling for movement and coordinates with movement representatives to begin updating the Unit Equipment List.
7. Provide personnel and administrative services support.
8. Assist subordinate unit commanders to identify Marines, civilians, and joint assigned or attached personnel who should redeploy individually.
9. Assist subordinate unit commanders to prepare Marines for redeployment.
10. Manage personnel evaluations requirements, process award recommendations, complete records and finance updates, and identify personnel and administrative requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
11. Plan and conduct "in theater" Marine readiness processing and medical screening and surveillance program IAW applicable regulations.
12. Process temporary change of station (TCS) orders and courier orders.
13. Conduct manifest verification not later than (NLT) 48 hours prior to departure.
14. Provide personnel service support and administrative support as required.
15. Coordinate necessary postal operations.
16. Establish procedures to collect sensitive items prior to deployment and redeployment.
17. Include classified material that will be turned in to higher headquarters or transfer to an incoming unit.
18. Coordinate (with the S-4) the movement of personnel and equipment to designated APOE.
19. Coordinate hazardous material (HAZMAT) and unit movement.
20. Coordinate force protection during redeployment.
21. Review appropriate headquarters redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance.
22. Identify liaison teams for APOE.
23. Coordinate custom training to facilitate proper handling of equipment.
24. Coordinate redeployment support with higher echelon S-4 as necessary.
25. Prepare for the orderly transfer of properties, such as base camp facilities, and the movement of equipment to designated APOE/SPOE.
26. Identify and separate excess stockage according to guidance provided by the supported commander and executed by the material center.
27. Obtain, in conjunction with the home station rear detachment, a place to receive Marines as they arrive home.
28. Coordinate through the rear detachment to open accounts for all classes of supply at home station.
29. Identify quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports.
30. Identify excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in.
31. Cancel requisitions for quantities determined to be excess.
32. Identify required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with direct support supply organization.
33. Coordinate field feeding and services support with designated support unit as required.
34. Submit request with Department of Defense (DoD) activity address code to the higher headquarters S-4 to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed.

35. Designate date and time when internal supply service support terminates.
36. Provide copies of automated unit property book and related documentation to the officer in charge (OIC) of the rear detachment as required.
37. Coordinate Customs and US Department of Agriculture requests for units.
38. Coordinate supply and service support for main body and rear detachment during movement.
39. Coordinate maintenance support.
40. Coordinate subordinate unit movement officer efforts to prepare and maintain unit movement plans, update and maintain unit movement documentation, prepare and submit redeployment/deployment equipment list, and obtain and distribute military shipment labels.
41. Clear all properties to remain in host country.
42. Report excess material to the senior material management center (MMC) for recovery (palletizing and or rewarehousing) and redistribution.
43. Clear facilities with higher headquarters and civilian authorities.
44. Lateral transfers all equipment and or supplies to receiving unit IAW higher headquarters guidance.
45. Coordinate redeployment movement.
46. Establish unit load teams.
47. Develop milestones for packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
48. Coordinate customs and United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) inspection support with unit S-4.
49. Monitor subordinate unit's preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order and appropriate publications.
50. Monitor supporting unit's vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.
51. Monitor subordinate unit's customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications.
52. Monitor subordinate unit's movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
53. Inspect subordinate unit's movement plans and or orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
54. Brief commander and staff on movement readiness status as required.
55. Provide communication links.
56. Unit completes AA activities and moves to RAA.
57. Unit conducts RAA activities.
58. Wash major end items, affix placards to equipment and containers, request US Customs and Department of Agriculture inspections on all unit equipment, finalize UMD, continue supply accountability and maintenance actions, and ensure the property book and all related documentation is loaded immediately.
59. If equipment is staged for shipment after main body departure, then the property book and related documents will be left with the officer-in-charge (OIC) of the units' rear detachments and will return with them; this will expedite the reconstitution process at the home station.
60. Coordinate final changes to the unit equipment list to complete actual identification of UMD.
61. Coordinate movement of individuals not redeploying under a Time-Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD) unit line number (ULN).
62. Personnel redeploying as individuals will remain under the administrative control of their assigned unit or the theater PERSCOM until POE-processed for redeployment.

63. Unit completes RAA activities and moves to APOE by the time specified in the order.
64. Unit conducts APOE activities.
65. Coordinate with designated Theater Command elements.
66. Unit tracks equipment throughout the redeployment phase in order to ensure accountability.
67. Unit moves to the APOE/SPOE.
68. Unit arrives at Aerial or Sea Port of Debarkation (APOD/SPOD).
69. Unit conducts movement to home station.
70. Conduct coordination with the higher headquarters, movement control agency or installation.
71. Conduct movement to base.
72. Clear the installation.
73. Secure equipment.
74. Conduct accountability checks.
75. Report accountability with the higher headquarters, movement control agency or installation.
76. Secure personnel.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-7502	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7207
TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. JOINT PUB 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCDP 4 Logistics
6. MCDP 5 Planning
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
9. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
10. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
11. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
16. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-7605: Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

DESCRIPTION: Amphibious operations involving Marine Corps tank personnel and assets are normally characterized by movement from ship-to-shore via landing craft utility (LCU) or landing craft air cushion (LCAC). Every tank has a fording kit that needs to be applied before conducting amphibious operations.

CONDITION: CATF issues the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MAGTF

landing plan developed after the final rehearsal. Close, continuous, and detailed coordination among the CATF, MAGTF, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staff members, as well as unit commanders has occurred throughout the entire planning process.

STANDARD: The initial stages of the assault will generally result in some degree of decentralized control. Actions by subordinate leaders must be aggressive and bold. Tactical control measures are used to allow unit commanders to regain control as quickly as possible. Reliance on mission-type orders will further facilitate control and seizure of initial objectives. While many of the fires contained in the plan for supporting fires may be scheduled based on planned rates of movement, adjustments must be made to reflect the actual rate of movement on the ground. The battalion commander and his FSC must identify alterations needed to planned fires and make them known to the SACC. As material is delivered ashore, means must be established to make emergency resupply immediately available to front line units. This capability must be sustained throughout the buildup of combat power.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion receives and disseminates to subordinate units, final intelligence update which emphasizes critical aspects of the landing such as beach obstacles, known and suspected location of defensive positions in the vicinity of landing beaches, and antiaircraft weapons positions.
2. Battalion requests final confirmation of H-hour.
3. Battalion ensures that all boat teams are assembled, staged, and prepared for debarkation.
4. Battalion ensures that debarkation of initial assault elements is accomplished on schedule.
5. Boat team commanders demonstrate control over the loading of all troops and equipment.
6. Battalion monitors TACLOG and Primary Control Officer concerning landing force requirements and naval control agencies to ensure that the movement ashore is being conducted according to the schedule contained in the landing plan and keeps the GCE commander informed on the status of unloading and the progress of the ship-to-shore movement.
7. Battalion adheres to electromagnetic emission control (EMCON) condition set by the MAGTF, removing restrictions on radio transmissions only on order.
8. Battalion monitors the delivery of prearranged air and NSFS.
9. Boat team commanders orient subordinates to visible terrain features on or near the beach (when practicable) and alert all team members when the wave is within 100 meters of the beach.
10. Unit commanders quickly regain control of their units, and maintain momentum of the attack by avoiding unnecessary delays.
11. Battalion demonstrates effective employment of air and NSFS to suppress and/or neutralize targets of opportunity.
12. Battalion provides accurate counterbattery fire data to the Supporting Arms Coordination Center (SACC).
13. Battalion demonstrates the ability to effectively reduce fortifications.
14. Battalion uses terrain effectively for cover and concealment.
15. Battalion demonstrates the ability to quickly gain control of forward elements as they land.
16. Battalion demonstrates effective indirect fire control/coordination via the SACC, using FO's and adjusts the delivery times of preplanned fires

to coincide with actual progress on the ground.
17. Battalion effectively utilizes Close Air Support (CAS) to support the assault.
18. Battalion controls the progress of the landing and expansion of the force beachhead by submitting timely requests, via the TACLOG, for the landing of on-call and nonscheduled waves as required by the developing situation, and through allocation of support in response to requests from subordinate units.
19. Battalion provides situation reports to the GCE commander as the assault progresses.
20. Battalion maintains momentum of the attack through issuance of fragmentary orders (FRAGO's), the integration of coordinated fire and maneuver, and aggressive small unit leadership.
21. Battalion Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) adjusts communications guard as direct support artillery is emplaced.
22. Battalion coordinates the linkup of forces, demonstrating positive communications, and fire support coordination.
23. Battalion maintains reliable HF, UHF, and VHF communications.
24. Battalion establishes covered communications on those covered nets identified in the CEOI.
25. Battalion coordinates logistics support through the TACLOG.
26. Battalion maintains dispersion of personnel, equipment, and supplies on the beach.
27. Battalion conducts treatment and timely MEDEVAC of casualties.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7202 TANK-CMDC-7210 TANK-CMDC-7201

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-EXPD-6603

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
8. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
9. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
10. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-7606: Conduct an Amphibious Withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

DESCRIPTION: An amphibious retrograde operation in which forces in contact

with the enemy frees itself for a new mission by withdrawing to naval ships.

CONDITION: The battalion is ordered to conduct an amphibious withdrawal. The withdrawal is anticipated to be conducted under strong enemy pressure. The operations order is issued. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, rotary and fixed-wing air, and EW capabilities. The withdrawal can occur at night, during daylight, or during periods of limited visibility.

STANDARD: Upon establishment of the initial defense of the embarkation area, control functions which were transferred ashore are phased back to control facilities afloat under the CATF. CLF retains command of the landing force during the amphibious withdrawal. The commander of the security force is not assigned embarkation responsibilities. An important function of the embarkation organization is to ensure that adequate support is provided to the security force during embarkation. This may involve destroying excess equipment which cannot be embarked while at the same time unloading critical supplies from ships to support forces on the beach. The composition of the security force is determined based largely on the terrain in the area of operations and the nature of the threat. It should normally be strong in tanks, artillery, mortars, and engineer support. Additionally, the security force is provided a tactical air control party (TACP) and an NSFS spot team. Ideal delay positions incorporate key terrain with good observation and fields of fire, are located along existing obstacles and terrain features across the lines of hostile advance; have a good road network and/or provide good cross-country trafficability; are far enough apart to cause the enemy to regroup his forces prior to continuing the attack, and are far enough inland to prevent enemy fire into the embarkation area.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The battalion establishes defense of embarkation area surrounding key terrain features.
2. The battalion uses smoke to deceive the enemy as to the disposition of forces and to conceal movement during the withdrawal.
3. Prior to reembarkation the battalion positions its reserve to prevent envelopment of the withdrawing forces.
4. Tanks and antitank weapons are used to engage enemy armor at long ranges, to counterattack enemy elements attempting to penetrate or bypass the security force, and to provide fires to assist supported units during disengagement.
5. Artillery elements are used to cover loading areas by long-range harassing and interdiction fire, support the security force, and provide fires to support the security force during disengagement.
6. The commander of the security force issues specific guidance regarding the destruction of supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated and fixes responsibility for their destruction.
7. The security force takes the enemy under fire as soon as he is within effective range of available weapons.
8. The battalion defends each delay position until enemy action threatens decisive engagement.
9. Withdrawal to the next delay position is initiated per prearranged plan or on order of the CGE commander.
10. The security force executes an orderly withdrawal along designated routes to the next delay position and continues to provide maximum delay between positions using maneuver, available terrain, long-range fires, tactical air, mines, and demolitions.

11. Opportunities to inflict heavy casualties/damage to the enemy by offensive action are exploited consistent with the overall mission of the security force and the movement schedule.
12. The battalion considers limited objective attacks to gain additional time or to extricate units that have become decisively engaged.
13. The number of vehicles brought forward is held to a minimum consistent with the requirement and all vehicles not needed in forward areas are moved to the rear on prescribed routes per the movement plan.
14. Withdrawing units execute orderly movement along prescribed routes at the times designated in the movement schedule, and occupy assembly areas for the briefest amount of time possible.
15. Battalion destroys commercial communication facilities before they are abandoned.
16. Battalion movement to embarkation beaches is controlled through the use of predesignated assembly areas, routes of withdrawal, initial points, and checkpoints.
17. Close coordination is maintained between the security force and the forces being withdrawn in order to permit the smooth flow of units into the reembarkation area with minimum interference to the security force and it's supporting arms.
18. Battalion conducts the withdrawal during periods of reduced visibility whenever possible to facilitate deception.
19. Casualties are evacuated by the most expeditious means possible, direct to ships at sea.
20. Priority for withdrawal within the security force is given to heavy units such as tanks and artillery.
21. Withdrawal of the security force is conducted during periods of darkness, whenever possible, and is executed in the most expeditious manner available.
22. Personnel left behind employ evasion, escape, and survival techniques to avoid capture, and proceed to a predesignated rally point for subsequent recovery.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7828	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-EXPD-7601
TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-EXPD-6601	TANK-TAC-6836
TANK-TAC-6835	TANK-CMDC-6202	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
8. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
9. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
10. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-7701: Support Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW) focus on deterring war, resolving conflict, promoting peace, and giving support to civil authorities in response to domestic crisis. MOOTW may involve elements of both combat and noncombat and may encompass: peace operations, foreign internal defense, security assistance, humanitarian and civic assistance, support to insurgencies, support to counterdrug operations, combating terrorism, noncombatant evacuation operations, arms control, and show of force.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a MOOTW mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The order requires the unit to establish a quick reaction force (QRF). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Local populace and factions may or may not be cooperative. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts MOOTW in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit commander and staff plan, supervise, and assess operations. The battalion commander and staff identify and provide necessary assets to subordinate elements conducting support and stability operations. The battalion commander and staff integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems into operations plans based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). Unit leaders establish priorities for protection of civil and military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the area of operations (AO). The unit commander designates a QRF. The unit commander and staff enforce the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new MOOTW mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP) .
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
5. Clarify any questions on the ROE and ROI.
6. Determine documentation presented by persons passing through a checkpoint or roadblock.
7. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
8. Employ all available information-gathering assets.
9. Determine current intelligence gained through civil affairs and civil-

military operations (CMOs) activities.

10. Define the battlefield environment.
11. Identify locations of population centers.
12. Identify contentious issues between factions and ethnic groups.
13. Identify extent of authority and effectiveness of local governments throughout the AO.
14. Identify key leaders and centers of influence.
15. Identify US units, foreign military elements operating in areas adjacent to the unit's AO.
16. Identify areas where US forces should not go (religious shrines, areas where the peace mandate or other agreements restrict US access).
17. Describe battlefield effects and how they may affect unit operations.
18. Evaluate infrastructure, terrain and weather, factors such as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics, and the enemy.
19. Identify factions that are active in the AO, to include strengths and weaknesses of each.
20. Determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
21. Determine what the enemy is capable of and what he prefers to do in like situations if unconstrained by the battlefield environment.
22. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
23. Include location and orientation of enemy forces; location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems; location of enemy target acquisition assets; positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets; enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems; likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
24. Develop a reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
25. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
26. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
27. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
28. Identify force requirements to execute the mission.
29. Establish a Quick Reaction Force (QRF).
30. Identify special equipment and force protection requirements.
31. Establish performance criteria for continuous patrolling and reconnaissance.
32. Established route clearance and control measures.
33. Plan checkpoints and roadblocks.
34. Plan for conventional rear area security.
35. Plan CMO activities.
36. Establish priorities for protection of civil and military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the AO.
37. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).
38. Plan fire support.
39. Plan for use of smoke and other nonlethal munitions.
40. Plan triggers for suppression and smoke.
41. Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
42. Plan fires to support the R&S effort.
43. Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and to prevent fratricide.

44. Plan engineer support.
45. Identify survivability tasks.
46. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
47. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and R&S plan.
48. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units.
49. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
50. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
51. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available.
52. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
53. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats immediately throughout the unit.
54. Develop decontamination plans and disseminate planned and active sites.
55. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
56. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movement through restrictive terrain.
57. Plan combat service support (CSS).
58. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
59. Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort.
60. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
61. Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.
62. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
63. Unit prepares for security operations.
64. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
65. Conduct extensive R&S.
66. Provide intelligence requirements to patrols, observation posts (OPs) and other US elements operating in the AO.
67. Coordinate for liaison officers, local guides, and interpreters as required.
68. Coordinate fire support plans with adjacent or supported units.
69. Coordinate for augmentations such as civil military detachments, military police teams, and military working dogs.
70. Conducts precombat checks as required.
71. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
72. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible (include QRF).
73. Unit executes security operations.
74. Assign sub-element AOs.
75. Establish zones of separation if necessary.
76. Conduct CMO activities as required.
77. Implement plans to protect civil and or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.
78. Assign security missions to subordinate elements.

79. Assign mission to patrol, establish and operate checkpoint and roadblock operations, open and secure routes, establish observation posts (OPs), conduct weapons site inspections, provide escorts for military or civilian movements, plan and conduct civil disturbance operations, conduct a cordon and a search, enforce curfews, stabilize areas that have escalating tension, and secure selected sites (voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches, etc.).
80. Unit headquarters controls stability operations.
81. Enforce ROE and ROI.
82. Maintain communications with higher headquarters and subordinate units.
83. Conduct and monitor meetings with community and factional leaders.
84. Debrief subordinates involved in operations as necessary.
85. Demonstrate resolve, confidence, commitment, and sensitivity for local customs and people living in the AO by attending local events.
86. Coordinate for disposition of detained personnel, documents, equipment, and weapons.
87. Commit the QRF as required.
88. Submit reports IAW higher headquarters order, SOP, and or commander's guidance.
89. Unit leaders assess the operation.
90. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
91. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
92. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
93. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
94. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
95. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
96. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-OTH-6705	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-OTH-6707
TANK-OTH-6706		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
11. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
12. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
13. MCWP 3-33.4 Domestic Support Operations
14. MCWP 3-33.5 Counter Insurgency Operations
15. MCWP 3-33.6 Procedures for Humanitarian Operations in Joint and Multiservice Environments
16. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

17. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-7702: Conduct Civil Military Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The complex of activities in support of military operations embracing the interaction between the military force and civilian authorities and fostering the development of favorable emotions, attitudes, and behavior in neutral, friendly, or hostile groups.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct operations at the location and time specified, that will require cooperation and coordination with civilian authorities. The unit commander's obligation to civil and military authority is defined. The unit is augmented with a civil affairs support personnel. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff is functioning. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The battalion conducts a civil military operation in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies mission essential tasks and mission requirements. The unit analyzes the impact of the mission on the civilian populace and the impact of the civilian populace on the operation. The unit plans operations security. The unit establishes and maintains close and continuing relations with local civil authority, other US government and non-governmental agencies in the area of operations. The unit develops a displaced civilian plan. Force protection is applied to all operations. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Note: The term "enemy" is used in this outline to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, individual, or group that is or may become hostile to US forces. The term "battlefield" is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).
2. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
3. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
4. Identify mission essential tasks and or mission requirements required for mission accomplishment.
5. Issue warning order (WARNO) to civil affairs personnel.
6. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
7. Employ all available information-gathering assets, the battlefield environment, and battlefield effects.

8. Evaluate the enemy and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
9. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
10. Include location and orientation of enemy forces, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
11. Develop reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
12. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
13. Analyze the impact of the mission on the civilian populace.
14. Analyze the impact of the civilian populace on military operations.
15. Provide staff assistance and guidance on command policy to subordinate units.
16. Determine civil affairs (CA) activities to assist in the accomplishment of the mission.
17. Determine the location of critical environmental resources, assets, and facilities such as nuclear power plants, water and or sewage treatment facilities, and oil refineries.
18. Determine value of asset to the mission, effects on public health if the asset is destroyed, danger of significant regional or global contamination, potential post-conflict clean-up costs, and economic viability of the area.
19. Identify cultural considerations within the operational area, to include religious, social, political, and economical elements.
20. Determine location and site of joint commissions, local government and non-government meetings, and civilian gatherings that should be attended by unit representative.
21. Plan OPSEC.
22. Develop force protection measures.
23. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
24. Plan fire support.
25. Plan engineer support.
26. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
27. Plan air defense (AD) support.
28. Plan combat service support (CSS).
29. Develop a displaced civilian (DC) plan to minimize civilian interference with military operations and to provide care for DCs.
30. Estimate the number of DCs, their points of origin, and anticipated direction of movement.
31. Identify requirements for care of civilians (medical, food, and water).
32. Assess the ability of foreign nation and or host nation to solve DC situation.
33. Identify need for additional CA assets.
34. Coordinate with the S-4 for DC routes.
35. Coordinate for military police (MP) support along DC routes within the AO.
36. Coordinate requirement for military intelligence (MI) screening and integration support.
37. Establish collection points and assembly areas, routes away from main supply routes (MSR), food, water, and medical needs of DCs, and maximum foreign nation, host nation, non-governmental organization (NGO), and private voluntary organization (PVO) support.

38. Disseminate DC plan and route overlays to US and allied military, and to the local government and populace.
39. Conduct risk management.
40. S-3, XO and civil affairs (CA) team prepares CA annex and portions of the operation plan (OPLAN) for the unit.
41. Assign aspects of the preparation to S-3 section providing guidance, editing, and validation of the end product.
42. Issue and or write plans IAW the COAs selected by the unit commander and the planning guidance issued.
43. Include primary, alternate, contingency plans (CONPLAN), and emergency plans based on the criticality of the task.
44. Include in appropriate CONPLANs any reasonable or anticipated changes to the civil-military operations (CMOs) mission such as follow-on missions or other missions to be executed on order from the tasking headquarters.
45. Present the complete plan to the unit commander for review as part of the OPORD or operations plan (OPLAN).
46. XO, S-3, CA team or staff judge advocate (SJA) advises the commander of legal obligations and moral considerations.
47. Identify civilian casualty figures, property destruction, and infrastructure dislocation.
48. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
49. Unit prepares for the mission.
50. Establish liaison with local officials.
51. Coordinate for linguist support, identify local officials, and contact local officials.
52. Establish and maintain close and continuing relations with other US government agencies with a responsibility toward the civilian community in the AO.
53. Secure list of agencies operating in AO, identify contact persons within the agencies, determine mission and area of responsibility (AOR) of agencies, and establish contact with agencies.
54. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
55. Conducts extensive R&S.
56. Conducts precombat checks as necessary.
57. Supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
58. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
59. Establish medical civic action programs (MEDCAPs) to provide health care to noncombatants, incorporating U.S. doctors and local host nation medical personnel.
60. Brief subordinates on the danger of unmapped mine fields and booby traps in the AO.
61. Position forces.
62. Complete host-nation resource estimate.
63. Unit executes the CMO.
64. Conduct combat, stability, support, enabling, combat support (CS), and CSS operations as directed (operations may be conducted in an urban environment).
65. Concentrate engineers on both battle-damage repair and the upgrading of utilities to improve local infrastructure.
66. Maintain an information field.
67. Maintain area assessment and study and resource file database input from

civil affairs personnel.
68. Maintain copies and working knowledge of existing treaties, status of forces agreement and international law and agreements applicable to the AO.
69. Request information necessary to satisfy the priority intelligence requirement (PIR) from applicable sources, to include foreign nation information.
70. Route intelligence information requests through the unit S-2.
71. Identify information received that satisfies PIR.
72. Modify previously developed estimates and plans IAW the latest information available.
73. Notify CADST leader of modified estimates and plans.
74. Notify other concerned (higher, lower, or adjacent) staff sections of information that satisfies intelligence requirements (IR).
75. Update, in conjunction with the unit S-2, the commander's PIR list IAW the latest information available and requirements for additional commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) that arise from modified estimate and-plans.
76. Maintain liaison with local civil authorities and nongovernmental organizations.
77. Make face-to-face contact with key officials.
78. Determine degree of support and trust of officials.
79. Unit public affairs office (PAO) or S-1 supervises media support, control, and briefings.
80. Unit leaders assess the operation.
81. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
82. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
83. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-OTH-6704	TANK-OTH-6705	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-OTH-6707	TANK-OTH-6706	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
11. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
12. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
13. MCWP 3-33.3 Marine Corps Public Affairs
14. MCWP 3-33.4 Domestic Support Operations
15. MCWP 3-33.6 Human Assistance Operations
16. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

17. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-7703: Establish a Base Camp

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A base camp is a grouping of units or activities within a defined, defensible perimeter with specific access control points and traffic control. All units or activities are under operational control of a single commander for security operations.

CONDITION: The tank battalion conducts entry operations as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to establish a base(s) of operation within its assigned area of operations (AO). The order includes environmental, construction and restoration constraints. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit establishes a base camp in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit organizes itself into contiguous or noncontiguous subunit sectors and base(s) with a defined, defensible perimeter. The unit clears and or marks minefields or improvised explosive devices (IED) before occupation. The unit establishes and maintains local security on a 24-hour basis. The unit constructs and restores base camp installations and facilities within environmental and fiscal constraints. The unit determines security and force protection assets and needs. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive the order and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Determine availability of installations, facilities, terrain sites, and civilian labor force if information is not provided by higher headquarters (this task may be completed by the civil affairs team).
5. Select base camp site if not assigned by higher.
6. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
7. Employ all available information-gathering assets.
8. Research intelligence database(s) and determine nature, makeup, and urban concentrations of local civil and military population; natural defensive characteristics of terrain; movement corridors throughout AO for both mounted and dismounted operations; conditions of existing roads, railways, pipelines, and waterways for use as military LOCs and local civil and

military movement; potential base camp installations and facilities or suitable terrain; and proximity of threat to potential civil and military facilities and installations.

9. Conduct analysis of security vulnerabilities.
10. Address human intelligence (HUMINT).
11. Define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate the enemy, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
12. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
13. Include location and orientation of enemy forces; location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems; location of enemy target acquisition assets; positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets; enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs); enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems; and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
14. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
15. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
16. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
17. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
18. Address security of main supply routes (MSRs).
19. Identify other forces and or organizations operating in area.
20. Address coordination with other organizations and identify possible civil affairs (CA) and civil military operations (CMO) activities.
21. Develop a communications plan.
22. Determine proximity to lines of communications (LOCs), address communication architecture, and designate location of command post (CP).
23. Determine distances from urban areas.
24. Determine location of possible landing zones and pickup zones.
25. Designate priorities for protection of civil and military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.
26. Determine security and or force protection assets and needs.
27. Determine availability of host nation (HN) support.
28. Plan fire support based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
29. Plan fires to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that affect the unit's mission.
30. Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
31. Plan obscuration fires, deception fires to deceive the enemy, fires to support the reconnaissance effort, indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide, and engineer support.
32. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
33. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
34. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone

or axis.

35. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
36. Plan construction of CPs, bunkers, and observation posts (OPs).
37. Plan construction of force-protection structures such as earth revetments, wire obstacles, and defensive positions.
38. Plan the clearing or marking of minefields.
39. Plan the clearing of booby traps.
40. Plan to provide backup support for identifying, marking, removing, or destroying explosive ordnance.
41. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
42. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available.
43. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
44. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
45. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
46. Plan air defense (AD) support.
47. Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement.
48. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
49. Plan coverage for base camp defense.
50. Develop a combat service support (CSS) plan.
51. Determine existing facilities and or services.
52. Identify storage bunkers, maintenance and refueling areas, mess areas, showers, and head facilities, aid stations, and verify contracted services.
53. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
54. Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort
55. Coordinate with higher headquarters' S-4 and requests assistance in planning contract requirements for logistics and base camp development.
56. Coordinate with higher headquarters' S-4 for construction of additional facilities and installations.
57. Coordinate procurement and contracting within the unit.
58. Develop a health and morale, welfare, and recreation plan.
59. Determine environmental concerns, constraints, and waste disposal.
60. Develop an administrative support plan for non-United States (US) civilian augmentees.
61. Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.
62. Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.
63. Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points.
64. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
65. Designate a quartering or advance party and assign subunit sectors.
66. Plan for integrating other forces operating in the AO.
67. Plan for integration of fixed or rotary wing assets if available.
68. Identify and request additional assets required from higher headquarters.
69. Develop site recommendations and control measures (additional ground or aerial reconnaissance may be required).

70. Obtain information concerning availability of civil and military sites and terrain.
71. Conduct risk management.
72. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
73. Unit prepares for mission.
74. Dispatches quartering party or advance party.
75. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conduct extensive R&S, conduct precombat checks, and supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
76. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
77. Coordinate with higher headquarters' S-3 and deconflict proposed terrain and site assignments.
78. Obtain clearance for use of site if required.
79. Unit executes the plan (occupy base camp).
80. Move IAW the controlling headquarters order.
81. The unit may initially move to an assembly area in the AO or it may begin to occupy the base camp directly from the march.
82. Establish local security.
83. Clear and mark minefields or booby traps before occupation.
84. Establish communications across the AO.
85. Refuel vehicles and recover any inoperable equipment.
86. Establish logistical facilities and medical aid stations.
87. Continue R&S efforts in the area.
88. Adjust fire support plan and repositions fire support assets as necessary.
89. Construct protective shelters for key facilities.
90. Emplace vehicle barriers.
91. Clear standoff zones around facilities.
92. Erect predetonation screens to protect units and installations.
93. Construct or coordinate for construction of secure Class IV and V supply points and CPs.
94. Rebuild or coordinate for rebuilding LOCs if required.
95. Repair and clear airfields and helicopter landing zones for use in air evacuation and other operations if required.
96. Commander and staff provide command and control (C2).
97. Position headquarters to provide constant monitoring of subordinate units.
98. Update communications support plan.
99. Refine area security plan.
100. Ensure base development timelines are met.
101. Plan contingencies and rehearse employment of quick reaction force (QRF).
102. Identify shortfalls and cross level assets.
103. Unit coordinates construction of temporary facilities and structures for displaced persons if required.
104. Unit leaders assess the operation.
105. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
106. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
107. Unit commander vigorously engages in making personal contacts with supported groups, partners in the operation, and community representatives.

108. Unit force complies with peace agreement guidelines, higher headquarters directives, and environmental constraints.
109. Unit and subordinate elements comply with ROE and ROI.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-7210 TANK-CSS-7502

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-OTH-6701

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

TANK-OTH-7704: Conduct a Cordon and Search

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Cordon and search involves isolating a predesignated area by cordoning it off and systematically searching for enemy personnel, weapons, intelligence, supplies, explosives or communications equipment.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The unit receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a cordon and search for insurgents and sympathizers at the location and time specified. The unit is provided an interpreter(s). Air assets are available. Explosive ordinance demolition (EOD) assets are available. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. Higher headquarters has an artillery battalion in DS. The unit has priority of fires. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the cordon and search in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes a cordon of the designated area without detection by insurgents or sympathizers. The unit conducts the search and captures all insurgents and enemy material within the cordon. The unit establishes clear abort criteria. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources (this includes human intelligence [HUMINT] and signal intelligence [SIGNIT]).
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance (should involve the analysis of aerial imagery, photographs, or any other detailed information about the building(s) or other urban terrain for which the unit is responsible).
5. Obtain maps and diagrams of subway systems, railways, mass transit routes, underground water, sewer, utility systems, electrical power stations, emergency services, fuel supply and storage facilities.
6. Obtain maps and diagrams of mass communications facilities such as cellular phones, computer hubs, radio, and telephone.
7. Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to maneuver.
8. Conduct intelligence preparation of the urban area.
9. Employ all available information-gathering assets.
10. Define the urban area environment and describe its effects.
11. Identify covered and concealed approaches to the urban area.
12. Identify mobility corridors to include air, building level, intra-building level, street level, and subterranean level.
13. Identify buildings protected by the law of land warfare such as churches, medical facilities, historic monuments, and other facilities dedicated to arts and sciences, provided they are not being used for military purposes.
14. Identify areas and facilities restricted by current ROE.
15. Identify stadiums, parks, open fields, playgrounds, and other open areas that may be used for landing zones, holding areas, or engagement areas.
16. Identify construction sites that may contain barrier materials.
17. Identify significant fire hazards and locations of other hazardous material (HAZMAT), such as hazardous industrial waste.
18. Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to employ maximum combat power due to the need to minimize damage and rubbling effects.
19. Identify other logistics infrastructure that could effect the operation such as sources of potable water, bulk fuel and transport systems, etc.
20. Evaluate the enemy.
21. Determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
22. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
23. Include location and orientation of the enemy; location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems; location of enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and mines; and known or suspected use of biological and chemical weapons.
24. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
25. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
26. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
27. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
28. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
29. Divide the search area into zones.
30. Organize subordinate companies or elements.

31. Designate a cordon element to surround and secure the area during the search.
32. Designate a search element to execute the search mission.
33. Designate a reserve element to assist the other two elements if needed.
34. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS) as required.
35. Plan fire support.
36. Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
37. Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations as required.
38. Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.
39. Plan fires beyond the objective area to support a hasty attack or defense.
40. Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective area.
41. Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.
42. Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets.
43. Plan engineer support.
44. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.
45. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
46. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting CS and CSS units.
47. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
48. Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).
49. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
50. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
51. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
52. Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
53. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
54. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support is provided by higher headquarters.
55. Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions in the objective area.
56. Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.
57. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
58. Plan combat service support (CSS).
59. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
60. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
61. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions in the objective area.
62. Establish clear abort criteria.

63. Conduct risk management.
64. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
65. Unit prepares for the mission.
66. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
67. Conducts extensive R&S and precombat checks.
68. Supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
69. Coordinate with the local civilian police force to conduct the actual search if their numbers and training permit.
70. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
71. Position forces to support the plan.
72. Unit conducts the mission.
73. Conduct movement into the area to be searched.
74. Depart IAW movement tables and in the configuration specified by the OPORD.
75. Approach the area by stealth maintaining security during movement without being detected by the enemy.
76. Move during the hours of darkness, if possible, using as many different routes as possible into the area.
77. Establish the cordon.
78. Move rapidly into the positions by stealth IAW SOP, order, and or guidance from higher headquarters.
79. Surround the area simultaneously to prevent escape of insurgents and to block any reinforcements; if this is not possible, use observed fire to cover that portion not covered by Marines.
80. Position elements in overwatch or blocking positions to support the cordon and isolate the search area from reinforcements.
81. Establish a foothold in the assigned area.
82. Secure the objective area.
83. Adjust cordon as required and closes gaps using patrols or a series of observation posts to prevent enemy from escaping.
84. Orient on individuals evading the search.
85. Establish checkpoints and roadblocks to control movement into and out of search area.
86. Protect the force conducting the actual search.
87. Conduct the search.
88. Announce the search.
89. Conduct the search for suspected insurgents and sympathizers, supplies, and equipment with the least inconvenience to the populace using one of three methods.
90. Method 1: Assemble inhabitants in a central location if they appear to be hostile. This method provides the most control and simplifies the search and interrogation; however, taking inhabitants away from their dwellings encourages looting and ill feelings.
91. Method 2: Restrict inhabitants to their homes. This prohibits civilian movement and discourages looting, but makes control and interrogation difficult.
92. Method 3: Control the heads of households. This reduces looting and ensures the search teams do not steal anything; this is the best method of searching since it is less disruptive to the inhabitants.
93. Search all underground and underwater areas.
94. Use observed fire to cover any gaps in the cordon.

95. Inspect any freshly excavated ground because it may be a freshly dug hiding place.
96. Use mine detectors to locate metal objects underground and underwater.
97. Consider any enemy material found to be booby trapped until inspection proves it safe.
98. Prevent hostile forces from outside the search area from joining the inhabitants of the area and interfering with the search.
99. Unit commander or designated representative controls the unit's rate of search and directs reorganization as needed.
100. Employ the reserve to assist cordon and search elements as the situation requires.
101. Report the progress of the unit to the higher headquarters commander.
102. Enforce the ROE and ROI.
103. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
104. Unit secures captured insurgents or enemy as required.
105. Use the least force to detain the insurgents.
106. Turn insurgents over to local police as soon as the situation allows.
107. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
108. Unit withdraws from the search area.
109. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
110. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7211	TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-OTH-6704	TANK-OTH-6705	TANK-TAC-6804
TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-OTH-6706	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
8. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
12. MCWP 3-33.5 Counter Insurgency Operations
13. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-7705: Secure Civilians During Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The actions a unit takes to identify and segregate combatants

and noncombatants while moving them from the immediate area of operations.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to secure civilians in order to protect them from injury. Some are refugees and some are inhabitants of the area in which the unit is operating. Some individuals and groups are openly hostile. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit secures civilians during operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and segregates combatants and noncombatants, searches them, safeguards them, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations (AO). The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive the order and develop a plan for securing the civilians.
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance if not familiar with the AO.
5. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
6. Employ all available information-gathering assets required to support the mission, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
7. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) based on the factors of METT-TC.
8. Include location and orientation of enemy forces; enemy counterattack objectives and location of enemy reserves; location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems; location of enemy target acquisition assets; positioning of enemy air defense artillery (AD) assets; enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines; enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems; and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
9. Request interpreters to help interface with the local populace if necessary.
10. Develop control measures for expected or unexpected situations.
11. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
12. Identify security elements, search elements, and guard elements.
13. Designate an intermediate collection point to deal with large numbers of civilians.
14. Coordinate for additional combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets as required.
15. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support

based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis.
16. Plan fire support, engineer support, nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support, air defense (AD) support, and CSS.
17. Select and designate methods of communications.
18. Plan casualty evacuation.
19. Develop a media plan.
20. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
21. Unit prepares for mission.
22. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
23. Conduct extensive R&S IAW the commander's intent.
24. Conduct precombat checks IAW the commander's intent.
25. Supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
26. Conduct rehearsals if possible.
27. Position forces IAW the plan.
28. Unit executes the mission.
29. Establish and maintain 360 degree and three dimensional security in the AO in which civilians are gathered.
30. Segregate civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treats them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
31. Search civilians.
32. Restrain and detain noncombatants who do not follow instructions.
33. Provide food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment.
34. Assign guards to escort civilians out of the immediate AO.
35. Evacuate civilians to a processing and reception station or to an intermediate collection point.
36. Report this situation and status in a timely manner to higher headquarters.
37. Give proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials.
38. Follow ROE and ROI guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.
39. Unit leaders assess the operation.
40. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
41. Ensure civilians are treated with respect.
42. Enforce ROE and ROI.
43. Ensure elements understand procedures for dealing with news media.
44. Use FRAGOs as necessary to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
45. Unit S-2 section processes combatants and or suspected war criminals as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, SOP, or other guidance.
46. Inspect and process captured documents, material and equipment.
47. Coordinate with the unit S-4 to evacuate captured material equipment and EPWs.
48. Identify and report time sensitive information to higher headquarters immediately using a SPOTREP with at least an IMMEDIATE precedence.
49. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210 TANK-CSS-7502

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-OTH-6705

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
11. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
12. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
13. MCWP 3-33.6 Human Assistance Operations
14. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
15. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-7706: Conduct Negotiations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Negotiations are a command function and are typically used during stability and support operations to enable agreements and promote the process of conciliation between various groups. Negotiators resolve disputes or set the conditions for future negotiations.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters in a support and stability environment. The unit is directed to conduct negotiations within their assigned area to resolve an issue(s) with local factional or non-US military elements. The local factional or external military elements are willing to negotiate. Higher headquarters provides a negotiator, recorder, or interpreter. The unit designates a security element. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants are present in the operational environment.

STANDARD: The unit conducts negotiations in accordance with the SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. Negotiations enable agreements to be reached and promote the process of conciliation. Negotiators resolve the dispute(s) or issue(s) or set the conditions for future negotiations. Resolution is followed by the conduct of scheduled preventive actions and follow-up liaison. Negotiations do not exceed the applicable level of authority. All actions, liaison, negotiation results, and requests for assistance are immediately reported to higher headquarters. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit commander designates a negotiation team which includes interpreters and other personnel from higher headquarters.
2. Unit commander or designated representative and negotiation team analyze negotiation requirements.
3. Unit negotiation team prepares for negotiations.
4. Unit negotiation team prepares meeting location.
5. Unit negotiation team conducts negotiations.
6. Unit negotiation team leader implements follow-up activities.
7. Unit leaders assess the negotiations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-OTH-7702 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
10. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
11. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
12. MCWP 3-33.6 Procedures for Humanitarian Operations in Joint and Multiservice Environments
13. MCWP 3-40.6 Psychological Operations

TANK-TAC-7801: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An assembly area (AA) is where a unit or command is assembled preparatory to further action.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to move to an assembly area (AA) and prepare for future operations at a time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit is given a general area in which to select the exact location of its AA. Resupply and maintenance support are available. Enemy contact is possible. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited

visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit occupies the AA in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit commander and staff designate a quartering party. The unit specifies an order of march that allows for rapid occupation. The unit reconnoiters the area and selects sites that support the occupation of the AA and moves all personnel and essential equipment into their assigned positions by the time specified in the order. The unit employs passive and active operations security (OPSEC) measures to deny the enemy any indications of friendly plans such as intentions, force composition, or unit identity and locations. The unit maintains situational awareness and the main body is not surprised by the enemy. The unit completes combat preparations as specified in the OPORD and IAW the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive the order and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Select tentative AA positions unit headquarters and subordinate elements.
5. Develop reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP process.
6. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
7. Designate areas for each subordinate element.
8. Designate a quartering party.
9. Specify an order of march that allows for rapid occupation.
10. Develop a plan that facilitates defense.
11. Designate priority of work and provide for maintenance and resupply.
12. Plan to occupy the assembly area under conditions of limited visibility if possible.
13. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
14. Conduct risk management.
15. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
16. Unit prepares for the mission.
17. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence; supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent; provide current and projected future weapons control status and air defense warning.
18. Conduct extensive R&S, precombat checks, and rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
19. Unit executes the plan.
20. Dispatch quartering party to the AA.
21. Move unit main body to and occupy the AA.
22. Perform AA operations IAW established priority of work and SOP.
23. Defend the AA ensuring enemy activity does not impede operations.

24. Unit leaders assess the operation.
25. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
26. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
27. On order, unit departs the AA.
28. Ensure all equipment and supplies are moved at the time designated by the OPORD.
29. Ensure subordinate elements recover all emplaced mines and obstacles unless directed by higher headquarters to do otherwise.
30. Conduct an intelligence sweep of the area ensuring no equipment or intelligence material is left in the AA.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6801	SCT-TAC-5801
TOW-TAC-5801	TOW-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-6804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7802: Conduct Consolidation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Consolidation is the organizing and strengthening of a newly captured position so that it can be used against the enemy.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and attacks and seizes an objective. The enemy is defeated or has withdrawn but is capable of counterattacking. The unit receives an OPORD or FRAGO to defend its position or directing a change of mission. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts consolidation in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit reestablishes the chain of command as required. The unit reestablishes

communications as required. The unit establishes and maintains local security. The unit prepares for an enemy counterattack. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit reestablishes the chain of command as required.
3. Command group moves into position to control and influence the unit; position itself with lead elements in the most critical areas or where it can best influence the battlefield; position security elements to cover avenues of approach.
4. Unit consolidates; establishes security consistent with the threat; reestablishes communications if required; eliminates pockets of enemy resistance; prepares defensive positions and establishes a fire plan; clears obstacles or improves lanes to support friendly movement and reorganization activities; plans and prepares for future operations; destroys captured enemy equipment that cannot be evacuated or is not useful to the unit; treats and evacuates casualties; secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required, processes captured documents as required; maintains contact with the enemy by redirecting the reconnaissance effort, directing small-unit patrols, possibly conducting limited objective attacks, and by pulling the latest intelligence from the higher headquarters and S-2; and cross-levels and conducts emergency resupply.
5. Unit remains ready for an enemy counterattack.
6. Unit reports situation and status to higher headquarters.
7. Unit continues operations as directed.
8. Conduct a map and visual reconnaissance of terrain between present location and next objective.
9. Issue FRAGOs as necessary.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6802	TANK-CMDC-6202	TOW-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7803: Conduct Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Reorganization is the shifting of internal resources within a degraded unit to increase its level of combat effectiveness.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The commander's assessment of the unit's ability to accomplish its mission indicates reorganization is required. The unit completes actions at the objective and a pause in operations is expected. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts reorganization in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit reestablishes communications if required. The unit establishes and maintains local security. The unit reestablishes the unit chain of command, key staff positions, and command and control (C2) facilities lost before or during the battle. The unit coordinates and conducts resupply and refueling operations. The unit cross-levels equipment and personnel to replace combat losses. The unit prepares for an enemy counterattack.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander, with staff assistance, conducts an assessment to determine the unit's capability to perform a mission.
3. Request status reports from subordinate elements; determine follow-on mission if applicable; determine available time before the start of the follow-on mission; develop a reorganization plan.
4. Unit reports situation and status to higher headquarters.
5. Unit prepares for reorganization, briefs leaders on reorganization plan, and issues orders as necessary.
6. Unit conducts a deliberate reorganization; reestablishes communications if required; establishes and maintains security; reestablishes the unit chain of command, key staff positions, and command and control (C2) facilities lost before or during the battle; treats and evacuates casualties; recovers and repairs damaged equipment as necessary; redistributes ammunition, supplies, and equipment as necessary; coordinates and conducts resupply and refueling operations; repositions C2 facilities, communications assets, and logistics for future operations; reorganizes subordinate elements if losses have occurred; and secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and captured documents and material.
7. Unit reports situation and status to higher headquarters.
8. Unit continues operations as directed; conducts a map and visual reconnaissance of terrain between present location and next objective; and issues FRAGOs as necessary.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-7502 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-6502 TOW-CSS-5501 TANK-TAC-6803
TOW-TAC-5803 TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7804: Conduct Tactical Movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Moving tactically dictates what elements of a unit are organized to facilitate combat. Movement techniques are used to traverse terrain such as traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch which is determined by the likelihood of enemy contact. Movement formations are the arrangement of troops and/or vehicles for a specific purpose related to terrain and the likelihood of enemy contact. Formations include box, column, diamond, line, vee, wedge, echelon (right or left).

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission at the time and place specified. The operation requires the battalion to conduct tactical movement. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary battalion personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The battalion is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Enemy contact is likely. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion conducts tactical movement in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The battalion crosses the line of departure (LD) at the designated time. The unit moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement as specified in the battalion order. The unit adjusts routes or axis of advance, formation and movement technique(s) in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and to changes in the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The battalion complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Battalion leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The battalion commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).

3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order; conduct a map reconnaissance; conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB); develop the situation template (SITEMP); develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP process; organize the battalion to accomplish the mission; plan to make initial contact with the smallest forces possible if contact is the intent; develop control measures; develop a movement plan; develop graphic control measures using the higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide; plan the use of dismounts when any of the following conditions apply; develop a security plan; coordinate passage of lines as necessary; address actions on chance contact with the enemy; integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support based on the factors of METT-TC; and conduct risk management.
4. The battalion commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
5. The battalion prepares for tactical movement; performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles before movement and identifies all non-mission capable (NMC) vehicles; loads all vehicles IAW load plans and CSS plan; briefs movement plan; verifies communications in all vehicles prior to movement; supervises subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the battalion commander's intent; conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible; and positions elements for the movement.
6. The battalion executes tactical movement; initiate movement from the assembly area to the line of departure (LD).
7. The battalion crosses the LD and moves using the appropriate formation based on the factors of METT-TC; reports crossing to higher headquarters. Uses the formation that provides the proper control, security, and speed.
8. The battalion elements maintain formation with correct interval, speed, and or lateral dispersion IAW commander's guidance or SOP.
9. Battalion elements maintain security.
10. Battalion leaders assess the operation.
11. Battalion elements take actions at halts IAW SOP.
12. The battalion transitions to fire and maneuver if enemy contact is made.
13. The battalion consolidates and reorganizes as necessary; the battalion secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW), treats and evacuates casualties, processes captured documents and equipment, as required.
14. The battalion continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TOW-TAC-5804	TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7805: Conduct a Movement to Contact and Employ Actions on Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A movement to contact is a form of the offense designed to develop the situation and to establish or regain contact with the enemy.

CONDITION: The tank battalion operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an offensive action. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit provides guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts movement to contact/actions on contact in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit maintains all around security and is not surprised by the enemy. The unit focuses all efforts on finding the enemy. The security force locates and fixes the enemy and continues to develop the situation allowing the unit to rapidly deploy and attack in any direction. The unit makes contact with the smallest element possible. The unit maintains contact with the enemy once gained. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
5. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
6. Develop reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP to conduct a physical reconnaissance.
7. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
8. Plan engineer support.
9. Task-organize engineer forces well forward to support potential breaching operations.
10. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting CS and CSS units.
11. Maintain the flexibility to mass engineers to breach significant obstacles.
12. Plan obstacle belts, obstacle control measures, and situational obstacles to support flank security (develop and adjust obstacle

locations and triggers for execution based on the unit's movement and the enemy situation).

13. Plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
14. Plan air defense (AD) support.
15. Shift and reposition AD assets based on the unit's movement, selected maneuver option, and changes in the enemy air situation.
16. Ensure adequate air defense of forces during movements through choke points, breach lanes, bridges, and restrictive terrain.
17. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
18. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan.
19. Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
20. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
21. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
22. Plan combat service support (CSS).
23. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
24. Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort.
25. Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
26. Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective.
27. Plan and coordinate the locations, displacements, and routes of CSS assets to maintain responsive support.
28. Continuously update the CSS plan based on near-real-time status of units.
29. Plan and coordinate for aerial resupply if available.
30. Plan casualty evacuation.
31. Conduct risk management
32. Prepare for the movement to contact.
33. Conduct extensive reconnaissance, precombat checks, and rehearsals.
34. Supervise and inspect subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
35. Address actions to cross known danger areas.
36. Address the advance guard making contact with a small enemy force, a large force beyond its capabilities to defeat, and an obstacle the reconnaissance and surveillance force has not identified and reported.
37. Address a flank security force making contact with a small force.
38. Address a flank security force making contact with a large force beyond its capability to defeat.
39. Address actions to report and bypass an enemy force (based on the bypass criteria).
40. Address transition into a maneuver option.
41. Prepare to initiate contact or continue the movement to contact at night or other periods of limited visibility.
42. Unit executes approach march technique.
43. Assign axis of advance or a zone and march objective to orient movement.
44. Select routes based on IPB and guidance from higher headquarters.
45. Establish a security force, advance, flank, and rear guards to protect the main body and enable it to deploy if the enemy attacks.
46. Develop the situation early but avoid decisive engagement (once found,

the enemy must be kept under surveillance and his activity reported).

47. Establish a hasty defense, if the unit reaches the objective before making contact with the enemy, and then seek guidance from higher headquarters.
48. Assist companies by ensuring the availability of adequate supporting fires, mobile transportation assets, timely accurate intelligence, and reserve forces.
49. Ensure R&S force provides security to the front during the approach march (R&S force must be far enough ahead of the advanced guard to provide adequate warning and sufficient space for them to maneuver).
50. Ensure flank security elements operate far enough out to prevent the enemy from placing direct or observed indirect fires on the main body.
51. Ensure advance guard operates forward of the main body to provide security for the main body and ensure the main body's uninterrupted advance.
52. Protect the main body from surprise attack and develops the situation to protect the deployment of the main body when it is committed to action.
53. Maintain SA of the entire unit, especially the R&S force.
54. Report enemy contact to the unit commander.
55. Collect and report all information about the enemy.
56. Select tentative fighting positions for following unit units.
57. Attempt to penetrate enemy security elements and reach and or identify the enemy main force.
58. Destroy or repel all enemy reconnaissance forces.
59. Prevent enemy ground forces from engaging the main body with direct fires.
60. Locate, bypass, or breach obstacles along the main body's axis of advance.
61. Execute tactical tasks such as fix, contain, or block against enemy forces to develop the situation for the main body, within the commander's intent.
62. Ensure combat elements of the main body are prepared to rapidly deploy and attack, giving them the flexibility to maneuver rapidly to a decisive point on the battlefield to destroy the enemy.
63. Maintain SA of the advance guard's activities.
64. Contain the bulk of the unit's combat elements and is arrayed to achieve all-round security.
65. Use standard formations and battle drills that allow the unit commander, to rapidly shift combat power on the battlefield.
66. Execute a hasty ambush, force-oriented attack, hasty defense, or retrograde.
67. Unit executes search and attack technique.
68. Specify where each company will operate, establish measures to consolidate company and or platoon before the attack, and establish fire control measures for each company.
69. Seek the most likely locations of enemy base camps, command and control sites, and mortars.
70. Designate a main effort and supporting efforts that enable the unit to maintain the amount of flexibility the situation dictates.
71. Coordinate for indirect-fire weapons that can respond to all companies as needed.
72. Ensure CSS supports the main effort while remaining responsive to the rest of the unit.
73. Find and fix the enemy.
74. Maintain contact and position its forces to isolate and fix the enemy so

another unit can attack.
75. Conduct a hasty attack (the unit conducts a hasty attack if it is in line with the commander's guidance and if the available friendly forces can generate enough relative combat power).
76. Maintain surveillance (the unit avoids detection so it can report enemy order of battle and activities; the unit must use stealth to be successful in this effort).
77. Finish the enemy rapidly.
78. Conduct hasty or deliberate attacks, or maneuver to block enemy escape routes while another unit conducts the attack.
79. Conduct R&S activities and collect information while remaining undetected to develop the situational template.
80. Employ indirect fire or close air support (CAS) to destroy the enemy (the unit may establish an area ambush and use these assets to drive the enemy into the ambushes).
81. Unit leaders assess the operation.
82. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
83. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
84. Upon making unexpected contact with the enemy, the unit commander decides on a COA.
85. Evaluate the situation.
86. Deploy, redeploy, and redirect reconnaissance assets to gain information.
87. Consider a bypass, hasty ambush, force-orientated attack, attack by fire (ABF), or hasty defense.
88. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
89. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
90. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
91. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.
92. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7213	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7210	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	SCT-TAC-5809
TANK-TAC-6806	TOW-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-6805

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7806: Conduct a Hasty Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A hasty attack is an attack in which preparation time is traded for speed in order to exploit an opportunity. It is launched with the forces at hand and with minimum preparation to destroy the enemy before he is able to concentrate or establish a defense.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Through a lack of situational awareness (SA) from ineffective reconnaissance or degraded capability, the advance guard of the unit encounters an enemy force unexpectedly. Time is available for the unit commander to make a decision on what action to take and for the main body to fully deploy. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts a hasty attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit commander and staff evaluate the situation and decide on a course of action (COA). The unit deploys, redeploys, and redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information. The unit executes the selected COA IAW the higher commander's intent. The unit maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit advance guard performs actions on contact and develops the situation.
3. Unit commander reports contact to the higher headquarters.
4. Unit commander or designated representative requests indirect fire and close air support (CAS) from the higher headquarters.
5. Unit commander decides on COA. Note: Unit S-3 may forward time critical details of the FRAGO to higher headquarters.
6. Unit executes a hasty ambush.
7. Unit executes a force-orientated attack.
8. Unit executes an attack-by-fire (ABF).
9. Unit executes a defense.
10. Unit executes a retrograde (the unit commander directs a retrograde when the unit lacks the combat power to attack or defend, improve a tactical situation, or prevent a worse one from developing).
11. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
12. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
13. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW), treats and evacuates casualties, and processes captured documents and equipment, as required.
14. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6807

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7807: Conduct a Deliberate Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A deliberate attack is a form of the offensive characterized by preplanned and coordinated employment of firepower and maneuver to close with and destroy or capture the enemy. It is planned and carefully coordinated and rehearsed with all concerned elements based on thorough reconnaissance, evaluation of all available intelligence and relative combat strength, analysis of various courses of action, and other factors affecting the situation. It is generally conducted against a well organized defense when a hasty attack is not possible or was conducted and failed. An attack can continue in the form of an exploitation or a pursuit. An exploitation is an offensive operation that usually follows a successful attack and is designed to disorganize the enemy in depth. A pursuit is an offensive operation designed to catch or cut off a hostile force attempting to escape, with the aim of destroying it.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a force-oriented attack against a stationary force at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit is occupying an assemble area out of contact with the enemy. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive R&S. The unit avoids terrain features that are likely enemy

artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The unit limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting unit elements through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke. The unit fully employs all available combat power to isolate and destroy the enemy force. The unit conducts an EXPDitation or pursuit of the enemy based on the outcome of the deliberate attack and higher commander's intent. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP). Note: The focus of planning is to develop a fully synchronized plan that masses all available combat power against the enemy.
3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
4. Unit prepares for the mission.
5. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conduct extensive R&S, conduct precombat checks, supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent, conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible, and positions forces.
6. Unit conducts movement to the line of departure (LD). Note: When attacking from positions not in contact, units often stage in rear assembly areas, road march to attack positions behind friendly units in contact with the enemy, conduct passage of lines, and begin the attack.
7. Unit executes the plan.
8. Conduct approach to the objective, breach or bypasses obstacles, and transition to different formations based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
9. Avoid terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles.
10. Conduct actions on the objective.
11. Use available combat power to weaken enemy positions, shift fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces, and minimize the effects of enemy deception.
12. Employ firepower and shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces as the unit approaches the enemy defense.
13. Conduct shaping operations to isolate enemy force targeted for destruction and prevent him from laterally repositioning and reinforcing.
14. Conduct decisive operations and update the assaulting force with critical information about the enemy and friendly situation; limit enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke; shift direct and indirect fires and reposition as required to support the maneuver of assaulting forces; assault EXPDsed enemy flanks through a created penetration or other position of advantage; rapidly maneuvers using covered and concealed routes and breaches protective obstacle(s); and commit the reserve as necessary to reinforce the momentum of the attack, block enemy counterattacks, or

exploit success.
15. Push reconnaissance and security forces forward to provide critical information to the unit; focus on areas that the enemy may use to reposition forces, commit reserves, and counterattack; and report enemy reactions, repositioning, and battle damage assessment as the unit develops the engagement.
16. Call forward CSS assets.
17. Unit commander and staff maintain command and control (C2) and report the developing situation to higher headquarters.
18. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), processes captured documents and equipment, and treats and evacuates casualties, as required.
19. Reposition main and TAC command posts (CPs) to sustain constant monitoring and tracking of subordinate units and to evaluate information that impacts on decision points.
20. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
21. Unit continues operations (pursuit or exploitation) based on higher commander's intent.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7211
TANK-CBTS-7401	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7208		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6208	TANK-TAC-6804
TANK-CMDC-6202	TOW-TAC-5804	TANK-CBTS-6401
TANK-TAC-6819	TANK-TAC-6808	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
10. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
11. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
12. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7808: Follow and Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Follow and support is a tactical operation in which a committed force follows and supports the mission accomplishment of a force conducting an offensive operation. Such a force is not a reserve but is committed to

accomplish any or all of these tasks: destroy bypassed units, relieve in place any direct pressure or encircling force that has halted to contain the enemy, block movement of enemy reinforcements, secure lines of communication, guard prisoners, key areas, and installations, secure key terrain and control refugees.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to follow and support a designated unit at a location and time specified for a given operation. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit is occupying an assemble area out of contact with the enemy. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive R&S. The unit establishes liaison with the supported unit. Liaison officers (LNOs) understand the mission and duties as the LNO. Unit leaders ensure that LNOs understand the supported unit's mission and coordination requirements. LNOs provide necessary information to appropriate receiving staff sections on parent unit situation. LNOs obtain information to meet the commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) of the parent unit. The unit assumes the supported unit mission as directed or supports the supported unit as required in accordance with higher headquarters direction. The unit avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The unit fully employs all available combat power to support the mission. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff plan the follow and support mission using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Unit designates LNOs based on commander's guidance, mission, and time available.
4. LNOs examine all aspects of unit operation before departing on liaison tour and understand the mission and duties, commander's intent, concept of operation, logistics situation, combat power status, and status of critical supplies, verify notional overlays and orders, ensure there is reliable means of digital or voice communication back to the main command post (CP), and obtain and understand the CCIRs.
5. LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit.
6. LNOs transmit information to parent unit staff on return from liaison duties.
7. Unit XO maintains control of liaison officers during liaison tour.
8. Unit occupies initial positions and moves in trace of the main effort unit.
9. Prevent enemy observation or disruption of the movement to occupation and

setup of the position and accomplishes all around security.
10. Assume mission or perform support as directed by higher headquarters or as required by supported unit.
11. The unit complies with the rules of engagement (ROE), mission instructions, higher headquarters, and other special orders.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-7804 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5804 TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6809

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7809: Conduct an Attack by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Attack by fire (direct and indirect) is employed to destroy the enemy from a distance, normally used when the mission does not dictate or support occupation of the objective. This task is usually given to the supporting element during the offensive and as a counterattack option for the reserve during defensive operations. An attack by fire is not done in conjunction with a maneuvering force. When assigning this task the commander must specify the intent of fire either to destroy, fix, or suppress.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an operation. The situation requires that the unit conduct an attack by fire (ABF). The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts attack by fire in accordance with the standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit prevents the enemy from withdrawing or repositioning if the intent includes fixing the enemy. The unit inflicts casualties until the enemy is combat

ineffective if the intent is destruction. The unit prevents the enemy from engaging friendly forces if the intent is suppression. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff plan the attack by fire using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Assign sectors of fire and or engagement areas to each company to provide complete coverage of the enemy defensive positions or avenues of approach.
4. Designate control measures for massing, distributing, and shifting direct and indirect fires and allocate space to allow positioning to engage the enemy.
5. Designate measures for security and all around defense; contact points or other coordination measures to promote tie-in between companies.
6. Provide for maximum use of hide positions and natural fighting positions before initiation of the attack.
7. Designate measures to hide movement and occupation, and deceive the enemy about the intent of the operation.
8. Provide instructions for preparing for the attack by fire.
9. Prepare movement instructions to the initial positions.
10. Allow for resupply of the Class III and V to facilitate continuation of the attack.
11. Plan close air support (CAS) and send requests to higher headquarters.
12. Issue order and graphics to subordinate elements.
13. Unit prepares for the attack by fire and prepares for movement and occupation of positions.
14. Detect all enemy elements on movement routes, and on all front and flank approaches to the position before the arrival of the battalion.
15. Employ operations security (OPSEC).
16. Unit moves to and occupies initial positions.
17. Arrive in position at the designated time, prevent enemy observation or disruption of the movement to occupation and setup of the position, and accomplish all around security and tie-in between companies's within 10 minutes of arrival.
18. FSC employs indirect fires and selects and occupies positions affording clear observation of the enemy force, calls for and adjusts suppressive fires against the enemy to allow the battalion to occupy the ABF position, and calls for and adjusts indirect fires to suppress, obscure, or destroy the enemy force.
19. Unit performs the attack and or counterattack by fire and alternates and adjusts ABF positions as necessary.
20. Unit uses indirect fires on enemy elements, ceases fire once the enemy element is destroyed or indicates surrender, sends SPOTREPs and updated SITREPS, and makes recommendations to higher headquarters as necessary.
21. The unit complies with the rules of engagement (ROE), mission instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CBTS-7402
TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CBTS-7401	TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6810 TOW-TAC-5818
TANK-TAC-6804 TOW-TAC-5806

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7810: Conduct a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A bypass is a tactical task that involves maneuvering around an obstacle, position, or enemy force to maintain the momentum of advance. Bypassed obstacles and enemy forces are reported to higher headquarters. It is conducted in accordance to the bypass criteria, which is established by higher headquarters that specifies the conditions and size under which enemy units and contact may be avoided.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The unit encounters an obstacle, enemy position, or enemy force and reports the situation to higher headquarters. Higher headquarters issues a FRAGO to conduct a bypass and directs the unit to avoid becoming decisively engaged. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the bypass in accordance with standard operating procedures, order, and guidance from higher headquarters. The unit conducts the bypass without being detected, without being delayed by the obstacle, or without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy force. The unit employs reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) assets to conduct a physical reconnaissance. The unit ensures bypass affords routes away from the enemy positions, obstacles, and fields of fire. If detected, the unit employs or calls for obscuring or screening smoke and indirect fires to facilitate the maneuver of the rest of the unit and or suppress or destroy enemy elements. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit encounters an obstacle, enemy position, or enemy force and develops

a plan to bypass IAW the higher commander's intent.
3. Distribute location and description of obstacle and or enemy force throughout the unit.
4. Employ reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) assets to conduct a physical reconnaissance.
5. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
6. Unit prepare for the bypass.
7. Assign bypass routes that provide protection from the fires of the enemy antiarmor weapons and an order of march for each route.
8. Ensure bypass affords routes away from the enemy positions, obstacles, and fields of fire.
9. Ensure terrain along the bypass will support the maneuver of the unit.
10. Plan additional security measures such as employment of screening or obscuring smoke if adequate cover and concealment or intervening distance are not available.
11. Issue a FRAGO.
12. Unit executes the bypass: use appropriate formation and or movement technique, maintain the momentum of advance, avoid detection and or delay if possible, mark bypass as required, identify and react to enemy forces along the route, and take appropriate actions after completing the bypass or reacting to contact.
13. Unit leaders assess the operation.
14. Unit continue operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	SCT-CMDC-5211
TOW-TAC-5804	TOW-TAC-5809	TANK-TAC-6812

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7811: Conduct a Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A raid is a tactical operation, usually small scale, involving a swift penetration of hostile territory to secure information, confuse the enemy, or to destroy installations. It ends with a planned withdrawal upon completion of the assigned mission.
CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a raid at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion conducts the raid in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). The unit establishes clear abort criteria for the raid. The unit surprises the enemy and assaults the objective to achieve the intent of the raid. The unit does not become decisively engaged. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
4. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
5. Develop reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
6. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission and designate the main effort, supporting effort, breach element as required, assault element as required, and a reserve as necessary.
7. Plan fire support: synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective, assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets, plan obscuration fires as required, plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort, plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense, plan fires in support of the approach to the objective, plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets, and prevent fratricide
8. Plan engineer support: identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis, determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required, plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation, and plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
9. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support: integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan, ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations, develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit, and develop

decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.

10. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support is provided by higher headquarters.
11. Plan combat service support (CSS): integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements, ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort, plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets, support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective, plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
12. Establish clear abort criteria for the raid.
13. Plan rally points for units to assemble to prepare for the attack or to assemble after the mission is complete and the force is ready to withdraw.
14. Designate the withdrawal sequence.
15. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions on the objective.
16. Coordinate for passage of lines, if necessary.
17. Conduct risk management.
18. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
19. Unit prepares for the mission: refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conduct extensive R&S, conduct precombat checks, supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent, conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible, and position forces.
20. Unit executes the plan.
21. Move tactically to designated tactical assembly area (AA) and conduct a leader's reconnaissance.
22. Conduct approach to the objective.
23. Conduct actions on the objective.
24. Conduct decisive maneuver: shift direct and indirect fires and reposition supporting force as required to support the maneuver of assaulting forces, commit the assaulting force while the unit commander and staff ensure that SA is available and current, limit enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires and CAS, a rapid assault, and employment of smoke, and achieve the intent of the raid.
25. Unit withdraws from the objective in the sequence designated in the order to a covered and concealed positions away from the objective area.
26. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
27. Unit secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.
28. Unit reports PIR and intelligence requirements (IR) to higher headquarters commander and or staff.
29. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
30. Unit returns to designated location.
31. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-TAC-6816 TANK-TAC-7804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 3-41.2 Raid Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7812: Conduct a Feint

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A feint is a form of an attack intended to deceive the enemy and draw attention and combat power (if possible) away from the main effort. Feints must be of sufficient strength and composition to cause the desired enemy reaction. Feints must appear real; therefore, some contact with the enemy is necessary. The feint is most effective under the following conditions: when it reinforces the enemy's expectations, when it appears to be a definite threat to the enemy, when the enemy has a large reserve that it has consistently committed early, and when there are several feasible COAs open to the attacker.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an offensive operation. The battalion is ordered to conduct a feint against an enemy force. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion identifies a plan for the feint incorporating fires, movement of maneuver forces, smoke, EW assets, and communication equipment to support the attack and shaping of the battlefield. The feint is clearly visible to the enemy and forces a desired response, such as a repositioning of forces or early commitment of the enemy reserve. The battalion maneuvers to initiate the feint based on the higher commander's OPORD/FRAGO and intent. The battalion conducts the feint and causes the enemy force to commit. The battalion completes the feint with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.

2. Unit commander and staff plan the feint using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Unit designates LNOs based on commander's guidance, mission, and time available.
4. LNOs examine all aspects of unit operation before departing on liaison tour and understand the mission and duties, commander's intent, concept of operation, logistics situation, combat power status, and status of critical supplies, verify notional overlays and orders, ensure there is reliable means of digital or voice communication back to the main command post (CP), and obtain and understand the CCIRs.
5. LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit.
6. LNOs transmit information to parent unit staff on return from liaison duties.
7. Unit XO maintains control of liaison officers during liaison tour.
8. The unit receives guidance from higher regarding the purpose of the feint.
9. Unit plans the feint mission.
10. Plan feint to force the enemy to employ his reserves away from the main effort or to remain in position.
11. Plan feint to attract enemy supporting fires away from the main effort
12. Plan feint to force the enemy to reveal defensive fires or weaknesses.
13. Plan feint to accustom the enemy to shallow attacks in order to gain surprise with another attack.
14. Identify special planning considerations.
15. Ensure the feint is resourced to appear as the main effort or as a significant threat to the enemy.
16. Establish clear guidance regarding force preservation.
17. Ensure adequate means of detecting the desired enemy reaction.
18. Designate clear disengagement criteria for the feinting force.
19. Assign attainable objectives.
20. Issue clear follow-on missions to the feinting force.
21. The battalion commander reports the status of the feint and its effects on the enemy to the higher commander.
22. The battalion conducts follow-on mission as directed from higher.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6817	TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7813: Conduct a Demonstration

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A demonstration is a form of an attack used for deception. It is made with the intention of deceiving the enemy; however, contact with enemy forces is not sought. Demonstrations support a division or corps plan; Battalion Task Forces do not conduct demonstrations alone. Demonstrations must be clearly visible to the enemy without being transparently deceptive in nature. Demonstration forces use fires, movement of maneuver forces, smoke, EW assets, and communication equipment to support the deception plan.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an offensive operation. The battalion is ordered to conduct a demonstration against an enemy force. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion commander identifies a plan for the demonstration incorporating fires, movement of maneuver forces, smoke, EW assets, and communication equipment to support the deception plan. The demonstration is clearly visible to the enemy without being transparently deceptive in nature. The battalion maneuvers to initiate the demonstration based on the commander's OPORD/FRAGO and intent. The battalion conducts the demonstration and causes the enemy force to commit. The battalion completes the demonstration with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff plan the demonstration mission using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Unit designates LNOs based on commander's guidance, mission, and time available.
4. LNOs examine all aspects of unit operation before departing on liaison tour and understand the mission and duties, commander's intent, concept of operation, logistics situation, combat power status, and status of critical supplies, verify notional overlays and orders, ensure there is reliable means of digital or voice communication back to the main command post (CP), and obtain and understand the CCIRs.
5. LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit.
6. LNOs transmit information to parent unit staff on return from liaison duties.
7. Unit XO maintains control of liaison officers during liaison tour.
8. Unit plans the demonstration mission.
9. Establish a LOA for demonstration forces that allows the enemy to see the

demonstration but not to engage it effectively with direct fires.
10. Establish other security measures necessary to prevent engagement by the enemy.
11. Employ demonstrations to reinforce the enemy's expectations and contribute to the main effort.
12. Develop contingency plans for enemy contact to avoid becoming decisively engaged.
13. Issue clear follow-on missions to the demonstration force.
14. Establish the means to determine the effectiveness of the demonstration and assess its effect on the enemy.
15. The battalion commander reports the status of the demonstration and its effects on the enemy to the higher commander.
16. The battalion conducts follow-on mission as directed from higher.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-7804 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6818

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7814: Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The unit conducts an attack into a concentrated area of structures, facilities, and population, such as villages, cities, and towns in order to isolate and secure an objective or destroy, capture, or force the enemy to withdraw.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an attack of a built-up area at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.
STANDARD: The unit conducts the attack in accordance with standard operating

procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). The unit employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The unit destroys, captures, or forces the enemy force to withdraw. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance and analyze aerial imagery, photographs, or any other detailed information about the building(s) or other urban terrain for which the unit is responsible.
5. Obtain maps and diagrams of subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes; underground water, sewer, and utility systems; electrical power stations and emergency services; fuel supply and storage facilities; and mass communications facilities such as cellular phones, computer hubs, radio, and telephone.
6. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
7. Define the battlefield environment and describe battlefield effects.
8. Identify covered and concealed approaches to the urban area.
9. Identify key and decisive terrain inside and outside of the built-up area.
10. Identify mobility corridors to include air, building level, intra-building level, street level, and subterranean level.
11. Identify buildings protected by the law of land warfare such as churches, medical facilities, historic monuments, and other facilities dedicated to arts and sciences, provided they are not being used for military purposes.
12. Identify areas and facilities restricted by current ROE.
13. Identify stadiums, parks, open fields, playgrounds, and other open areas that may be used for landing zones, holding areas, or engagement areas.
14. Identify location of prisons and jails.
15. Identify construction sites that may contain barrier materials.
16. Identify significant fire hazards and locations of other hazardous material (HAZMAT), such as hazardous industrial waste.
17. Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to employ maximum combat power due to the need to minimize damage and rubbling effects.
18. Identify other logistics infrastructure that could effect the operation such as sources of potable water, bulk fuel and transport systems, and so forth.
19. Evaluate the enemy.
20. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
21. Include location and orientation of enemy forces.
22. Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.
23. Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.
24. Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.
25. Include positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets.
26. Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective

obstacles and scatterable mines.

27. Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.
28. Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
29. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
30. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
31. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
32. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
33. Designate the main effort, supporting effort, a breach element as required, an assault element as required, and a reserve as necessary.
34. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
35. Plan fire support.
36. Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective.
37. Plan engineer support.
38. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
39. Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force.
40. Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
41. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
42. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
43. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
44. Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
45. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
46. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
47. Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective.
48. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
49. Plan combat service support (CSS).
50. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
51. Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort (timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the S-4).
52. Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
53. Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (establish clear priorities of support during reorganization).
54. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
55. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions on the objective.
56. Establish clear abort criteria.

57. Conduct risk management.
58. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
59. Unit prepares for the mission.
60. Conduct extensive R&S.
61. Conduct precombat checks.
62. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
63. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
64. Position forces.
65. Move tactically to designated tactical assembly area (AA) or other designated area.
66. Unit conducts the attack.
67. Move to the objective.
68. Isolate the objective.
69. Seize terrain that dominates the area so that the enemy cannot supply, reinforce, or withdraw its defenders.
70. Use direct and indirect fire support to suppress and kill the enemy, screen the assault element, protect breaching actions, and isolate the enemy by blocking reinforcements and counterattacks.
71. Assault to gain a foothold on the objective.
72. A foothold is normally one to two city blocks and is usually a company intermediate objective.
73. Create an entry point that provides cover from enemy fire and a location for attacking troops to enter the urban area.
74. Fix the defense or enemy.
75. Assault the objective.
76. Use supporting fires to suppress enemy elements that can place effective fires on the assaulting force and or breach force.
77. Use obscuration to cover breach and assault force actions.
78. Breach obstacles that can not be bypassed.
79. Continue reconnaissance in support of the attack.
80. Use maneuver, mobility, shock action, and massed firepower to secure a foothold and rupture established defenses.
81. Kill, capture, destroy, or force the withdrawal of all enemy on objectives as required by the commander's intent.
82. Attempt to minimize collateral damage and noncombatant casualties.
83. Clear the built-up area using the appropriate technique based on commander's intent.
84. Unit commander commits the reserve to accomplish one or more of the following: exploit success or an enemy weakness, support a forward element with fire or maneuver, assume the mission of another element (building clearance), maintain the momentum of the attack (seize a key building), hold buildings seized by another element, or defeat or block enemy counterattacks.
85. Unit commander reports the situation to the higher headquarters commander as necessary.
86. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
87. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
88. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
89. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
90. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
91. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-TAC-7807	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6208	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6808
TOW-TAC-5804	TOW-TAC-5811	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6819		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
11. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
12. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7815: Conduct a Defense (Defend in Sector, Defend a Battle Position, Defend a Strongpoint)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A defense is a combat operation designed to defeat an attacker and prevent him from achieving his objectives. It employs all means and methods available to prevent, resist, or destroy an enemy attack. Forms of defensive operations are area and mobile. Choices of defensive operations are in-depth and forward. The defensive techniques are defend in sector and defend a battle position. A defense in sector is a technique that requires a defending unit to prevent enemy forces from passing beyond the rear boundary of the sector while retaining flank security and ensuring integrity of effort within the parent unit's scheme of maneuver. Initial positions generally are established as far forward as possible, but a commander may use any technique to accomplish the mission. The higher commander will normally assign no-penetration criteria. Defense of a battle position is a technique that places a unit in a battle position (BP) to concentrate its fires, to limit its maneuver, or to place it in an advantageous position to counterattack. The BP is a general location on the ground. The commander positions his forces on the best terrain within and in the vicinity of the BP. The commander may position security forces forward of and about the BP. He can also locate combat support and combat service support elements outside the BP. The commander can maneuver his forces freely within the BP and seize the initiative to maneuver outside of the BP to attack enemy forces provided that it does not interfere with the commander's concept. A defense of a strongpoint is a form of defense of a battle position that requires more engineer work and may be required to be held at all costs. It denies key

terrain to the enemy and forces his movement in a different direction.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to defend at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Higher headquarters has positioned security forces in front of the unit's defensive positions. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit defends in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance and intent. The unit defends from mutually supporting positions that are prepared, occupied, and reconnoitered before the defend "not later than (NLT)" time specified in the order. The unit adjusts positions as necessary to cover target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs), and sectors of fire. The unit defeats the enemy force by massing fires into engagement areas. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
4. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning.
5. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
6. Organize operations around a framework of a security zone, a main battle area (MBA), a rear area, and a reserve.
7. Determine how to array forces (forward defense or defense in depth) based on higher commander's guidance and factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
8. Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters.
9. Develop a defensive scheme of maneuver.
10. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
11. Plan engineer support.
12. Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support if available.
13. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
14. Plan combat service support.
15. Conduct risk management.
16. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
17. Unit prepares for the mission: refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conduct extensive R&S, and conduct precombat checks and inspections.
18. Unit occupies and improves defensive positions.
19. Initiate occupation of defensive positions.

20. Continue to prepare and or upgrade defensive positions.
21. Conduct R&S in front of defensive positions.
22. Unit integrates obstacles into the defense.
23. Unit reports occupation of defensive positions to higher headquarters.
24. As time permits, unit continues to improve defensive positions and conducts defensive priorities of work.
25. Unit executes the defense: withdraw OPs and unit security elements, engage the enemy (in the security area or MBA) on order or when engagement criteria are met, and commit reserves for counterattack IAW the higher commander's intent.
26. Unit leaders assess the operation; monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation, and direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
27. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
28. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
29. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
30. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
31. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CBTS-7404
TANK-CBTS-7405	TANK-CMDC-7208	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CBTS-6403
TOW-TAC-5813	TANK-TAC-6820	TANK-TAC-6821
TANK-TAC-6822	TANK-CBTS-6404	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
5. FM 5-101 Mobility
6. FM 5-102 Countermobility
7. FM 5-103 Survivability
8. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
9. FM 90-1 Countermobility
10. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
11. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
12. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
13. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
14. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
15. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
16. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
17. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
18. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7816: Defend an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The defense of a urban area is a technique that requires a defending unit to prevent enemy forces from entering or controlling a built-up area. A built-up area is defined as a concentration of structures, facilities, and population, such as villages, cities, and towns.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to defend in the forward portion of an urban main battle area to defeat the enemy forward and prevent penetration of the main battle area. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. Higher headquarters positions a security force forward of the unit to delay the enemy and give early warning of the enemy's approach. The security force withdraws and conducts battle handover to the unit. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit defends an urban area in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit assists the rearward passage of lines for higher headquarters' security forces. The unit occupies and prepares defensive positions. The unit engages and defeats the enemy forward and prevents his penetration of the main battle area. The unit complies with the ROE or ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
4. Analyze: current intelligence and aerial photographs, civilian maps and diagrams; natural defensive characteristics of the terrain considering three-dimensional environment of urban areas to include airspace, surface, and subsurface subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes; underground water, sewer, and utility systems; electrical power stations and emergency services; fuel supply and storage facilities; mass communications facilities; and areas and facilities restricted by current ROE.
5. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
6. Employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
7. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning.
8. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
9. Develop a defensive scheme of maneuver.
10. Coordinate the battle handover and a rearward passage of lines by the security force.
11. Develop a communications plan giving special consideration to: communications restrictions in urban terrain, antenna positioning, fire direction and air defense nets, and supplementary signals.

12. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
13. Plan engineer support.
14. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if available.
15. Plan Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) support
16. Plan Combat Service Support (CSS).
17. Conduct risk management.
18. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
19. Unit prepares for the mission: refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conducts extensive R&S, and conducts precombat checks and inspections.
20. Unit occupies and improves defensive positions.
21. Unit continues to prepare and upgrade defensive positions.
22. Conduct R&S in front of defensive positions.
23. Report occupation of defensive positions to higher headquarters.
24. Submit the completed fire plan to higher headquarters.
25. Unit integrates obstacles into the defense.
26. Unit elements continue to improve defensive positions and conducts defensive priorities of work as time allows.
27. Unit executes the defense and withdraws OPs and unit security elements, assists the rearward passage of lines for higher headquarters' security forces, and engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.
28. Consolidate and reorganize to continue the defense or transition to the attack.
29. Comply with ROE and ROI.
30. Unit leaders assess the operation; monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation, and direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
31. Unit commander commits reserves for counterattack IAW the higher commander's intent.
32. Unit defeats the enemy forward and prevents his penetration of the MBA.
33. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
34. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
35. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
36. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6403	TANK-CBTS-6404	TOW-TAC-5811
TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CMDC-6208	TANK-TAC-6823

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. FM 5-101 Mobility
6. FM 5-102 Countermobility
7. FM 5-103 Survivability
8. FM 90-1 Countermobility

9. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
10. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
11. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
12. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
13. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
14. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
15. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
16. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
17. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
18. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7817: Conduct a Guard

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A guard mission is a security operation in which a unit's primary task is to protect the main force by fighting to gain time, while also observing and reporting information to prevent enemy ground observation of and direct fire against the main body by reconnoitering, attacking, defending, and delaying. A guard force normally operates within the range of the main body's indirect fire weapons.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a guard mission (either stationary or moving). The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the guard mission in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance elements, fixes and defeats enemy security elements, and causes the enemy main body to deploy and then reports the enemy's direction of travel to the friendly main body commander. The unit identifies and breaches or finds bypass routes around obstacles in the zone that would interrupt the movement of the main body. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order, conduct a map reconnaissance, conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), and develop the situation template

(SITEMP).
4. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
5. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
6. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
7. Plan fire support.
8. Plan engineer support.
9. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
10. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
11. Plan combat service support (CSS).
12. Conduct risk management.
13. Determine disengagement and displacement criteria.
14. Designate on order battle positions (BPs) along route of march to block likely avenues of approach.
15. Develop movement plan.
16. Select or designate methods of communications.
17. Develop contingency plans for chance enemy contact.
18. Develop control measures to facilitate control and prevent fratricide.
19. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.
20. Coordinate battle handover with the protected force.
21. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
22. Unit prepares for the mission.
23. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
24. Conduct extensive R&S.
25. Conduct precombat checks.
26. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
27. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
28. Position forces as per the plan.
29. Unit exercises command and control (C2) of the guard mission.
30. Unit executes assigned guard mission. Note: Generally a battalion or battalion TF is given an advance guard mission when the RCT is moving as part of the division main body in a movement to contact. When a division conducting a movement to contact requires rear security, a battalion or battalion TF may be given a rear guard mission. A battalion or battalion TF is given a flank guard mission when a division is conducting a movement to contact.
31. Unit completes guard mission, conducts battle handover with protected force and or follow-on guard force, consolidates and reorganizes as necessary, secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required, treats and evacuates casualties, and withdraws or displaces as directed or IAW protected force or higher headquarters commander's intent.
32. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment, as required.
33. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-TAC-7818	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7210	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6824	TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7818: Conduct a Screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A screen mission is a security operation in which a unit's primary task is to observe, identify and report information for the main force, and which only fights in self-protection. Tasks to maintain surveillance, provide early warning to the main body, or impede, destroy, and harass enemy reconnaissance within its capability without becoming decisively engaged, are included in a screen mission.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a screen mission for a larger force. The order designates the general trace of the screen, the duration of the screen, and the time it must be established. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the screen in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit occupies the initial screen line by the time specified in the order. The unit maintains surveillance, provides early warning to the screened unit, and detects all enemy activity in its sector. The unit impedes, destroys, and harasses enemy reconnaissance within its capabilities without becoming decisively engaged. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order and conduct a map reconnaissance.
4. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
5. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).

6. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
7. Task organize organic and nonorganic elements to best accomplish higher commander's intent.
8. Confirm which unit has responsibility for the area between the screening force's rear boundary and the main battle area (MBA).
9. Ensure the initial screen line is forward of the general trace but within range of supporting artillery.
10. Depict screen lines as phase lines and include passage graphics in the overlay.
11. Designate the left and right limits of the screen as well as a phase line for the near boundary (this phase line can also become the on-order battle handover line [BHL]).
12. Designate control measures: sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements, en route rally points, objective rally points (ORPs), linkup points, contact points, checkpoints, passage points, infiltration lanes, and routes for patrols or initial screen line.
13. Develop engagement criteria and consider size of enemy force, type of enemy unit, and activity of enemy unit.
14. Designate general locations for observation posts (OPs) enabling observation of the avenues of approach into the sector.
15. Annotate unit graphic control measures in C2PC using higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide.
16. Establish engagement criteria, based on the size, type, and activity of the enemy unit.
17. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
18. Plan fire support.
19. Plan engineer support.
20. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
21. Plan air defense (AD) support.
22. Plan combat service support (CSS).
23. Develop contingency plan for chance contact with the enemy prior to reaching initial screen line.
24. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.
25. Conduct risk management.
26. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
27. Unit prepares for the mission and refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conducts extensive reconnaissance, conducts confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept, conducts precombat checks, supervises subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent, conducts rehearsal during day and reduced visibility conditions if possible, and positions forces.
28. Unit executes the screen, moves to, and occupies the initial screen line.
29. Cover all identified enemy approaches, establish and maintain communications, detect all enemy forces entering the area and accurately reports them to higher headquarters, and adjust positions during limited visibility.
30. React to enemy approach.
31. Protect the main body by impeding and harassing the enemy with supporting indirect fires and destroying enemy reconnaissance elements within its capability.

32. Report all enemy information to higher headquarters.
33. Move to subsequent screen lines to maintain screen.
34. Unit commander and staff control the movement of the screen.
35. Direct elements to move, on order, to successive screen lines.
36. Use FRAGOs and graphic control measures to direct the moves.
37. Direct elements to report when they occupy new screen lines or OPs.
38. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
39. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
40. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
41. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
42. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7208
TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CMDC-6207	SCT-TAC-5808
TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6825	TANK-CMDC-6208

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
7. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7819: Conduct Reserve Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A reserve is that portion of a force withheld from action or uncommitted to a specific course of action, so as to be available for commitment at the decisive moment. Its primary purpose is to retain flexibility through offensive action. A reserve force is not in contact with an enemy and is not already assigned a specific mission or course of action which would preclude its use elsewhere.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to be a reserve. The order requires the unit commander to act as a reserve force in the higher headquarters scheme of maneuver. In offensive operations, it is trailing forward battalions with a priority of commitment in two or more battalion zones. In defensive operations, it is given an assembly area or route(s) and tasks of preparing to perform three or more of the following type missions: counterattack, reinforce, counterattack by fire or attack. Priorities are

given for planning. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit acts as a reserve force in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit develops branch plans to meet all potential missions that incorporate them into the offensive or defensive plan of the higher headquarters. The unit coordinates with adjacent units and monitors the battle as it progresses. When committed by the higher headquarters, it takes immediate steps to execute the appropriate branch plan. The unit coordinates its actions with higher headquarters and units into which zones it moves. The unit acts at the decisive place and time. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff plan the reserve mission using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Possible preparations include reconnaissance, preparation of routes, security of movement routes, firing positions before the movement of the main body, and liaison with adjacent units.
4. Preparations for the branch plans are conducted as though the battalion is conducting the stated mission of the branch plan.
5. The battalion coordinates with battalions in whose sector or zone the on-order mission is to be conducted.
6. The battalion coordinates at the beginning of the planning cycle.
7. The battalion commander and staff have the plans of the battalions in whose sector or zone they will be possibly committed.
8. Routes, axis, boundaries, objectives, passage lanes, covering fires, fire support, identification procedures, frequencies, call signs, CSS, obstacles, and other items are coordinated.
9. Subordinate leaders and staff are informed of coordinated information early enough to disseminate, plan and conduct reconnaissance.
10. Physical liaison is maintained with the higher headquarters and the units with the highest priority for commitment.
11. The battalion CP monitors the command nets of the battalion with the highest priority for commitment.
12. LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit.
13. Report to receiving commander, S-3, or, XO and brief the unit situation.
14. Establish voice and or digital communications with the receiving unit main CP as required.
15. Provide necessary information to appropriate receiving staff section on parent unit situation.
16. Keep abreast of the situation of parent unit and provide updates to receiving unit headquarters.
17. Participate in the planning process of the receiving unit.
18. Advise receiving unit commander and or staff on how to best employ assets of sending unit.

19. Record all critical information (specified and implied tasks, mission essential tasks, constraints and limitations) and passes it to parent unit as soon as possible.
20. Obtain enemy situation templates and other intelligence products and transmit to sending unit as soon as possible.
21. Conduct adjacent unit coordination as required.
22. Maintain a record of significant liaison actions during tour.
23. Transmit critical information to parent unit staff as soon as possible or as directed.
24. LNOs transmit information to parent unit staff on return from liaison duties.
25. Brief unit S-3 on all relevant information received during visit.
26. Submit mission requirements to S-3 and request for information (RFI) from the visited headquarters to S-2 as appropriate.
27. Brief all staff sections on detailed information received during visit and transmit information required by higher headquarters in each staff area of responsibility.
28. Provide information on visited unit operations, commander's intent, mission, unit locations, capabilities, and future operations as required.
29. Unit XO maintains control of liaison officers during liaison tour.
30. The battalion plans, prepares and rehearses for the reserve missions (branch plans).
31. The unit moves as a reserve in an offensive operation.
32. The unit maintains its distance behind the lead battalion to avoid interference and decisive engagement, but maintains contact and the ability to react quickly.
33. When the unit is moving slowly or stopped, it assumes a defensive posture to ensure all around security.
34. The unit rapidly reacts to a FRAGO to execute a mission.
35. The battalion initiates movement within 15 minutes.
36. The battalion is in position and prepared to take specified action within the time required by higher headquarters.
37. The unit moves to the LD or designated position.
38. The unit coordinates movement with all organizations through whose area/zone it moves.
39. Minimum coordination is performed on routes and times.
40. The battalion takes the specified action within the time required by higher headquarters.
41. If reinforcing another unit, the battalion reinforces at the specified time and location.
42. The unit establishes communications with the battalion being reinforced and coordinates the linkup location and tactical situation.
43. If conducting an attack or counterattack, the battalion executes at the specified time.
44. The unit complies with the rules of engagement (ROE), mission instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6826	TANK-TAC-6804
TANK-TAC-6810	TANK-OTH-6702	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7820: Employ a Reserve Force

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

DESCRIPTION: The employment of a reserve force involves the actions a unit takes to commit a reserve force at the decisive place and time. In the deliberate attack, the commander's principal tool for exploitation is normally the reserve. The reserve is generally positioned where it can exploit the success of the main effort or supporting efforts. Typical missions for the exploitation force include cutting lines of communication, isolating and destroying enemy units, and disrupting enemy command and control.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to defend. The order requires the unit commander to designate a reserve force. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion employs a reserve force in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit commander designates the reserve element, incorporates them into the offensive or defensive plan, gives them "be prepared" missions, and commits the reserve element at the decisive place and time. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Designate the reserve, develop criteria for commitment, address actions on chance contact with the enemy, integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
4. Plan fire support for anticipated reserve missions.
5. Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy.

6. Plan engineer support: consider mobility requirements for the reserve, plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation, and plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
7. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support and develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
8. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.
9. Plan combat service support (CSS): integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements, plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as assaults by forward positioning of support assets, and include reserves in the casualty evacuation plan.
10. Conduct risk management.
11. Prepare for the reserve operation.
12. Unit commander or designated staff positions reserve force.
13. Position to weight the main effort and allow the unit commander to react to unanticipated events.
14. Unit commander or designated staff coordinates and synchronizes actions of the reserve force and other unit elements.
15. Unit commander uses FRAGOs to direct the actions of the reserve force.
16. Unit commander commits the reserve at the decisive place and time, exploits success, reinforces or maintains the momentum, deals with enemy counterattacks, provides security, preserves the commander's flexibility, reinforces fires, adds depth, blocks penetrations, restores positions, and conducts counterattack to destroy enemy forces and seize the initiative.
17. When the reserve conducts the counterattack, it normally becomes the main effort and is given priority of fires.
18. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
19. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
20. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
21. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
22. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
23. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7819	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-OTH-6702
TANK-TAC-6826	TANK-TAC-6810	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7821: Conduct a Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A linkup is the meeting of friendly ground forces, when an encircled element breaks out to rejoin friendly forces, or when converging maneuver forces meet.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to linkup with another unit. Boundaries, restrictive fire lines (RFLs), zone of attack or axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command upon linkup, and other control and coordination measures are established. Both units will move to the designated linkup site. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit performs the linkup in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts necessary planning, coordination, and liaison. The unit moves to the linkup site, avoids decisive engagement, and conducts the linkup as directed. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Establish liaison between the two units during planning and continue liaison throughout the operation.
4. Develop a plan in conjunction with the other unit (if joint development is not possible, ensure extensive coordination of the plan).
5. Conduct a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.
6. Identify primary and alternate linkup sites, rally point(s), assembly area (AA) short of the linkup site, likely enemy avenues of approach, and routes to and from linkup site, AA, and rally point(s).
7. Mark tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps.
8. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
9. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
10. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
11. Include redundant information gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.

12. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission and designate a quartering party to recon and secure AA.
13. Develop a scheme of maneuver and control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zones of actions).
14. Coordinate digital, visual, and or voice recognition signals (far and near).
15. Coordinate frequencies, call signs, and codes.
16. Confirm command relationship with the linkup unit.
17. Develop contingency plans and address enemy contact before, during, or after linkup; how long to wait at the linkup site; what to do when element(s) do not arrive at the linkup site.
18. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
19. Plan fire support.
20. Plan and coordinate indirect fire support and close air support, assign direct fire responsibilities, and position fire support assets to support the reconnaissance effort.
21. Plan engineer support.
22. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, and defending enemy positions or key weapons.
23. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
24. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate brigade and infantry unit-wide dissemination including supporting CS and CSS units.
25. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
26. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to respond to a changing situation.
27. Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for security.
28. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
29. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan.
30. Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
31. Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
32. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis.
33. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support is provided by higher command.
34. Plan combat service support (CSS) and integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
35. Determine fuel requirements, duration of the operation, and operations after the linkup is completed (i.e. attack, withdraw, and defend).
36. Identify lines of communication (LOC) security requirements.
37. Plan evacuation of equipment, wounded, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
38. Plan resupply of stationary unit if applicable.
39. Share situational awareness data between linkup units to include intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products and digital or conventional overlays.
40. Indicate primary and alternate linkup points, checkpoints and waypoints information, unit disposition and activity (friendly and enemy), location and type of obstacles, fire control measures including restricted fire line (RFL), and communications security (COMSEC)

requirements and procedures.

41. Include internet provider (IP) address databases, Single Channel and Ground Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) and Enhanced Position Locating and Reporting System (EPLRS) hop set data, positioning of EPLRS position server links, and modifications to digital communications structure if applicable.
42. Coordinate a passage of lines as required.
43. Conduct risk management.
44. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
45. Unit prepares for linkup.
46. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
47. Conduct extensive R&S and preparation for combat.
48. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are consistent with the unit commander's intent and concept.
49. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
50. Dispatch quartering party to secure AA.
51. Positions forces as necessary.
52. Unit commander monitors the progress and execution of the linkup to ensure that established positive control measures are followed or adjusted as required.
53. Unit executes the linkup.
54. Begin movement to the AA short of the linkup site and secure and occupy AA.
55. Establish and maintain digital and or FM voice communications throughout the operation.
56. Track progress using appropriate digital or analog system.
57. Avoid enemy contact if possible.
58. Destroy or bypass and report enemy that cannot be avoided.
59. Make adjustments to the linkup plan based on the factors of METT-TC.
60. Slow movement to maintain positive control and to prevent fratricide.
61. The first element to arrive at the linkup point conducts the following actions: send a security team forward to secure the linkup point, clear the immediate area around the linkup point, mark the linkup point with the coordinated recognition signal, position security team in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point, return to the linkup AA and establish a perimeter defense, and establish a perimeter defense.
62. The second element to arrive at the linkup point conducts the following actions: move to a position short of the linkup point and give any predetermined signals to the unit already at the linkup site, move to the linkup site and conduct near recognition, security team leads second element to the first element's established perimeter, and second element is incorporated into the perimeter defense.
63. Chain of command is established based on the higher command's order.
64. Unit continues the mission IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, and guidance from higher headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804 TANK-CMDC-7210 TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	SCT-TAC-5804
TOW-TAC-5804	TOW-TAC-5814	TANK-TAC-6827

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7822: Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Moving Unit

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A moving unit passage of lines is a tactical operation in which a moving unit moves forward or rearward through another force's combat positions with the intention of moving into or out of contact with the enemy.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to an operation requiring the conduct of a passage of lines. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit performs the passage of lines in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts necessary coordination with the stationary unit. The battalion ensures that the stationary unit establishes control and secures the AO far enough to its front so that the unit can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force. The unit selects routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt stationary unit's defense, and provide for rapid movement. The unit reconnoiters passage points and passage lanes.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit ensures that the stationary unit establishes control and secures the AO far enough to its front so that the unit can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force.
3. Unit commander and staff receive the order and begin the Marine Corps

Planning Process (MCPP) and in concert with the stationary unit if possible.

4. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order and conduct a map reconnaissance.
5. Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt stationary unit's defense, and provide for rapid movement.
6. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB): employ all available information gathering assets, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate the enemy, and determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).
7. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and include: likely enemy engagement areas (EAs), location and orientation of enemy forces, location of the enemy reserve, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
8. Employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
9. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
10. Coordinate the following with the stationary unit: exchange of intelligence and combat information, current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans, direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans, and any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters.
11. Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide.
12. Coordinate when and under what conditions control of the AO transfers from one headquarters to the other if not previously established.
13. Coordinate provisions for movement control.
14. Coordinate the R&S plan.
15. Coordinate signal operating instruction (SOI) details such as call signs, frequencies, and recognition signals.
16. Coordinate security measures during the passage.
17. Coordinate fires, obscurants, and any other combat, combat support (CS), and CSS provided by the stationary unit.
18. Coordinate measures to reduce both units' vulnerability to attack by enemy weapons of mass destruction (WMD).
19. Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage.
20. Coordinate allocation of terrain.
21. Coordinate air defense cover up to and forward of the BHL.
22. Coordinate logistics support that will be provided by the stationary unit, especially fuel and maintenance.
23. Unit prepares for the passage.
24. Collocate command posts (CPs) for ease of coordination, making direct liaison, updating plans, and sending changes to higher headquarters (if CPs were not collocated earlier in the planning process).
25. Conduct extensive R&S: locate contact points on movement routes, reconnoiter passage points and passage lanes, verify passage lanes are clear of obstacles, provide concealment, and allow for integration with the plan of attack or withdrawal, and locate AA and attack positions that do not interfere with stationary units but provide cover, concealment, and room for dispersion.

26. Obtain updated R&S information from the stationary unit and higher headquarters.
27. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence and provide plan changes to the stationary unit.
28. Employ operational security measures to deny the enemy information.
29. Verify communications (internal and with stationary unit).
30. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
31. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
32. Position forces IAW the plan.
33. Unit conducts the passage.
34. Provide the element designated to coordinate and assist the passage with a list of elements to go through designated passage points.
35. Move along assigned routes and or lanes.
36. Display correct visual signals.
37. Identify and send contaminated units to designated passage points.
38. Pass through the stationary unit without halting.
39. Maintain cover, concealment, and dispersion.
40. Impose minimum radio traffic or radio listening silence for forward passage.
41. Orient subordinate elements and complete closure.
42. Unit leaders assess the operation.
43. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
44. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
45. Unit complies with the ROE and ROI.
46. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.
47. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
48. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.
49. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7821	TANK-TAC-7823	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7213

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6827
TANK-TAC-6828	SCT-TAC-5806	TOW-TAC-5804
TOW-TAC-5814	TOW-TAC-5815	SCT-TAC-5805
TANK-TAC-6829		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7823: Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Stationary Unit

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A stationary unit passage of lines is a tactical operation in which a stationary unit acts as a security force allowing the moving unit to move forward or rearward through its combat positions.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to assist an element with a passage of lines at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The passing unit's commander and key staff representatives have co-located with the unit command post to facilitate planning the passage and establishing a common situational understanding. Close Air Support (CAS) sorties are allocated to the unit to facilitate the passage. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts a passage of lines as the stationary unit in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes control and secures the area of operations (AO) far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force. The unit plans and coordinates the passage of lines with the passing unit. The unit provides security of the line of departure (LD) of the passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility. The unit conducts battle handover without giving the enemy the advantage.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The unit establishes control and secures the AO far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force.
3. The two units involved develop a passage plan.
4. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
5. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
6. Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt defense, and provide for rapid movement.
7. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB): employ all available information gathering assets, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate the enemy, and determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).
8. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and include: likely enemy engagement areas (EAs), location and orientation of enemy forces, location of the enemy reserve, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of

enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.

9. Employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
10. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
11. Coordinate the following with the passing unit.
12. Coordinate the exchange of intelligence and combat information.
13. Coordinate the current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans.
14. Coordinate direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans.
15. Coordinate any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters to include: boundary changes, battle handover line (BHL), emergency combat service support (CSS) points, assembly area(s) to be used, and firing positions for artillery, air defense, and other units.
16. Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide.
17. Coordinate when and under what conditions control of the AO transfers from one headquarters to the other if not previously established.
18. Coordinate provisions for movement control to include: contact points, start and release points, route selection (primary and alternate), priorities for using routes and facilities, passage points, and provision for guides.
19. Coordinate reconnaissance by elements of the passing unit.
20. Coordinate signal operating instruction (SOI) details such as call signs, frequencies, and recognition signals.
21. Coordinate security measures during the passage to include nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance or biological detection systems.
22. Coordinate fires, obscurants, and any other combat, combat support (CS), and CSS provided by the stationary unit.
23. Coordinate measures to reduce both units' vulnerability to attack by enemy weapons of mass destruction (WMD).
24. Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage.
25. Coordinate allocation of terrain for use by the passing force.
26. Coordinate air defense cover up to and forward of the BHL.
27. Coordinate logistics support for the passing unit that will be provided by the stationary unit, especially fuel and maintenance.
28. Use FRAGOs to control or change actions of subordinate elements.
29. Report essential information to higher headquarters, subordinate elements, and other affected units.
30. Unit prepares for the passage and clears a lane through all obstacles from the assembly area (AA) or attack position (AP) through passage lanes, employ reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) assets to gather requested information for the passing unit, refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, employ operational security measures to deny the enemy information, verify communications, supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent, conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible, and position forces.
31. Unit conducts the passage.
32. Establish contact at contact points.

33. Stop or delay pursuing enemy at BHL. Note: The fight is transferred to the unit in position, which assumes responsibility for the BHL
34. Pass element through unit positions with no halts.
35. Provide security of the LD of the forward passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility.
36. Engage all enemy elements that can fire on passing unit.
37. Provide emergency resupply of Class III and VIII items and care of casualties to the passing unit to allow continued movement.
38. Close all passage lanes when the passing unit has completed passage.
39. Report to higher headquarters upon completion of passage.
40. Unit supports by fire, engages and suppresses all enemy elements in line of sight by direct or indirect fires IAW passing unit's fire plan, responds to requests for supporting fires from passing elements, and avoids firing on friendly elements.
41. Unit complies with the ROE and ROI.
42. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.
43. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
44. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.
45. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-TAC-7821	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-TAC-7822

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6827
TANK-TAC-6828	SCT-TAC-5806	TOW-TAC-5804
TOW-TAC-5814	TOW-TAC-5815	SCT-TAC-5805
TANK-TAC-6829		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7824: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A relief in place is a tactical operation in which, by direction of higher authority, all or part of a unit is replaced in an area by the incoming unit. The responsibilities of the replaced elements for the mission and the assigned zone of operations are transferred to the incoming unit. The incoming unit continues the operation as ordered.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a relief in place at the location and time specified. A not later than (NLT) time for passage of command is specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the relief in place in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts necessary coordination and or liaison, moves tactically to designated contact point, occupies relieved unit's positions, and assumes responsibility for the fight by the NLT time specified in the order. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Determine the time when the unit assumes responsibility for the area of operations (AO).
4. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order and conduct a map reconnaissance.
5. Establish communications with the relieved unit through an exchange of liaison personnel or a other means to exchange information pertinent to the relief operations.
6. Determine advance party composition and guidance.
7. Determine advance party reconnaissance and coordination tasks.
8. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB): employ all available information gathering assets, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate the enemy, and determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).
9. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and include: location and orientation of enemy forces, location of the enemy reserve, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
10. Plan to co-locate command and control (C2) headquarters.
11. Determine technique to use for the relief and order in which subordinate forces are to move and conduct the relief.
12. Relieve units one at a time (this method is the most deliberate and time-consuming): relieve maneuver companies sequentially one at a time; label routes sequentially to correspond to the order in which the company executes them during the relief; move lead company (of the relieving unit) to its release point (RP), its platoons move to their designated positions; and move the next company (of the relieving unit) along its designated route to relieve its counterpart after the lead company is in position.

13. Relieve units at the same time after the two units' command posts (CPs) are collocated and plans exchanged (this method is the fastest but risks revealing friendly unit intentions): move along different routes (relieving and relived units).
14. Relieve units by occupying in-depth and adjacent positions (this technique requires sufficient terrain to accommodate at the same time positioning of two like-sized units): position relieving unit so as to observe and provide protective direct and indirect fires for the relieved unit using the relieved units' fire plans; conduct a detailed physical reconnaissance of the defensive positions with their counterparts from the relieved unit (all commanders); and share gathered information from the reconnaissance throughout the relieving unit during the planning and TLP process.
15. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
16. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
17. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
18. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
19. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
20. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
21. Plan fire support to include: obscuration fires as required, deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, fires to support the reconnaissance effort, fires to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, and locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and prevent fratricide.
22. Conduct detail fire support coordination between fire support elements (FSEs).
23. Exchange target lists.
24. Plan for early occupation of the outgoing unit's firing positions and fire in support of the relieved forces' supporting artillery.
25. Plan for fire support (FS) assets to remain in position to assist in the operation until all maneuver elements have been relieved.
26. Coordinate to relieve forward observers and fire support teams (FiST).
27. Ensure new FS plan is coordinated with new engineer countermobility plan if applicable.
28. Plan engineer support and ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.
29. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
30. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
31. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
32. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
33. Conduct detailed coordination with the relieved unit's engineers or designated staff section.
34. Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of friendly mines, obstacles, and fortifications; determine location of prepared

demolitions; obtain prepare target folders; and determine location of all known enemy mines, obstacles, or fortifications.

35. Conduct reconnaissance to verify the accuracy and condition of the previously mentioned information.
36. Verify trafficability into the relieved unit's positions.
37. Task organize assets for the relief to support mobility and continue countermobility and survivability improvements.
38. Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
39. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support: integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan, ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations, develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit, integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions, develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites, and exchange information with the relieved unit's chemical officer about any known NBC strikes in the relived unit's AO.
40. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
41. Plan combat service support (CSS): determine relief order of combat support (CS) elements, integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements, ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort, plan and coordinate casualty evacuation, and plan transfer of excess supplies to the relieving unit.
42. Conduct risk management.
43. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
44. Unit prepares for the mission.
45. Employ maximum operational security (OPSEC) to prevent the enemy from detecting the operation.
46. Determine and confirm contact points.
47. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
48. Conduct extensive R&S and precombat checks.
49. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
50. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
51. Initiate movement, move to predetermined contact points and meet guides from the relieved unit, and move into hide positions and coordinate any final information.
52. Collocate the two unit's main CPs to form a single traffic control cell that coordinates all movement in and out of AO.
53. Use primary and alternate routes, assembly areas, and holding areas to assist movement.
54. Establish traffic control points using scouts or guide traffic and prevent congestion.
55. Position forces to protect the relief.
56. Complete preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit, update the enemy situation, transfer sector sketches and fire plans, and transfer obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
57. Unit executes the plan.

58. Maintain OPSEC, change frequencies on all unit radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit, maintain radio listening silence, and adhere to noise, light, and litter discipline.
59. Execute the technique selected for the relief.
60. Transfer equipment and supplies as required.
61. Conduct battle handover (BHO).
62. Relieving and relieved units keep main CPs collocated until completion of the relief and share battle tracking and reports.
63. Unit maintains outgoing units previous schedule of fires so as not to alert the enemy of the relief.
64. If enemy attacks before completion of the relief, the incoming unit becomes under operational control (OPCON) to the relieved unit.
65. Incoming and outgoing commanders conduct passage of command.
66. Complete passage of command by the NLT time specified in the order.
67. Passage of command normally occurs when front line commanders have assumed responsibility for their respective AOs and the incoming commander has sufficient communications assets to control the operation.
68. Unit provides closure report to higher headquarters.
69. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
70. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
71. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
72. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	SCT-TAC-5807
TOW-TAC-5804	TOW-TAC-5816	TANK-TAC-6830

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7825: Conduct a Breakout From Encirclement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A breakout from encirclement is a tactical operation conducted by an encircled force to regain freedom of movement or contact with friendly units. It differs from other attacks only in that a simultaneous defense in other areas of the perimeter must be maintained.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and during operations becomes encircled (enemy to its fronts, flanks, and rear). The enemy may be in a hasty defensive posture or is using force to fix the battalion. The battalion is ordered to rejoin friendly elements. Gap between the enemy elements do exist. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit performs the breakout in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts necessary planning and coordination. The unit breaks through or disengages from the enemy and rejoins friendly forces in accordance with directions from higher headquarters. All encircled friendly elements are brought under battalion control. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order to conduct a breakout and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. The battalion establishes control over all friendly elements in the area of encirclement regardless of command relationships.
4. The battalion establishes security, disposition of friendly forces is rearranged for all around defense, and each element coordinates and is tied-in with adjacent elements.
5. The battalion performs reconnaissance and determines the likely enemy locations and strengths based upon templating and reports to include: location and orientation of enemy forces, enemy counterattack objectives and location of enemy reserves, enemy obstacle systems, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
6. The unit locates forward enemy elements.
7. The unit locates gaps in enemy positions.
8. The battalion plans the operation.
9. The unit plans quickly to allow the earliest practical execution to preclude the enemy from organizing defenses.
10. The unit provides all around security during all phases and designates front, flank, and rear security forces.
11. The unit ensures the location of the attack and route back to friendly forces and avoids the enemy as much as possible.
12. The unit plans the breakout for night, if practical, but does not delay the breakout.
13. The unit includes linkup and passage of lines planning and coordination.
14. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
15. Plan fire support to include obscuration fires as required, deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, fires to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, and conduct detail fire support coordination between fire support elements (FSEs).
16. Plan engineer support.
17. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.

18. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
19. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
20. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
21. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
22. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after FRAGO is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
23. Unit prepares for the breakout and employs maximum operational security (OPSEC) to prevent the enemy from detecting the operation, determines and confirms contact points, refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, initiates movement, and completes preparations and reorganization before the directed time for the breakout.
24. The unit executes the breakout.
25. The size of the breakout (width, secure flanks) allows passage of the battalion.
26. Routes are cleared to allow passage of wheeled vehicles.
27. All elements of the battalion breakout from the encirclement.
28. Communications with higher headquarters is maintained.
29. The order of march is executed.
30. All personnel are evacuated or breakout, vehicles, weapons, equipment and supplies are brought out of the encirclement, and equipment and supplies that cannot be evacuated are destroyed.
31. The battalion moves to friendly location.
32. The unit maintains all around security, can successfully react to protect itself from any enemy attack, and all enemy attacks are defeated and do not stop the movement of the battalion.
33. The unit links up with friendly elements and executes a passage of lines.
34. The unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6831	TANK-TAC-6804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7826: Conduct a Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A breach is tactical task where any means available are employed to break through or secure a passage through an enemy defense, obstacle, minefield, or fortification. Breaches are characterized by three forms: covert breach, deliberate breach, and in-stride breach.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO) to immediately breach an obstacle that cannot be bypassed. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Engineer assets and indirect fire support are available based on task organization. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the breach in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit breaches the obstacle using the fundamentals of suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSR-A). The unit provides security (near and far side), reduces the obstacle, marks lanes, and passes through the obstacle. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), employ all available information-gathering assets, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, and evaluate the enemy.
5. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs), location and orientation of enemy forces, enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets, enemy obstacle systems, tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
6. Perform reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) of the obstacle system.
7. Determine the width, depth, and composition of the obstacle system
8. Locate the following during reconnaissance of the obstacle: overwatch and support-by-fire (SBF) positions to support the breach; vehicle positions, antiarmor weapons, and enemy positions covering the obstacles; reinforcing and existing obstacles; covered and concealed routes to overwatch or SBF positions; covered and concealed routes to the initial

breach points; and tentative initial breach points.

9. Prevent reconnaissance from disclosing the time, location, or plan for the breach by using unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) and other overhead platforms if available.
10. Provide early warning of changes in the obstacle system through continuous surveillance of the obstacle system and supporting positions.
11. Use the detailed reverse planning process, SITEMP, and terrain products produced during mission analysis to determine the size and composition of support, breach, and assault elements.
12. Designate a support, breach, and assault element.
13. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
14. Plan fire support: plan direct and indirect fires on the breach site to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces; plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations; plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the breach; plan fire support to support the R&S effort; plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves; plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect the force from fratricide; and integrate snipers.
15. Plan engineer support: ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions and or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions if available; determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force; plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation; and plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
16. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support: integrate NBC R&S assets into the unit's overall R&S plan; ensure NBC R&S assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations; disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit; integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions; and develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
17. Coordinate air defense (AD) to cover the breach and passage of units through the obstacles.
18. Plan combat service support (CSS): coordinate additional resources as required; plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets; coordinate casualty evacuation; and plan and coordinate recovery and evacuation of vehicles and or equipment.
19. Develop course of action (COA) using suppress, observe, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSR-A).
20. Develop COA using suppress: identify the support element's axis of advance to support by fire (SBF) positions; establish SBF positions that will allow the support element to fire simultaneously from different directions; establish target reference points (TRPs) to control the support and breach elements' direct fires; determine the location and size of critical friendly zones (CFZs) to protect the support element; plan essential indirect fire targets to assist in suppressing the enemy; and develop a plan for lifting and shifting fires.
21. Develop COA using obscure: determine the location of smoke targets;

identify terrain features that mask the company's point of breach and limit the number of enemy forces that can effectively observe and fire on the breach element; consider conducting the breach during limited visibility conditions, such as fog or darkness; and determine smoke requirements.

22. Develop COA using secure: plan direct fire control measures as necessary; use terrain and the positioning of near-side and far-side security SBF near the point of breach to facilitate the survivability of the breach element; and plan local security at the breach site to suppress overwatching enemy forces that are close to the obstacle.
23. Develop COA using reduce: identify primary and alternate reduction technique, such as explosive, mechanical, electronic, and manual; determine tentative location of lane(s) and the separation between the lanes, if applicable; and identify tentative positions and routes for the breach element as it maneuvers toward the obstacle.
24. Develop COA using assault: develop objectives for the assault element; identify SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow-on elements; plan direct and indirect fire control measures that support the seizure of the far-side objective(s); develop SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow-on forces; and determine if the assault element requires engineer support to reduce enemy protective obstacles and fortifications.
25. Develop graphic control measures using higher headquarters' order overlay as a guide.
26. Develop commitment criteria for the breach element.
27. Conduct risk management.
28. Unit prepares for the breach.
29. Continue to collect intelligence throughout preparations for the breaching operation.
30. Update and revises SITEMP and R&S plan.
31. Supervises subordinate element preparations and conduct rehearsals (rehearsals should include a leader and key personnel walk-through by support, breach, and assault elements).
32. Issues the order and graphics to subordinate units.
33. Unit command group is positioned where it can best control and synchronize the operation and react to changes in mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
34. Each element accomplishes its assigned tasks as the unit executes the breach.
35. Support element moves to and occupies assigned overwatch or SBF positions: uses available cover and concealment during movement; suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the point of breach to protect the breach element; suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the assault element; adjusts SBF positions as necessary to continue to provide effective supporting fires; calls for and adjusts indirect fires, including obscuration; maintain all around security; and fixes enemy forces that are capable of repositioning.
36. Breach element moves to breach site and reduces obstacle, reduces lanes in the obstacle, provides local security (farside and nearside), provides additional suppression of enemy forces overwatching the obstacle, marks and reports the location of created lanes, and assists the passage of the assault force through created lanes.
37. Assault element passes through cleared lanes and assaults the objective,

seizes the farside objective, reduces protective obstacles, assaults the enemy's position, prevents enemy direct fire from interfering with follow-on forces, provides clear routes to the battle handover line (BHL) for follow-on forces, and conducts battle handover with follow-on forces.

38. All subordinate elements continually update the unit commander and or staff during mission execution.
39. Unit creates more lanes as necessary to speed the passage of follow-on forces.
40. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
41. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
42. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
43. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
44. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
45. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CBTS-7402	TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CBTS-7405
TANK-CMDC-7201		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CBTS-6404
TANK-TAC-6807	TANK-TAC-6813	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6832	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6811

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
5. FM 5-101 Mobility
6. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
9. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
13. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7827: Conduct a Gap/Water Crossing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures a unit takes to protect itself while moving through or crossing a gap in order to continue tactical operations. A gap is a ravine, mountain pass, or river that presents an obstacle that must be bridged.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a combat mission. Reconnaissance efforts (map or physical) identify a water obstacle or gap that must be crossed to accomplish the mission. Enemy resistance is weak. The water obstacle exceeds the fording depth of unit vehicles and cannot be bypassed. The water obstacle width does not exceed 15 meters. The banks require little or no preparation. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has engineers (with bridging assets as required) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the hasty water/gap crossing in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit develops a deception plan to deny crossing information to the enemy and maintains surprise. The unit enforces camouflage, noise, thermal, electromagnetic, and light discipline. The unit performs reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) early in the planning process. The unit establishes security. The unit maintains traffic control by using SOP and FRAGOs. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
5. Perform R&S early in the planning process (may use imagery and unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) to maximum extent).
6. Reconnaissance tasks include gathering information without disclosing plan, finding access and exit roads, determining width of river or gap, river velocity, depth, and condition of slope, finding cover and concealment on near and far sides, and locating obstacles and enemy defenses.
7. Include engineers in reconnaissance of the crossing area and sites to provide technical expertise on the characteristics of the crossing site and reduction of any obstacles the enemy has employed.
8. Locate, mark, and report suitable crossing sites.
9. Determine the amount and type of enemy resistance, mark approaches and crossing sites, inspect captured bridges and abutments, and determine the eight-digit grid to primary and alternate crossing sites.
10. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
11. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
12. Include location and orientation of enemy forces, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear,

biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems, and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).

13. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
14. Develop an R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
15. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
16. Plan to conduct reconnaissance of both the near-side and far-side.
17. Develop a flexible crossing plan and organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
18. Include multiple approach routes from AAs to crossing sites, lateral routes to redirect units to alternate crossing sites, alternate crossing sites and staging areas to activate if enemy action closes the primaries, and crossing equipment held in reserve to replace losses or open alternate sites.
19. Designate crossing control measures (assembly areas, sequence of crossing).
20. Plan fire support.
21. Synchronize fires on crossing sites to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces defending the crossing site(s).
22. Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
23. Plan obscuration fires to cover the crossing, deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the crossing site(s), fires to support the reconnaissance effort, fires beyond the crossing site(s) to support a hasty attack or defense, fires in support of the approach to the crossing site(s), indirect fires and coordinate close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, and locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions at the crossing to prevent fratricide.
24. Plan engineer support.
25. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the crossing site(s), planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.
26. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
27. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
28. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
29. Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
30. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
31. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available.
32. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
33. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.

34. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
35. Plan air defense (AD) protection of crossing site.
36. Plan combat service support (CSS).
37. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
38. Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort.
39. Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
40. Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (establish clear priorities of support during reorganization).
41. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
42. Select far side objectives that provide protection of crossing elements.
43. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
44. Unit prepares for crossing.
45. Verify communications prior to movement, refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conduct extensive R&S of near and far-sides, conduct preparation for combat, supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are consistent with the unit commander's intent and concept, conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible, and position forces.
46. Occupy designated support-by-fire positions (support element).
47. Occupy designated positions (main body and assault element).
48. Designated unit element(s) secures near-side, detects all enemy elements on far side and reports location, clear near bank of all defending and or delaying forces, and prepare the entry site for crossing by positioning guides and marking area to facilitate crossing before arrival of main body.
49. Designated unit element(s) assaults across the water obstacle and secures far-side.
50. Secure an area large enough so the enemy cannot bring direct fires on crossing force and, when feasible, observed indirect fire.
51. Secure an area on the far side that is large enough to allow dispersion.
52. Prepare far-side as necessary.
53. Unit emplaces bridging assets and executes crossing.
54. Cross in specified sequence, maintain dispersion, enforce camouflage, noise, thermal, electromagnetic, and light discipline, maintain traffic control, occupy designated positions, and establish security.
55. Unit recovers bridging assets IAW the order and or commander's guidance.
56. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
57. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
58. Unit secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
59. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
60. Unit reports status to higher headquarters.
61. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7208 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202 SCT-CMDC-5211 TANK-TAC-6833
TANK-CMDC-6207

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
5. FM 5-101 Mobility
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
8. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
12. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
13. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7828: Conduct Retrograde Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Retrograde operations entail organized movement away from the enemy. Units may employ them, either voluntarily or under direct pressure from the enemy, to achieve a variety of purposes: improve a tactical situation or prevent an unfavorable situation from becoming worse, economize forces, maintain freedom of maneuver, and avoid combat under unfavorable conditions. The three types of retrograde operations are delay, withdrawal, and retirement. Delay: This operation allows the unit to trade space for time, avoiding decisive engagement and safeguarding its elements. Withdrawal: The commander uses this operation to break enemy contact, especially when he needs to free the unit for a new mission. Retirement: This operation is employed to move a force that is not in contact to the rear.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a retrograde in preparation for another mission. Indirect fire support is available. The unit provides its own security force but may request security from higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the retrograde in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit provides its own security during the withdrawal. The unit disengages the main body and moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe

or engage it with direct fire. The unit disengages the security force. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive the order and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance, select primary and alternate withdrawal routes, and select tentative successive battle positions.
5. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
6. Ensure that all available information-gathering assets are employed, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate the enemy, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
7. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
8. Include location and orientation of enemy forces, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
9. Develop R&S plan early in the MCPP.
10. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
11. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
12. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
13. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
14. Designate composition and strength of the security element.
15. Designate a detachment left in contact (DLIC) as required (usually when the unit is in close combat with the enemy and a security zone does not exist.)
16. Designate composition and strength of the main body and the reserve.
17. Designate a quartering party for future assembly area (AA).
18. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
19. Plan fire support.
20. Plan priority of fires to the security force.
21. Augment fires for security force with snipers, scatterable mines, or assets necessary for the security force to focus fires on multiple routes.
22. Plan obscuration fires as required, deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, fires to support the reconnaissance effort, indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.
23. Plan engineer support.
24. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.

25. Integrate obstacle intelligence requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
26. Ensure confirmed obstacles receive immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
27. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
28. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
29. Plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
30. Plan to site obstacles behind the security force to complicate pursuit.
31. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
32. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.
33. Plan combat service support (CSS).
34. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
35. Ensure maintenance collection points are active only long enough to transfer damaged vehicles to other recovery vehicles.
36. Ensure maintenance collection points avoid the collection of vehicles greater than their ability to transport them.
37. Plan to prestock Classes III and IV adjacent to successive positions.
38. Plan to withdraw CSS assets before maneuver elements.
39. Plan casualty evacuation.
40. Determine specific tasks for subordinate elements.
41. Determine disengagement criteria (time, friendly situation, enemy situation).
42. Plan for a deliberate break in contact from the enemy.
43. Plan for deception to conceal the withdrawal for as long as possible.
44. Plan the rapid displacement of the main body, safeguarded from enemy interference.
45. Plan for protection of withdrawal routes and alternates.
46. Determine the withdrawal and linkup plan for the security force.
47. Coordinate with adjacent units as required.
48. Unit prepares for the withdrawal.
49. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
50. Provides specific tasks to subordinate elements.
51. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
52. Conduct rehearsals and inspections (METT-TC dependent) and rehearse contingencies for reverting to a delay, commitment of the reserve, and enemy interdiction of movement routes.
53. Brief and dispatch quartering party to future AA.
54. Position security force and supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the commander's intent.
55. Prepare wounded soldiers and damaged equipment and nonessential supplies for movement.
56. Move nonessential combat support (CS) and CSS units to the rear.
57. Conduct R&S IAW the R&S plan.
58. Position guides for traffic control if necessary.

59. R&S assets screen the flanks and conduct reconnaissance of withdrawal routes to allow unhindered maneuver by the main body.
60. Unit executes the withdrawal.
61. Execute the deception plan and begin withdrawal.
62. Maintain contact with the enemy unit and simulate the continued presence of the main body until ordered to disengage or until another force takes over the task.
63. Conceal the withdrawal, maintain the defensive pattern of the whole force across the sector, maintain communication and information security, avoid establishing patterns of movement that may indicate friendly intentions, focus security forces on destroying enemy reconnaissance forces, use multiple withdrawal routes, and move during limited visibility and along covered and concealed routes if the situation allows.
64. Conduct actions on contact during the withdrawal and delay, attack, or defend as required by the situation.
65. Shift to alternate routes or bypass interdicted routes and areas.
66. Disengage main body.
67. Maintain deception using security force or DLIC and fires and cohesiveness of the overall operation.
68. Move rapidly on multiple routes to designated positions.
69. Avoid fixation on the close-in fight.
70. Enforce the disciplined use of routes during the withdrawal and report mobility corridor status.
71. Provide the unit flexibility to deal with unexpected enemy actions by taking limited offensive action such as spoiling attacks to disorganize or disrupt the enemy or by countering enemy attacks, reinforcing threatened areas, and protecting withdrawal routes.
72. Break contact and move as a rear guard.
73. Unit completes withdrawal within times specified in higher headquarters orders.
74. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
75. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war as required.
76. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
77. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.
78. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7213	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7210	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6834	TANK-TAC-6835
TOW-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-6837	TANK-TAC-6804
TOW-TAC-5817	TANK-TAC-6836	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7829: Conduct a Delay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A delay is usually conducted when the commander needs time to concentrate, preserve, or withdraw forces; to establish defenses in greater depth; to economize in an area; to cover a defending or withdrawing unit; to protect a friendly unit's flank; or to complete offensive actions elsewhere. In the delay, the destruction of the enemy force is secondary to slowing his advance to gain time.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to delay at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The delay is either a delay in sector or delay forward of a specified line or position for a specified time. The enemy can attack with ground forces (mounted or dismounted) supported by indirect fire and air. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the delay in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit maintains contact with the enemy and is not penetrated or bypassed by more than a platoon-sized enemy force. The unit delays by combining maneuver, fires, obstacles, and avoidance of decisive engagements to achieve the commander's intent. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Express the commander's visualization of anticipated enemy actions integrated with the staff's intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
5. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
6. Employ all available information-gathering assets.
7. Define the battlefield environment.
8. Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver to reach his likely objectives.
9. Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support.
10. Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning.

11. Identify restrictive terrain that may slow the enemy's attack, cause a separation of forces, create difficulties in command and control, or force the enemy to conduct defile drills (narrow valleys, passes, or urban areas).
12. Identify terrain such as choke points that create potential enemy vulnerabilities and opportunities for friendly attack.
13. Identify terrain that canalizes enemy formations into areas that provide defending forces good fields of fire, observation, and flanking fires.
14. Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires.
15. Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the unit.
16. Describe battlefield effects.
17. Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces.
18. Determine the effects of weather on operations.
19. Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable.
20. Evaluate the enemy.
21. Determine enemy size, location, and composition.
22. Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather.
23. Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).
24. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
25. Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs), location and orientation of enemy forces, enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems, and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
26. Choose the best method of delay (delay on successive or delay on alternate positions) or combine the methods during factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
27. Employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
28. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning.
29. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
30. Develop the scheme of maneuver.
31. Define how the unit intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles.
32. Define how the unit intends to use terrain to shape the battlefield and inflict maximum damage on the enemy IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent.
33. Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability.
34. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
35. Plan fire support.
36. Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available.
37. Develop clear triggers to adjust fire support coordinating measures (FSCMs) and priority of fires.
38. Coordinate the movement of indirect fire assets to support the EFSTs.
39. Ensure indirect fire asset movements are coordinated with the scheme of

maneuver.

40. Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed.
41. Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects.
42. Plan fires to support a withdrawal, defense, or counterattack IAW the commander's intent.
43. Plan engineer support.
44. Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail.
45. Plan to site situational obstacles early.
46. Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility.
47. Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement.
48. Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST).
49. Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability.
50. Plan adequate mobility support for the withdrawal or countermobility.
51. Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources.
52. Plan and or coordinate air defense (AD) support if available.
53. Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires.
54. Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality, vulnerability, and recuperability of units and the enemy.
55. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
56. Integrate NBC R&S assets (if available) into the unit's R&S plans.
57. Position NBC R&S assets (if available) forward in the security zone and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents (support to counterattacking forces is especially important).
58. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities.
59. Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort.
60. Coordinate the use of artillery smoke and plan mechanized smoke (ensure they are synchronized with other actions).
61. Plan combat service support (CSS).
62. Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces.
63. Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions.
64. Provide the security forces with prepositioned stocks of critical supplies in depth of the security zone.
65. Stockpile limited amounts of class III and class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations.
66. Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis.
67. Plan resupply (if required) during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference.
68. Plan for high expenditure of class V and increased demand of barrier materials (class IV).
69. Plan casualty evacuation.
70. Identify special procedures and positions for limited visibility operations.
71. Plan for and coordinate battle handover and rearward passage of lines.
72. Integrate deception into the overall plan.
73. Conduct risk management.

74. Specify the degrees of risk.
75. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
76. Unit prepares for the delay.
77. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
78. Conduct extensive R&S.
79. Select routes to provide maximum mobility and emplace obstacles and or enhance existing obstacles to degrade the mobility of the enemy.
80. Select and mark routes to the rear and subsequent delay positions.
81. Prepare subsequent positions.
82. Designate routes to allow withdrawal for subordinate elements between battle positions (BPs) or exits in each sector.
83. Ensure all obstacles are covered by fire to slow the enemy and to allow for disengagement by friendly units.
84. Coordinate fires between the moving element and adjacent, supporting, and overwatch elements.
85. Coordinate the withdrawal of unit elements with higher headquarters and adjacent units.
86. Conduct precombat checks and inspections.
87. Inspect and monitor the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline.
88. Seek to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources.
89. Pay special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements.
90. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
91. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
92. Position forces.
93. Assign troop sectors, battle positions, or a combination thereof, consistent with the commander's intent and factors of METT-TC.
94. Occupy the initial delay position as a defensive position.
95. Position the reserve in an area so that it can counterattack, move rapidly to reinforce, or cover the withdrawal of forward subordinate elements.
96. Locate the main command post (CP) and combat trains to the rear and behind next rearward phase line.
97. Locate the command group forward to control the operation.
98. Prepare to delay at the time prescribed in the higher headquarters order.
99. Unit executes the delay.
100. Use clearly defined decision points or events to trigger withdrawals.
101. Ensure the security forces provide early warning on high-speed approaches and cover secondary approaches between BPs.
102. Exploit and reinforce existing obstacles within the limits of available materials, time, and personnel to aid withdrawal.
103. Provide forces with sufficient lethality and fire support to cover the withdrawal of forward elements.
104. Engage the enemy at the greatest range using long-range fires.
105. Force the enemy to deploy into assault formations repeatedly against successive BPs.
106. Maintain contact with the enemy's main body.
107. Maintain flank security.
108. Achieve depth in the delay.

109. Avoid decisive engagement, thus allowing the unit to withdraw and maneuver according to plan.
110. Approve subordinate element disengagement criteria.
111. Conduct internal passage of lines as required.
112. Ensure the unit is not bypassed or penetrated by more than a platoon-size element.
113. Unit leaders assess the operation.
114. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
115. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
116. Unit withdraws, defends, or counterattacks IAW the order and or guidance from higher headquarters.
117. Unit complies with ROE and ROI.
118. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
119. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
120. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
121. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.
122. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-TAC-7815	TANK-CBTS-7402
TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-TAC-6834
TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-TAC-6820	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7830: Conduct an Infiltration/Exfiltration

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An infiltration is the movement through or into an area or territory occupied by either friendly or enemy troops or organizations. The movement is made, either by small groups or by individuals, at extended or irregular intervals. When used in connection with the enemy, it infers that contact is avoided. When used in conjunction with a tactical vehicular march, vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups at irregular intervals to reduce density and prevent undue massing of vehicles. An exfiltration is the removal of personnel or units from areas under enemy control.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as

part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct an infiltration or exfiltration. The purpose of the infiltration or exfiltration is to gather information, attack an enemy position from the rear, conduct a raid or ambush, capture prisoners, seize key terrain, or aid the main attack, and is identified by higher headquarters. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the infiltration or exfiltration in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit employs reconnaissance patrols to find routes, gaps, and weaknesses in enemy positions. The unit moves through the enemy area without being detected. The unit accomplishes the designated purpose of the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order and conduct a map reconnaissance.
4. Mark rally points that are easily identifiable.
5. Identify likely enemy avenues of approach, routes to and from rally points, and linkup point and assembly area (AA).
6. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), employ all available information-gathering assets, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, evaluate the enemy, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
7. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
8. Include location and orientation of enemy forces, enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense assets, enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines, enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
9. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
10. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
11. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
12. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
13. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
14. Conduct risk management.
15. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
16. Plan fire support.
17. Plan fires and effects to provide immediate responsive fires.

18. Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
19. Plan obscuration fires as required, deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, fires to support the reconnaissance effort, indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, and locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.
20. Plan engineer support.
21. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of infiltration or exfiltration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.
22. Integrate obstacle intelligence requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
23. Ensure confirmed obstacles receive immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
24. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
25. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
26. Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
27. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
28. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan.
29. Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
30. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
31. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
32. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
33. Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement.
34. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
35. Plan combat service support (CSS).
36. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
37. Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort (the S-4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward R&S assets is well planned and integrated into the R&S plan).
38. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
39. Develop contingency plans for chance enemy contact.
40. Designate rally points to prepare for attack or to assemble after the mission is complete.
41. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.
42. Assign lanes and release points (RP) to subordinate elements.
43. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
44. Unit prepares for the mission.

45. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, conduct extensive R&S, conduct precombat checks, supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent, conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible, and position forces as per the plan.
46. Unit executes infiltration plan.
47. Conduct forward passage of lines, maintain communications during movement, separate into infiltrating elements at designated rally points, take advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions as well as limited visibility, adverse weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment, and avoid enemy contact if possible.
48. If contact is made, avoid becoming decisively engaged, break contact, and continue movement to the rally point.
49. Maintain dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline.
50. Infiltrate by entire company or by separate platoons as specified during planning.
51. Use battlefield noise (including artillery) to mask movement.
52. Engage the enemy as necessary using support by fire and or indirect fires.
53. Conduct linkup.
54. Complete linkup.
55. Complete actions at the linkup point or assembly area.
56. Unit executes exfiltration plan.
57. Planning and performance steps for exfiltration generally mirror those for infiltration (a rearward passage of lines would be conducted).
58. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.
59. Secure EPWs as required.
60. Conduct movement to designated area following rearward passage of lines.
61. Report completion of exfiltration to higher commander.
62. Treat and evacuates casualties.
63. Process captured documents and or equipment as required.
64. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-7804	TANK-CMDC-7208	TANK-CMDC-7201
TANK-CMDC-7210	TANK-CMDC-7202	TANK-CMDC-7213

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6838
TANK-TAC-6804		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7831: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A tactical road march is a rapid movement used to relocate units within a combat zone in order to prepare for combat operations. Although contact with enemy ground forces is not anticipated, security against air attack, enemy Special Forces, and sympathizers is maintained and the unit is prepared to take immediate action against an enemy threat.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to relocate units in a combat zone (the route may or may not be specified). The unit will move to an assembly area (AA) in order to prepare for combat operations. The order designates start point (SP) and release point (RP) times. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Hostile contact is not anticipated. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion conducts the tactical road march in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit crosses and clears the SP and RP at the designated time. The unit uses the designated formation and road march technique. The unit maintains the prescribed intervals and rates of speed. The unit maintains security before the movement, during the movement, and at the assembly area (AA). The unit reacts to contact during the move as necessary to defeat encountered enemy forces. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. The S-3 prepares a detailed movement plan (the S-3 has responsibility for planning tactical road marches).
4. Determine requirements for the movement.
5. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order and conduct a map reconnaissance.
6. Identify the route if not provided, likely enemy avenues of approach, critical areas (danger areas, defiles, and choke points, traffic control points), SP and RP, and mark tentative dismount points as appropriate.
7. Determine assembly area (AA) or bivouac areas.
8. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), define the battlefield environment as it relates to the road march, describe battlefield effects as it relates to the road march, evaluate the enemy that may be encountered during the road march or at the AA, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs) during the road march and at the AA.
9. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).

10. Include location and orientation of enemy forces, location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems, location of enemy target acquisition assets, positioning of enemy air defense assets, enemy obstacle systems, tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
11. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP.
12. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
13. Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
14. Analyze organic and nonorganic movement capabilities.
15. Establish unit movement priorities.
16. Determine the road march technique to be used, security measures to be used before the movement, during the movement, and at the destination, order of march, rate of march, march interval, time at which the head or tail of the column is to pass the SP and critical points, location of command post (CP) during movement, quartering party requirements, and coordinate combat service support (CSS) requirements.
17. Assign direct fire responsibilities.
18. Develop graphic control measures (i.e. check points, phase lines, scheduled halt points).
19. Organize the unit into a reconnaissance element, quartering party, main body, and trail element.
20. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.
21. Determine actions at the destination.
22. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
23. Plan fire support.
24. Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
25. Plan obscuration fires as required, deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, fires to support the reconnaissance effort, and locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide.
26. Plan engineer support.
27. Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible.
28. Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.
29. Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
30. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
31. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.
32. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
33. Plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
34. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
35. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available.
36. Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately

throughout the unit.

37. Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
38. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.
39. Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions in the AA.
40. Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.
41. Plan combat service support (CSS).
42. Plan equipment recovery operations.
43. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
44. Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort.
45. Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
46. Conduct risk management.
47. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
48. Unit commander and or staff organizes and dispatches reconnaissance element.
49. Confirm available routes and conditions (routes may be specified by higher headquarters), SP and RP suitability, distance between checkpoints on the route and total distance from SP to RP, assembly or bivouac area location, and checkpoint locations on the route, if required.
50. Locate and mark obstacles.
51. Determine the number of guides required and their route location.
52. Unit prepares for road march.
53. Reconnoiter route to the SP and determine the exact time to reach it.
54. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles before movement and identify all non-mission capable (NMC) vehicles.
55. Load all vehicles IAW load plans and CSS plan.
56. Brief and post road guides.
57. Verify communications in all vehicles prior to movement.
58. Issue strip maps if not issued with order.
59. Brief and dispatch the quartering party to conduct the following: navigate by infiltration to the AA, move over the routes to be used by the unit and execute a route reconnaissance and time-distance check, provide guides along the route as necessary, report and engage any enemy observed IAW the commander's intent, identify potential CP locations based on tactical requirements such as cover and concealment and the line-of-sight signal requirements of FM radios, identify unit left and right limits of fire, verify subordinate unit locations and sectors of fire to ensure there are no gaps in coverage, ensure necessary routes are cleared, transmit changes and updates to the main CP to alert the main body to changes to the route and or assembly area, and adjust unit locations in the area assigned if it is unsuitable.
60. Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
61. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
62. Position elements in the correct march order.
63. Unit executes road march and crosses the SP at the designated time IAW OPORD or FRAGO.
64. Use the designated formation, road march technique and, rate of march.

65. Maintain proper march speed to reach checkpoints at times specified in the order.
66. Use visual signals and or FM radio to communicate with unit elements IAW order and or TSOP.
67. Report control measures IAW order or SOP.
68. Maintain 360 degree observation, including aerial observation while moving and at the halt.
69. Use security elements to eliminate enemy elements and allow uninterrupted movement of the main body.
70. Detect enemy aircraft before they attack, engage them, and report to higher headquarters.
71. Conduct scheduled halts at regular intervals IAW the TSOP.
72. Perform PMCS and refueling as required.
73. Bypass obstacles if possible.
74. Report the unit's position to higher headquarters as required.
75. React to hostile contact as appropriate.
76. Maintain radio listening silence.
77. Perform recovery operations.
78. Comply with the ROE and ROI.
79. Arrive at and move through the RP, report arrival at and the completion of the move through the RP, pass through the release point without halting, meet and follow quartering party guides and move to their designated area, orient weapons to establish local security, enforce proper dispersion and camouflage, process enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required, and process captured documents and equipment as required.
80. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-7213	TANK-CMDC-7201	TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	SCT-TAC-5810	TOW-TAC-5818
TANK-TAC-6839		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-7832: Conduct Rear Area Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The rear area is that area extending forward from a command's

rear boundary to the rear of the operational area of the command's subordinate units. This area is provided primarily for the performance of CSS functions. Rear area operations include those functions of security and sustainment required to maintain continuity of operations by the whole force. Rear area operations protect the sustainment effort as well as deny use of the rear area to the enemy. The rear area may not always be contiguous with the main battle area.

CONDITION: The tank battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct security within its higher headquarters assigned area of operation (AO), or around the location of a high-value asset. The situation may require occupation and defense of an area from the enemy/threat, civilians on the battlefield (COB), or taking actions to destroy or detain forces already present. High-value assets may have no organic defense or security capability. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. Contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the battalion upon request. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and civilians are present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion denies the enemy/threat from influencing friendly actions within the area or using it for their own purposes, and/or protects the designated high-value asset(s). The battalion maintains continuous surveillance to provide early warning of enemy/threat approach and reaction time to the protected asset. The battalion destroys or detains enemy/threat forces before they can impede/interdict operations or damage/destroy high-value asset(s). All operations adhere to the ROE and ROI without injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-2 section performs IPB and reconnaissance.
2. Identify likely threat objectives and landing areas.
3. Identify known or suspected unconventional threat.
4. Identify likely avenues of main attack or penetration.
5. Identify likely ambush sites along MSRs.
6. Plan contains an OPLAN prepared for each priority mission; provisions for decentralized coordination, rehearsals and reconnaissance; requirements for rules of engagement, recognizing allied units, and enforcing civilian control policies.
7. The battalion commander and staff plan for directed rear area security tasks.
8. The battalion prepares and coordinates for security/quick reaction force mission.
9. Coordination is conducted within 24 hours and maintained with all units the battalion is ordered to support.
10. Commander's defensive plans of the units in the sector/zone of possible commitment are coordinated, reviewed, and modified, as needed.
11. Routes, boundaries, convoy schedules, identification procedures,

frequencies, call signs, obstacles, rules of engagement, and other information are exchanged.
12. Coordination is made with fire support, rear battle tasks, and other headquarters supporting or controlling the rear battle mission.
13. The battalion reacts rapidly to FRAGO to execute a mission.
14. Initiate movement within 15 minutes for offensive operations (lead company commander reports LD).
15. The battalion is in position and prepared to block/counterattack, attack, react, and reinforce within 30 minutes for defensive operations.
16. The battalion initiates movement.
17. The battalion coordinates movement with the organization whose area it is moving through.
18. Minimum coordination includes information on routes and times.
19. Movement is rapid while providing for limited security.
20. The battalion plans and performs MSR clearing and security.
21. The battalion finds and neutralizes all mines from the MSR within six hours of emplacement.
22. No convoys are ambushed.
23. The battalion plans and performs defense of units.
24. Attacking enemy is destroyed or fixed, and contact is maintained to allow further destruction.
25. The battalion plans and reacts to an attack of a unit in its AO.
26. The battalion destroys or fixes the attacking element depending on size.
27. The battalion continues operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-7502 TANK-CMDC-7201 TANK-CMDC-7202
TANK-CMDC-7210

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6840 TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK COMPANY

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	4001	4-2
EVENT CODING	4002	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	4003	4-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	4004	4-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA	4005	4-4
COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	4006	4-6

CHAPTER 4

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK COMPANY

4001. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Company level tank unit events (6000 Level), and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies (Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and unit training (Collective events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and/or Battalion Collective event, and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the steering point for the Platoon training detailed in the subsequent chapters.

4002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Company level are:

CMDC - Command and Control	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	EXPD - Expeditionary Operations
OTH - Other Operations	TAC - Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4004. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, participates in and conducts operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Participates in, and conducts a passage of lines, relief in place, and link up as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.

4. Prepares for and conducts checkpoint operations.

5. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.

6. Conducts overwatch and support another unit by fire.

7. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations in urban environments.

8. Participates in and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

9. Constructs and breaches obstacles.

10. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

11. Defends against air attack.

12. Processes enemy prisoners of war.

13. Employs inorganic assets to include AAVs and support aircraft.

14. Processes and evacuates casualties.

15. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts route, area, and zone reconnaissance operations.

16. Prepares for, plans, and executes company level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, raid, defend, delay, infiltrate, exfiltrate, screen, guard, ambush, disengage, withdrawal, and consolidate.

17. Contributes to tactical and operational logistics planning.

18. Submits reports and intelligence information.

19. Logistically sustain a unit.

20. Participates in and conducts fire support planning.

21. Operates a company command post.

22. Prepares and submits unit fire plan sketches.

23. Participates in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW).

4005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TANK-CMDC-6201		Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	4-6
TANK-CMDC-6202		Establish and Employ Company Command Post	4-8
TANK-CMDC-6203		Conduct Risk Management	4-9
TANK-CMDC-6204		Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	4-11
TANK-CMDC-6205		Conduct a Rehearsal	4-12
TANK-CMDC-6206		Prepare for Combat	4-15
TANK-CMDC-6207		Conduct Reconnaissance	4-17
TANK-CMDC-6208		Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance	4-18
TANK-CBTS-6401		Conduct Fire Support Coordination in the Offense	4-22
TANK-CBTS-6402		Conduct Fire Support Coordination in the Defense	4-24
TANK-CBTS-6403		Emplace an Obstacle	4-26
TANK-CBTS-6404		Employ Engineer Assets	4-27
TANK-CBTS-6405		Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack	4-29
TANK-CBTS-6406		React to a Chemical/Biological Attack	4-30
TANK-CBTS-6407		Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	4-33
TANK-CBTS-6408		React to a Nuclear Attack	4-34
TANK-CBTS-6409		Cross an NBC Contaminated Area	4-36
TANK-CBTS-6410		Conduct Operational Decontamination	4-38
TANK-CBTS-6411		React to Enemy Indirect Fire	4-41
TANK-CBTS-6412		Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack	4-42
TANK-CBTS-6413		React to Enemy Air Attack	4-43
TANK-CSS-6501		Conduct Logistical Planning	4-45
TANK-CSS-6502		Conduct Resupply Operations	4-46
TANK-CSS-6503	**Yes**	**Conduct Maintenance Operations**	**4-50**
TANK-CSS-6504		Provide Medical Evacuation and Treatment of Casualties	4-52
TANK-CSS-6505		Process Enemy Prisoners of War	4-54
TANK-EXPD-6601		Conduct Amphibious Planning	4-56
TANK-EXPD-6602		Assist in the Development of the Amphibious Landing Plan	4-57
TANK-EXPD-6603		Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing	4-58
TANK-OTH-6701		Establish a Base Camp	4-60
TANK-OTH-6702		Conduct a Quick Reaction Force (QRF)	4-64
TANK-OTH-6703		Conduct Convoy Security	4-68
TANK-OTH-6704		Conduct Checkpoint Operations	4-71
TANK-OTH-6705		Secure Civilians During Operations	4-73
TANK-OTH-6706		Conduct a Cordon and Search	4-75
TANK-OTH-6707		Conduct Presence Operations	4-78
TANK-TAC-6801		Occupy an Assembly Area	4-80
TANK-TAC-6802		Conduct Consolidation	4-82
TANK-TAC-6803		Conduct Reorganization	4-83
TANK-TAC-6804	**Yes**	**Conduct Tactical Movement**	**4-85**
TANK-TAC-6805	**Yes**	**Conduct a Movement to Contact**	**4-87**
TANK-TAC-6806	**Yes**	**Conduct Actions on Contact**	**4-91**
TANK-TAC-6807		Conduct a Hasty Attack	4-93
TANK-TAC-6808	**Yes**	**Conduct a Deliberate Attack**	**4-95**
TANK-TAC-6809		Follow and Support	4-97
TANK-TAC-6810		Conduct an Attack by Fire	4-99

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TANK-TAC-6811		Conduct Support by Fire	4-101
TANK-TAC-6812		Conduct a Bypass	4-103
TANK-TAC-6813		Conduct an Assault	4-105
TANK-TAC-6814		Conduct an Ambush	4-107
TANK-TAC-6815		Conduct a Clearance	4-110
TANK-TAC-6816		Conduct a Raid	4-112
TANK-TAC-6817		Conduct a Feint	4-115
TANK-TAC-6818		Conduct a Demonstration	4-117
TANK-TAC-6819		Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area	4-118
TANK-TAC-6820	**Yes**	**Defend in Sector**	**4-121**
TANK-TAC-6821	**Yes**	**Defend a Battle Position**	**4-124**
TANK-TAC-6822	**Yes**	**Defend a Strongpoint**	**4-130**
TANK-TAC-6823		Defend an Urban Area	4-133
TANK-TAC-6824		Conduct a Guard	4-139
TANK-TAC-6825		Conduct a Screen	4-142
TANK-TAC-6826		Conduct Reserve Operations	4-145
TANK-TAC-6827		Conduct a Linkup	4-147
TANK-TAC-6828	**Yes**	**Conduct Passage of Lines as a Moving Unit**	**4-149**
TANK-TAC-6829	**Yes**	**Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Stationary Unit**	**4-151**
TANK-TAC-6830	**Yes**	**Conduct a Relief in Place**	**4-153**
TANK-TAC-6831		Conduct a Breakout from Encirclement	4-156
TANK-TAC-6832	**Yes**	**Conduct a Breach**	**4-158**
TANK-TAC-6833		Conduct Gap/Water Crossing	4-161
TANK-TAC-6834		Conduct a Delay	4-163
TANK-TAC-6835		Conduct a Withdrawal Under Enemy Pressure	4-166
TANK-TAC-6836		Conduct a Withdrawal Not Under Enemy Pressure	4-168
TANK-TAC-6837		Conduct a Retirement	4-169
TANK-TAC-6838		Conduct an Infiltration/Exfiltration	4-171
TANK-TAC-6839		Conduct a Tactical Road March	4-174
TANK-TAC-6840		Conduct Rear Area Operations	4-176

4006. COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

TANK-CMDC-6201: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company leadership on receipt of an OPORD/FRAGO, or WARNO conducts troop-leading procedures. TLPs are a dynamic process that enables the company commander to use available time effectively and efficiently in the planning, preparing, executing and assessing of combat missions. TLPs are integrally coupled with the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP), and achieve the same tactical problem solving results as the MCPP.

CONDITION: The company receives an OPORD, FRAGO, or warning order from the battalion commander. It has a map, overlays, graphic control measures, and applicable SOPs. The company conducts linkup with any attachments. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company prepares to move by the time specified in the order with all elements fully mission capable. All personnel understand their responsibilities during the mission and have the equipment and materials necessary to accomplish all tasks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander receives and analyzes the mission, obtains clarification from the commander of all aspects of the mission (commander's intent/implied tasks), coordinates with adjacent units, disseminates all pertinent information contained in the warning order, and disseminates initial warning order as quickly as possible.
2. The company commander uses one-third of the available time for planning, to include the issuing of the company OPORD and allocates the remaining two-thirds to the platoons and other elements, allowing his key subordinate leaders to plan and prepare for the upcoming mission; he issues subsequent warning orders as more information becomes available or as the situation changes.
3. Analyze the mission covering the factors of METT-TC.
4. Company commander issues the warning order(s) and at a minimum includes the following information: task organization of the company, friendly and enemy situations, operational graphics, time and nature of the operation, tentative timeline, security instructions, time and place the OPORD will be issued, assignment of preparatory tasks to the executive officer (XO), platoon commanders, Tank Leader, and other key subordinates.
5. Company commander makes a tentative plan.
6. Using results of the METT-TC analysis, develop one or more company COAs that address all specified, implied, and essential tasks.
7. Compare COAs and make tentative selection of most favorable COA.
8. Company initiates movement IAW battalion warning order/OPORD/FRAGO and unit SOP.
9. Assume the appropriate REDCON level.
10. Dispatch quartering party as necessary.
11. Begin priorities of work.

12. Conduct time-distance check of the route to the SP (as necessary).
13. Conduct movement (either tactical road march or tactical movement), moving to an advantageous location from which the company team can effectively prepare for the upcoming mission.
14. Company conducts reconnaissance.
15. Conduct ground, air, or map reconnaissance IAW METT-TC.
16. Identify information requirements.
17. If conducting offensive operations, confirm the initial march route to the LD, SP, or initial positions and, if possible, check the area beyond the LD.
18. If conducting defensive operations, conduct reconnaissance of all engagement areas, BPs, displacement routes, and counterattack axes.
19. Adjust the tentative plan based on results of the reconnaissance.
20. Company commander completes the plan.
21. Select best available COA based on METT-TC analysis and reconnaissance.
22. Conduct detailed wargaming using one of the following techniques: box technique, belt technique, and avenue in depth technique.
23. Finalize the plan and prepare the OPORD.
24. Company commander issues the order utilizing the five-paragraph order format.
25. Ensure that platoon commanders and all other key subordinates have posted necessary overlays on their maps and that overlays match the company team commander's overlay.
26. Ensure that platoon commanders and all other key subordinates understand the intent of the battalion commander.
27. Ensure that platoon commanders and all other key subordinates understand the enemy and friendly situations as well as all tasks for which they are responsible.
28. Use confirmation briefings to ensure platoon commanders and all other key subordinates understand the order, focusing on what each subordinate platoon or element must do.
29. The company commander may have disseminated some or all pertinent information in previous warning orders as the information became available; in that case, he would not need to repeat this information when issuing the OPORD.
30. Company commander, XO, Tank Leader and subordinate element leaders supervise and refine company preparations.
31. Platoon commanders brief platoons on the company mission based on the company commander's OPORD.
32. Company commander conducts confirmation briefs and rehearsals.
33. XO and/or Tank Leader direct and supervise resupply operations.
34. Platoon Sergeants supervise each tank commander's/squad leader's PCCs.
35. Checks include, but are not limited to, the following actions: before-operations PMCS are conducted for vehicles, weapon systems, communications, and NBC and ancillary equipment; as applicable, PMCS deficiencies are repaired and/or reported to maintenance elements; prepare-to-fire checks are conducted for all weapon systems; weapon systems are boresighted; all weapons are test-fired, if possible; communications (FM and digital) are checked, and the correct frequencies are set on each radio based on the OPORD or unit SOP; operational checks are conducted on NVDs, NBC materials, and special equipment; and each vehicle is loaded IAW the unit load plan/SOP.
36. Status of PCCs is reported to the company team commander.
37. Company commander/XO/Tank Leader and designated representatives conduct PCIs to ensure that vehicle commanders have completed all required PCCs.

38. Company commander/XO/Tank Leader continues to supervise and refine throughout execution of the operation.
39. Upon receipt of a FRAGO from higher headquarters, continue to execute the mission, making any adjustments as directed in the FRAGO.
40. Upon completion of the mission, conduct troop-leading procedures and execute new mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5201

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CMDC-6202: Establish and Employ Company Command Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A command post is a unit's headquarters where the company commander and support representatives perform their activities. It is the principle facility employed by the company commander to control combat operations.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a battalion. The company staff is monitoring the situation. The company receives an operations order or FRAGO to conduct a tactical operation or changes to the current tactical situation require control or coordination actions. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company command post coordinates and directs the maneuver of all internal and attached assets, controls direct and indirect fires, and coordinates other critical activities to win the battle. The company commander informs the company of anticipated changes in unit missions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The company staff is located where it can control the battle; the company staff survives; the company commander can see the critical activities on the battlefield; and the company staff is positioned to maintain communications with critical elements.

2. The company staff monitors the development of the enemy and friendly situation.
3. The company commander makes a determination on the required changes to execute the desired actions; changes are based on the enemy situation, friendly situation and directions from higher headquarters.
4. The company commander directs the maneuver and fires of combat forces; the company commander directs changes in missions/tasks for subordinate elements by giving a FRAGO; FRAGO corrects elements not following the OPORD, changes the original OPORD to respond to new METT-TC factors or directs fires on the enemy; the company commander controls directly or with assistance of XO.
5. The Fire Support Team (FiST) Leader coordinates the execution of fire support.
6. The company commander reports to the battalion commander.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-CMDC-5208

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
8. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TANK-CMDC-6203: Conduct Risk Management

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Risk management is the process of detecting, assessing, and controlling risk arising from operational factors and making decisions to balance risk costs with mission benefits. It is an element of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of the battalion and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. Fratricide prevention is addressed. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards.
3. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, and ROE.
4. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks.
5. Integrate safety into every phase of planning process.
6. Identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards.
7. Conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
8. Unit commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
9. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions.
10. Identify unwarranted risks.
11. Compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives.
12. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records.
13. Describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) utilizing risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental).
14. Include the following categories: nature of operation, mission preparation, mission control, Marine selection, Marine alertness, Marine fitness, equipment status, and weather.
15. Compute overall risk factor.
16. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.
17. Include failures in direct fire control plan, land navigation, combat identification, reporting and communications.
18. Includes weapons errors, battlefield hazards, and inadequate control measures.
19. Unit commander and leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
20. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk.
21. Develop procedures that reduce risk.
22. Provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation.
23. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.
24. Unit personnel implement risk control procedures.
25. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations.
26. Correct unsafe acts on the spot.
27. Report all risk and safety violations to commander and unit safety officer.
28. Unit commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.
29. Enforce standards and controls.

30. Evaluate effectiveness of controls and adjust and update as necessary.
31. Comply with orders, SOP, commander's guidance, and ROE.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5202

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
8. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CMDC-6204: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The maintenance of operations security (OPSEC) is a process of identifying critical information and subsequently analyzing friendly actions attendant to military operations and other activities to: identify those actions that are observed by adversary intelligence systems; determine indicators hostile intelligence systems might obtain that are interpreted or pieced together to derive critical information in time to be useful to adversaries; and select and execute measures that eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level the vulnerabilities of friendly actions to adversary exploitation. All measures taken to maintain security and achieve tactical surprise. It includes countersurveillance, physical security, signal security, and information security. It also involves the identification and elimination or control of indicators that are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. OPSEC is a component of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force. The four components of force protection are operational security and deception operations, the Marine's health and morale, safety, and the avoidance of fratricide.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a battalion and must maintain OPSEC to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) are operational and information is passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company employs OPSEC measures in accordance with the standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and eliminates or controls indicators that are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The unit practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) to enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit prepares for OPSEC, briefs subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success, and conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
2. Unit executes the OPSEC plan and enforces measures that protect friendly information.
3. Man and perform surveillance from observation posts (OPs).
4. Conduct counterreconnaissance patrols if possible.
5. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.
6. Conduct stand-to procedures, establish local security, and establish specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
7. Use camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions.
8. Avoid footpaths, trails, and or roads where possible.
9. Erase tracks leading into positions.
10. Control movement.
11. Use the proper movement formation and movement technique.
12. Enforce radio discipline.
13. Enforce the use of proper radio procedures and ensure subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected.
14. Enforce litter, light, and noise discipline.
15. Enforce information assurance.
16. Unit leaders assess OPSEC measures.
17. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
18. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
19. Direct adjustments as necessary.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5203

REFERENCES:

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
7. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TANK-CMDC-6205: Conduct a Rehearsal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A rehearsal is the process of practicing a plan before actual execution. Rehearsals assist units in clarifying the scheme of maneuver, orienting subordinates to the positions and actions of other units, and practicing any possible branches and sequels from the decision support matrix. The rehearsal should not digress into a war game. If the commander identifies problems with the synchronization, he should direct a rehearsal after the issues are resolved to ensure all participants clearly understand the required actions.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a battalion and is preparing for a mission. The command post (CP) is operational and functioning. Mission planning and coordination is accomplished. The unit operations order (OPORD) is developed and briefed. The commander directs a time and location for rehearsal. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company plans, prepares, and executes the rehearsal in accordance with the appropriate references, standard operating procedures (SOP), and commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key and or critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate commanders and units to execute their mission. The company commander develops a rehearsal script. The company commander identifies and prioritizes key events for rehearsal. The company commander coordinates and ensures time is allocated for the key events requiring rehearsal. Designated person briefs rehearsal participants. Platoon commanders and attachments direct adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The company commander reinforces the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander gains and maintains situational awareness using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Company commander plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.
3. Select rehearsal criteria.
4. Select one of the following rehearsal types: confirmation brief, back brief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal (fire support or combat service support), and battle drill or standing operating procedures (SOP) rehearsal.
5. Select one of the following rehearsal techniques: full dress, reduced force, terrain model, sketch map, map or digital visualization tool, white board, radio, place of rehearsal, attendees, and enemy course of action (COA) to be portrayed during the rehearsal.
6. Develop a rehearsal script that includes the following: an agenda, response sequence, actions checklist, and sequence of events.
7. Ensure rehearsal time and location are published in the unit operations order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO).
8. Complete any rehearsals with the staff.
9. Determine rehearsal products.

10. Coordinate liaison officer (LNO) attendance from adjacent units.
11. Unit commander prepares for rehearsal.
12. Identify and prioritize key events to be rehearsed, allocate time, and review.
13. Ensure completeness of task organization, readiness of personnel and material, and unit level of preparation for the assigned mission.
14. Company commander prepares for rehearsal.
15. Coordinate and allocate time for the key events requiring rehearsal.
16. Establish rehearsal time limits according to the commander's guidance and factors of METT-TC.
17. Verify rehearsal site preparation.
18. Determine the method for controlling the rehearsal and ensuring its logical flow.
19. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal and complete their planning process.
20. Complete unit order and plans; identify issues derived from the unit order; provide copy of their unit order with graphics to the unit; conduct personal preparation similar to that of the unit commander.
21. Company leaders prepare for the rehearsal.
22. Deconflict subordinate unit graphics.
23. Produce composite overlays.
24. Publish the following composite overlays at a minimum: maneuver overlay, fire support overlay, engineer overlay, and combat service support (CSS) overlay.
25. Appoint a recorder for the rehearsal.
26. Company moves to rehearsal site and executes rehearsal.
27. Brief participants.
28. Orient participants to the training aid and the terrain; define the standard; visualize and synchronize the concept of operations; focus on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy; and address any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur.
29. Direct the rehearsal.
30. Conduct a formal roll call and ensure that necessary equipment is on hand; validate task organization for the mission; rehearse synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and organic units; and synchronize the timing and contribution of each operating system.
31. Use the OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix to accomplish the following: discipline leader movements, enforce brevity, and ensure completeness.
32. Keep the rehearsal within established time constraints.
33. Ensure selected events receive appropriate attention.
34. Ensure absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.
35. Bases execution actions on the enemy COA the commander has selected during the planning process; portray best assessment of the enemy COA; and communicate the enemy commander's presumed concept of operation, desired effects, and intended end state.
36. Use an established format.
37. Articulate unit's actions and responsibilities effectively and record changes on their copies of the graphics or OPORD.
38. Company commander assesses the rehearsal.
39. Monitor continuously the situation and progress.
40. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
41. Rehearse again, if the standard is not met and time is available.

42. Recorder accomplishes the following, after the rehearsal is complete: restate any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the company commander; and estimate the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.
43. Company provides staff updates.
44. Issue OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix.
45. Company commander assembles participants to conduct an after action review (AAR).

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5204

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-6206: Prepare for Combat

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Preparing for combat operations includes the actions the company must take to plan, organize, rehearse, and finalize coordination for follow-on execution.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is occupying an assembly area. The battalion commander issues a warning order to prepare for combat operations. The company has all weapons and equipment. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company prepares for operations in accordance with the standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, appropriate references, and battalion commander's guidance. The company commander refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. Unit leaders conduct precombat checks and supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the commander's intent. The unit conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. The company is prepared to move into combat by the time specified in the OPORD.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander reviews the battalion OPORD.
2. Coordinate with the battalion commander and staff, as needed.
3. The company commander performs a mission analysis.
4. Identify specified, implied, and mission essential tasks, any constraints or limitations, and the purpose of the mission.
5. Produce a restated mission statement that contains the unit's mission-essential tasks and the purpose for which they were assigned.
6. Develop a tentative timeline utilizing the backward planning process.
7. The company commander issues the warning order (WARNO): the situation is explained; the mission statement is clear and concise; provide the time and execution of the operation; provide specific special instructions to the unit; provide time and place for the OPORD; synchronize watches, "time hack".
8. The company commander makes a tentative plan.
9. The company initiates movement as required for quartering party, selected units, or entire team.
10. The company conducts reconnaissance.
11. Determine the location, strength, disposition, activity of enemy, and accurate terrain information.
12. The company commander may use leader's reconnaissance, patrols, or elements in contact to obtain the required information.
13. The company commander completes the plan based on METT-TC considerations, intelligence from the reconnaissance, and other available sources.
14. Develop clear expression of the battalion commander's intent, as well as company commander's intent, that addresses the unit's mission-essential tasks and the purpose of those tasks.
15. Organize the unit to accomplish assigned tasks (task organization), including all attachments and supporting elements.
16. Request additional support, as necessary.
17. Identify specific tasks for all subordinate units.
18. Develop control measures.
19. Plan fire support, organic and supporting.
20. Consider deception actions in planning the operation.
21. Plan the use of maneuver, obstacles, and obscurants to achieve flank shots.
22. The company commander issues his OPORD to his subordinate leaders.
23. Provide ample time to subordinate leaders for planning and preparation by utilizing only one-third of the available time.
24. Clarify any questions.
25. The company prepares for the mission.
26. The company commander requests supporting assets that will facilitate his mission.
27. The company commander or his authorized representatives coordinate necessary plans and actions with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
28. A key company leader receives attachments.
29. The attachments are checked for mission readiness, linked up with an individual who will be their point of contact within the company, and briefed on the upcoming mission.
30. Company actions are rehearsed as the situation permits.
31. Company leaders supervise, inspect, rehearse, and finalize coordination.
32. Platoons prepare for combat.
33. The company leaders plan sustainment of combat operations.
34. The company commander, executive officer (XO), and tank leader analyze the mission with input from platoon commanders and section chiefs and

determine anticipated class I/III/V/IX requirements.
35. The XO or Tank Leader coordinate with the company supply NCO and battalion S-4 to select logistic release point (LRP) locations and logistics package (LOGPAC) composition to support the tactical plan.
36. The XO or Tank Leader request, receive, and distribute special equipment and supplies that the company commander and other leaders have determined are needed and update the company supply status.
37. The company commander establishes and executes a rest plan for all company members (particularly leaders and key personnel) based on unit SOP, mission analysis, and current orders.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5205 TANK-CMDC-5201 TANK-CMDC-5204
TANK-CMDC-5206

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-6207: Conduct Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company is responsible for conducting reconnaissance for its own use. As reconnaissance is an enabling operation, it is conducted as part of all company operations, particularly in the offense. Reconnaissance during the offense is conducted both prior to and after enemy contact is made. Reconnaissance prior to contact is conducted to either secure tactical movement or to gather combat information. In simple terms, reconnaissance is conducted to gain visual or physical contact with the enemy first. This fundamental is crucial to maintaining the company's initiative and tactical momentum. During operations the company can conduct three methods of reconnaissance: mounted, dismounted, and by fire (direct or indirect). In addition to reconnaissance performed as part of another type of operation, there are four forms of reconnaissance that are conducted as distinct operations: route reconnaissance, zone reconnaissance, area reconnaissance, and reconnaissance in force. Although not optimally organized for reconnaissance, the company can conduct route, zone, or area reconnaissance.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The company is tasked to obtain information about the enemy and terrain in order for higher headquarters to plan and execute operations. The company is task organized with a platoon of infantry. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the

company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE), rules of interaction (ROI), and priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) from the battalion headquarters. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company executes a route, zone, or area reconnaissance IAW the OPORD/FRAGO and employs a combination of mounted and dismounted elements as well as reconnaissance by direct and indirect fires. The company obtains all PIRs on the enemy and area specified and reconnoiters without exposing the strength, location, and intentions of the main body. The company completes reconnaissance and reports all information by the time directed. The company complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander selects the appropriate method of reconnaissance based on map reconnaissance and analysis of the mission: area reconnaissance, zone reconnaissance, or route reconnaissance.
2. The commander plans the reconnaissance .
3. Develop reconnaissance and security tasks.
4. Use separate sectors, converging routes, or fan techniques for zone reconnaissance .
5. Identify priority intelligence requirements (PIRs).
6. Plan use of attached intelligence assets.
7. Leaders coordinate with the battalion staff, adjacent units, and forward units.
8. The reconnaissance does not conflict with the battalion operation.
9. The reconnaissance does not duplicate any current effort.
10. The reconnaissance does not hinder or conflict with adjacent or forward unit operations.
11. All units in the area are informed of the time and location for the departure, composition, conduct , and time of return of the reconnaissance.
12. The company moves to the organizational rally point (ORP) (initial ORP for zone reconnaissance).
13. Move through friendly units and then to the ORP.
14. Conduct actions at the ORP.
15. The company reconnoiters.
16. The company conducts surveillance.
17. Find all enemy and terrain information required by the commander.
18. Maintain observation on named area of interest/target area of interest (NAI/TAI) as directed.
19. Adjust fire on enemy if part of mission.
20. At the completion of the reconnaissance, all information is consolidated, disseminated within the company, and reported to higher headquarters per the OPORD or IAW unit SOP.
21. All PIRs are sent by secure transmission.
22. The company returns to friendly units.
23. The company is debriefed regarding intelligence information by the battalion S-2.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5208

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CMDC-6208: Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: Reconnaissance is a mission undertaken to obtain, by visual observation or other detection methods, information about the activities and resources of an enemy.

CONDITION: During tactical operations as part of a battalion task force, the company/team (CO/TM) receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct reconnaissance of an urban area. The higher commander's guidance specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the CO/TM. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity, when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and the international media may be present in the area. Contact is expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company/team conducts reconnaissance IAW the commander's order and intent to gain and report detailed, timely reconnaissance information concerning threat forces, source information of power/influence, key municipal infrastructure, and the physical environment to include streets and subsurface systems in the urban area. The company/team develops or revises an urban operations sketch. The company/team reconnoiters from the surrounding area toward the urban area to gain information on the objective. The company/team infiltrates surveillance teams and conducts urban patrolling as necessary, and accomplishes urban reconnaissance tasks IAW the reconnaissance focus and tempo. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLP) to develop the order.
2. The commander analyzes higher headquarters' intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) about the urban battlespace to be reconnoitered.

3. Analyze manmade terrain and supporting infrastructure to include the four physical dimensions of urban battlespace: airspace over the city, supersurface buildings and structures, surface, and subsurface infrastructure.
4. Analyze threat compositions and dispositions.
5. Analyze impact of noncombatants on operations.
6. Formulate information requirements (IR) that assist with preparation of an urban operations sketch.
7. The company develops or revises an urban operations sketch that includes at a minimum: a reference system, naming conventions, and key terrain.
8. Key terrain includes: safe havens (hospitals, police stations, embassies, and other friendly facilities), hazardous areas, construction sites, dangerous intersections, bridges, known criminal areas, parks, industrial complexes, airports, avenues of approach, main highways and/or improved road surfaces, escape and evasion routes/corridors, and subsurface routes.
9. Commander issues order.
10. Address civilian situation to include as applicable: locations of governmental and nongovernmental headquarters; composition and dispositions of regional (state) and local military and/or law enforcement organizations; factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known friendly, neutrals, and belligerents; description of uniforms, vehicles, insignia, markings, and equipment to include weapons, NODs, and their capabilities; current location of weapon holding areas, staging areas, and/or encampments; locations of police stations, food distribution points, power generation/transformer facilities, governmental and political party headquarters; and locations of media outlets and communications networks.
11. Address terrain issues to include: effects on fields of fire and effective ranges of weapon systems; effects on use of higher headquarters tactical unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) and other aviation assets for reconnaissance, transportation, resupply, and fire support; use of rooftops for observation, ambushes, and other actions against forces; basements and subsurface systems for cover, concealment, infiltration, and sustainment activities; and general composition of the building and road surfaces.
12. Address weather to include effects on friendly and threat weapon systems.
13. Address location, disposition, and missions of friendly forces operating on flanks or within area of operations (AO).
14. Company commander's intent includes at a minimum: key tasks that must be completed for mission success; purpose of reconnaissance in relation to the higher mission; and end state for reconnaissance.
15. Scheme of maneuver describes at a minimum: focus and tempo for reconnaissance; if available, human intelligence (HUMINT) collection plan that focuses on the location of reliable sources of information near the urban area to gain the most current situation in the AO; combination of techniques (stealth or aggressive reconnaissance and covert surveillance) to establish the reconnaissance tempo and gather information on and in the urban area; reconnaissance movement formation and tasks to include infiltration and exfiltration routes; route(s) with march order and control measures for movement to the urban area; requirements for dismounted reconnaissance; synchronization of aerial (if available) and ground reconnaissance assets; and fire support plan.
16. Fire support plan includes: priorities for fire support; command and control (C2) for each fire support asset; buildings that can be used for observation posts (OP); location of hazardous sites such as fuel and

industrial storage facilities and gas distribution lines; where building masking, power lines, or communications towers degrade global positioning system (GPS) and compass functioning; and requirements for higher echelon radar coverage.

17. Integrate additional higher echelon assets into reconnaissance effort.
18. Provide instructions for target acquisition.
19. Publish rules of engagement (ROE)/rules of interaction (ROI).
20. Publish bypass criteria.
21. Identify priorities for service support and description of CSS operations.
22. Identify communication plan that accounts for urban terrain.
23. Commander provides an R&S matrix and graphics
24. Prior to departure, company/team informs all units in area and on flanks of times and location for departure, composition, zone/area(s), and time of return (if applicable) for the reconnaissance.
25. The company/team reconnoiters progressively from the surrounding area toward the urban area to gain information on the objective.
26. Reconnoiter outlying towns and villages along the avenue of approach to the reconnaissance LOA.
27. If available, conduct HUMINT collection to provide information of belligerent factions and identify noncombatants.
28. Coordinate tactical UAV reconnaissance of routes and objectives, if available.
29. The company/team commander refines routes and reconnaissance objectives as he gains and assesses new information.
30. Company/team infiltrates surveillance teams, as necessary.
31. Select fixed urban hide sites.
32. Establish sufficient hide/surveillance sites that observe the objective area.
33. Company/team conducts urban patrolling, as necessary.
34. Patrols are organized with reconnaissance and security elements.
35. Leaders conduct preliminary reconnaissance to: identify insertion and extraction routes; identify choke points along routes; and identify escape and evasion routes provided by lateral and parallel streets.
36. Conduct mounted patrolling.
37. Conduct dismounted patrolling.
38. Conduct subsurface patrolling.
39. Adjust patrol routes and vehicle speed to avoid repetitive patterns and promote deception.
40. Ensure positions and status of dismounted elements are transmitted to digitally equipped mounted elements, if necessary.
41. Continue to improve the urban sketch throughout the reconnaissance based on the analysis of available intelligence, initial reconnaissance, and decisions made concerning the above considerations.
42. Reconnoiter all terrain surrounding the urban area, focusing on approach routes for mounted and dismounted forces.
43. Inspect and classify all bridges on the approaches to the urban area.
44. Locate fords or crossing sites near all bridges on the approaches to the urban area.
45. Inspect and classify all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts on the approaches to the urban area.
46. Locate obstacles, barriers, and mines on the approaches and identifies bypasses.
47. Locate bypasses around the urban area.
48. Locate contaminated areas and bypasses.
49. Locate support positions for direct and indirect weapon systems.

50. Locate entry points or points of penetration to the urban area.
51. Verify the density and composition of the urban area.
52. Locate key terrain especially buildings and facilities that support further reconnaissance and other operations.
53. Verify the location of hazard areas such as gas distribution lines, fuel storage, chemical productions, and other industrial facilities.
54. Verify the location of communication facilities.
55. Locate retrans sites, if necessary.
56. Locate and identify threat forces within and around the urban area.
57. Identify sources of power and/or influence (within capability).
58. Commander adjusts reconnaissance tempo during operations.
59. Company/team maintains C2.
60. Company/team reports reconnaissance information IAW order and/or SOP.
61. Commander forwards his assessment of the AO to the higher headquarters, including at a minimum: hostile contact, source information of power and/or influence, threat composition and activity, areas of vulnerability to friendly forces, key terrain and municipal infrastructure, approach routes for mounted and dismounted forces, entry points or points of penetration to the urban area, density and composition of the urban area, danger (hazard) areas, communications facilities/retrans sites, and the needs of society.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5208 TANK-TAC-5813

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
6. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections
7. MCWP 2-21 Imagery Intelligence
8. MCWP 2-22 Signals Intelligence
9. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-6401: Conduct Fire Support Coordination in the Offense

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company commander establishes a Fire Support Team (FiST) comprised of a FiST leader (Executive Officer), an artillery Forward Observer (FO), Forward Air Controller (FAC), and mortar Forward Observer (FO). The company commander utilizes the FiST to integrate artillery, aviation and mortar combat support with the company's tactical maneuver plan.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary

order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct offensive operations. The enemy is dug in and defending in deliberate positions and has indirect fire and close air support assets available. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company FiST plans and executes available indirect fire and close air support assets to support the company's scheme of maneuver and cover likely enemy counterattack routes and key terrain. The company fire plan suppresses/neutralizes/destroys enemy weapons systems or fires to allow the unit to accomplish its mission. Friendly fires do not cause any friendly casualties.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander establishes the Fire Support Team (FiST) consisting of the following: FiST Leader (Company Executive Officer), Artillery Forward Observer, Forward Air Controller, and Mortar Forward Observer.
2. Company commander and FiST gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
3. Develop a fire support plan in concert with the battalion commander's plans, guidance, and intent.
4. Integrate battalion fire support plan into company operations to include maneuvering of the FO's and FAC to ensure they are in position to execute tasks specified by the battalion.
5. Augment the fires of the battalion commander's guidance to ensure that fires are planned from LD/LC to the objective, on the objective, and beyond the objective.
6. Develop a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher headquarters) addressing targets in depth, timing, and control of those fires.
7. The company commander conducts reconnaissance and plan fires for the offense.
8. Locate enemy positions.
9. Identify dominant terrain.
10. Target enemy avenues of approach.
11. Establish targets of concern (those targets that the maneuver commander feels will deter the success of the maneuver if not fired on).
12. Identify possible enemy locations.
13. Approve company fire support and distribute to platoon commanders as part of the operations order.
14. Company executes fire support.
15. All available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result IAW the fire plan.
16. Available fires engage critical/vulnerable areas of enemy formations or positions.
17. Friendly fires stop or slow enemy movement.
18. Friendly fires sufficiently suppress enemy fires
19. The volume of fire accomplishes the essential fire support task.
20. Friendly supporting fires do not result in fratricide.
21. Friendly forces are not silhouetted by friendly smoke.

22. Fire support priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses.
23. The company commander coordinates the use of all fire support assets when appropriate, to support his maneuver.
24. The company reports battle damage caused by supporting fires to the battalion CP at the close of each mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5811	TANK-TAC-5808	TANK-CMDC-5206
TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-CMDC-5208	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
7. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
8. MCRP 3-16A Tactics, Techniques, And Procedures For The Targeting Process
9. MCRP 3-16B The Joint Targeting Process and Procedures for Targeting Time-Critical Targets
10. MCRP 3-16C Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Combined Arms Commander
11. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
12. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
13. MCWP 3-16.1 Artillery Operations
14. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
15. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
16. MCWP 3-22.2 Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD)
17. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
18. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-6402: Conduct Fire Support Coordination in the Defense

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company commander establishes a Fire Support Team (FiST) comprised of a FiST leader (Executive Officer), an artillery Forward Observer (FO), a Forward Air Controller (FAC), and a mortar Forward Observer (FO). The company commander utilizes the FiST to integrate artillery, aviation and mortar combat support with the company's tactical maneuver plan.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to occupy battle positions as part of a task force defense. The enemy is expected to attack the company position with armored and mechanized forces and has indirect fire and close air support assets available. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The

company has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company FiST plans and executes available indirect fire and close air support assets to support the company's defensive scheme. The company fire plan suppresses/neutralizes/destroys enemy weapons systems or fires to allow the unit to accomplish its mission. Friendly fires do not cause any friendly casualties.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander establishes the Fire Support Team (FiST) consisting of the following: FiST Leader (Company Executive Officer), Artillery Forward Observer, Forward Air Controller, and Mortar Forward Observer.
2. Company commander and FiST gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
3. Develop a fire support plan in concert with the battalion commander's plans, guidance, and intent.
4. Integrate battalion fire support plan into company operations to include maneuvering of the FO's and FAC to ensure they are in position to execute tasks specified by the battalion.
5. Augment the fires of the battalion commander's guidance to ensure that fires are planned from LD/LC to the objective, on the objective, and beyond the objective.
6. Develop a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher headquarters) addressing targets in depth, timing, and control of those fires.
7. Select the position of the final protective fires (FPF).
8. Target possible enemy dead space in the engagement area (EA).
9. Establish targets to support planned obstacles.
10. The company commander conducts reconnaissance and plan fires for the defense.
11. Locate enemy positions.
12. Identify dominant terrain.
13. Target enemy avenues of approach.
14. Establish targets of concern (those targets that the maneuver commander feels will deter the success of the maneuver if not fired on).
15. Identify possible enemy locations.
16. Approve company fire support and distribute to platoon commanders as part of the operations order.
17. The company executes fire support plan in the defense.
18. Synchronize direct and indirect fires using predetermined targets and signals.
19. Fire planned targets IAW the fire plan.
20. Execute supporting fires in a timely manner and accomplish the desired result.
21. Indirect fire stops or slows the enemy advance.
22. Friendly supporting fires do not result in fratricide.
23. Fire support priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses.
24. The company commander requests fixed wing and rotary wing CAS and naval gunfire support when appropriate.

25. The company reports battle damage caused by indirect fire to the battalion CP at the close of each mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5816	TANK-TAC-5814	TANK-CMDC-5206
TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-CMDC-5208	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
7. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
8. MCRP 3-16A Tactics, Techniques, And Procedures For The Targeting Process
9. MCRP 3-16B The Joint Targeting Process and Procedures for Targeting Time-Critical Targets
10. MCRP 3-16C Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Combined Arms Commander
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
13. MCWP 3-16.1 Artillery Operations
14. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
15. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
16. MCWP 3-22.2 Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD)
17. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
18. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-6403: Emplace an Obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: During countermobility operations, obstacles are constructed to deny the enemy's ability to execute his scheme of maneuver. Commonly used obstacles include minefields, wire obstacles, AT ditches, road craters, abatises, and log cribs. Engineers can also reinforce terrain and existing obstacles to disrupt, fix, turn, or block the enemy force. The tank company, with its attached infantry squads, will often assist engineers in the emplacement of obstacles. Additional coordination measures between the company team commander and the engineer platoon commander include work site security plan, engineer disengagement criteria, passage of lines procedures, and actions upon indirect fire or direct fire contact.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and is defending a battle position as part of a battalion defense. The company is ordered to emplace a hasty protective minefield augmented with

triple-strand concertina, and reinforced with a tank ditch. All necessary unit personnel and engineering equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company, with engineer assistance, completes the minefield, emplaces the wire obstacle, and constructs the ditch in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company ensures that the obstacle is tied into terrain, provides massed direct and indirect fire on the enemy delayed by the obstacle and integrates and synchronizes combat support based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The unit complies with the ROE and or ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander gains and maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The company commander, based on the battalion commander's orders and METT-TC, identifies a site for an obstacle that can be covered by observation and/or direct fires from the company's positions.
3. The company commander finds out immediately from the battalion commander where he wants the obstacle system.
4. Request guidance from the engineers as to the appropriate emplacement of obstacles.
5. Ensure that obstacles are covered by direct fire weapon systems.
6. Company constructs the obstacles.
7. Company commander organizes engineers and work crews.
8. Initiate work on obstacle system without delay.
9. Company commander coordinates with engineers to efficiently utilize engineering equipment (D-7, ACE, SEE tractor).
10. The company commander directs a Marine leader to supervise emplacement of the obstacle.
11. Stake out limits of minefield, ditch, and wire obstacle.
12. The crews selected assist engineers in emplacing the wire obstacle and minefield.
13. Place mines so that antitank mines block likely armor avenues of approach and antipersonnel mines block dismounted avenues of approach.
14. Provide security for the obstacle under construction.
15. Wire is emplaced to the rear of the ditch or mines.
16. Vehicle and/or dismounted fighting positions are enhanced as time permits.
17. Engineers provide the company commander with a record of minefields.
18. Engineers focus efforts on the construction of the antitank ditch.
19. Antitank ditch is constructed to be a minimum of 300m long, 1.5m deep, and 3.3m wide.
20. Company commander reports completion of obstacle to higher headquarters IAW SOP.
21. Unit continues the mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6823 TANK-CBTS-5401 TANK-TAC-5817

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-102 Countermobility
4. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
5. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
8. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
9. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
13. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-6404: Employ Engineer Assets

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The act of coordinating and integrating engineer assets into a ground scheme of maneuver.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The unit has an engineer platoon and may have artillery and air defense platoon in direct support (DS) or attached. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit staff develops an engineer estimate in accordance with standing operating procedure, the appropriate references, the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The engineer is integrated into the unit staff and participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP). The engineer, with input from the unit staff, conducts the Engineer Battlefield Assessment (EBA) and develops the engineer plan. The engineer recommends the allocation of engineer assets that supports the unit commander's intent and scheme of maneuver. The unit engineer monitors the battle. The engineer makes operational reports through the unit S-3 and provides other required reports through engineer channels as necessary. The unit staff considers ROE and or ROI during planning. The unit staff enforces ROE and or ROI during execution.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The engineer, with assistance of staff, conducts battlespace assessment as part of the MCPP.

3. Obtain commander's planning guidance.
4. Develop the EBA.
5. Combine the analysis of the terrain, enemy capabilities, and friendly capabilities to form facts and assumptions about the following: likely enemy engineer effort and the most probable enemy course of action (COA), potential enemy vulnerabilities, critical friendly requirements, and the impact these factors have on the mission.
6. Focus on the following components of the basic order and engineer annex when the mission is received: the enemy situation, mission paragraph, task organization, and the logistics paragraph and the engineer annex.
7. Issue a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate engineer elements.
8. Develop the asset allocation.
9. War game the engineer plan.
10. Recommend a COA.
11. The engineer assists the rest of the staff in producing the order or plan.
12. The engineer develops the Engineer Annex to the OPORD.
13. The engineer receives subordinate unit's obstacle plans and incorporates them into the unit obstacle data base.
14. The engineer participates in the OPORD brief to the assembled command group.
15. The engineer prepares for operations.
16. The engineer monitors the battle.
17. The engineer makes operational report through the unit S-3 and provides other required reports through engineer channels as necessary.
18. The engineer controls engineer assets not task organized to subordinate elements.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5814 TANK-TAC-5816 TANK-TAC-5817
TANK-TAC-5823

REFERENCES:
1. FM 5-102 Countermobility
2. FM 5-103 Survivability
3. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
4. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
7. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
8. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. MCWP 3-17.1 River Crossing Operations
13. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

TANK-CBTS-6405: Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect itself against chemical or biological attack based on the enemy's capabilities.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a chemical attack in its area of operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company prepares for a chemical/biological attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit constructs or reinforces positions, briefs or inspects personnel, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander gains and maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The company receives a warning to prepare for a chemical/biological attack.
3. The company commander issues a warning order.
4. Order Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with second skin, and gloves (MOPP 4).
5. Company Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
6. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
7. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
8. Tank crews prepare their vehicles.
9. Store, in the vehicle, water, rations, and equipment not being used.
10. Place a poncho or tarpaulin over the turret of the tank protecting weapons systems or vital equipment.
11. Platoon commanders ensure that designated personnel conduct monitoring.
12. Conduct periodic monitoring with a chemical agent detector kit.
13. Conduct continuous monitoring with a chemical alarm.
14. Forward results to the company commander
15. Platoon commanders inspect to ensure that their platoons are prepared for a chemical attack.
16. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
17. Company personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
18. Company conducts a rehearsal time permitting.
19. Company takes cover.
20. Company commander reports the results of monitoring IAW SOP and guidance from higher headquarters.
21. The company is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-5402

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
13. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
14. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
15. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-6406: React to a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a chemical or biological attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to mitigate the effects of an attack.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force or is operating independently and must respond immediately to a chemical or biological attack, when the unit's automatic chemical agent alarm system(s) sounds, detector paper changes color, and/or a Marine displays symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning. All necessary unit personnel and decontamination equipment are available. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Company members react to the chemical or biological attack within time standards and give the appropriate alarm. All unmasked Marines put on their protective masks and other MOPP gear. They assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes and put the vehicle overpressurization system into operation. The company initiates use of the M256/M256A1 chemical agent detector kits to determine the type of agent and forwards a NBC-1 chemical report to higher headquarters. As soon as mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) permits, the company conducts unmasking procedures. The company suffers no casualties as a result of heat injury or improper preparation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company Marines who recognize the indicators of a chemical/biological attack (automatic alarms [M8 series], detector paper, and poisoning symptoms) respond and alert the company.
2. Give the appropriate alarm for chemical or biological attack (vocal, non-vocal, or visual).
3. Put on protective mask (with second skin) within 15 seconds.
4. Company Marines take immediate protective actions.
5. Put on MOPP level 4 clothing/equipment within 8 minutes.
6. Move inside vehicles and place hatches (if applicable) in the closed position to protect against gross contamination.
7. Place the vehicle overpressurization system into operation.
8. Company commander ensures that the company implements additional actions to respond to the attack as appropriate.
9. Initiate monitoring with chemical agent detectors (M256 kits and chemical agent monitor (CAM) to determine the type(s) of chemical(s) employed and the extent of contamination.
10. Direct individuals to decontaminate their skin, as necessary, when the tactical situation permits.
11. Direct company members to administer self-aid and/or buddy-aid as necessary, if symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning are detected.
12. Direct the detection and identification of surfaces that may require decontamination.
13. Direct Marines to conduct wipe down and perform spray down of personal equipment with decontamination apparatuses, as necessary, when the tactical situation permits.
14. Mark the contaminated area(s) with the NBC contamination marking set, according to the SOP.
15. In coordination with the company team NBC NCO, the commander reports the situation to the battalion task force headquarters as necessary.
16. Submit initial chemical NBC-1 report (voice and/or digital).
17. The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type agent/type of burst/delivery means), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer) to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).
18. Submit follow-up NBC-1 reports and updated SITREPs (voice and/or digital) as necessary.
19. Maintain the common operational picture (COP).
20. Company continues the mission.
21. Continue operation in MOPP 4 or buttoned up (with the overpressurization system activated) until ordered by the commander to initiate unmasking procedures.
22. Adjust work rate IAW MOPP level and related conditions.
23. On order, initiate and execute the following unmasking procedures with M256/M256A1 detector kit.
24. All platoon initiate testing with M256/M256A1 detector kits and M8 or M9 detector paper.
25. Use the detector kits to supplement unmasking procedures, the kit does not detect all agents; therefore, proper unmasking procedures, which take approximately 15 minutes, must still be used.
26. All platoons report results to the company commander.
27. On order from the company commander, platoons initiate the unmasking procedures.

28. The senior person selects one or two Marines to start unmasking procedures, if possible moving to a shady area to prevent pupils from giving false symptoms.
29. Selected Marines unmask for 5 minutes, clear, and reseal masks.
30. Observe Marines for 10 minutes, if no symptoms appear, request permission from the commander to signal the "ALL CLEAR" and unmask.
31. Watch all Marines for possible delayed symptoms; always have first-aid treatment immediately available in case it is needed.
32. On order, initiate and execute the following unmasking procedures if a M256/M256A1 kit is not available:
33. All platoons initiate testing for liquid contamination using M8 or M9 chemical detection paper.
34. All platoons report results to company commander.
35. On order, from the company commander, platoons initiate unmasking procedures.
36. The senior person selects one or two Marines to take a deep breath, break their mask seals, and keep their eyes wide open.
37. After 15 seconds, the Marines clear and reseal their masks; platoon leadership observes Marines for 10 minutes.
38. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break seals, take two or three breaths, and clear and reseal the masks; platoon leadership observes Marines for 10 minutes.
39. If no symptoms appear, the selected Marines unmask for 5 minutes and then remask.
40. If no symptoms appear within 10 minutes after this remasking cycle, request permission from the commander to give the "ALL CLEAR" signal and unmask; continue to observe the selected Marines in case delayed symptoms develop.
41. On order, move to an operational or thorough decontamination site.
42. Maintain security throughout operation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-6405 TANK-TAC-6806

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-CBTS-5402 TANK-CBTS-5403
TANK-CBTS-5410

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
7. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
8. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
13. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
14. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
15. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

TANK-CBTS-6407: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes to protect it and harden equipment against a nuclear attack. The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and, the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: Company members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, or the company team is alerted to a nuclear attack. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company takes immediate actions to minimize the initial effects of a nuclear detonation within its area of operations and then continues its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Mounted company elements take immediate protective action within 30 seconds.
2. Position tanks behind best available cover with front of vehicles facing the blast and the main gun pointing away from the blast.
3. Close all vehicle hatches.
4. Lock the brakes.
5. Close breech and ballistic doors.
6. Secure loose equipment inside the vehicle.
7. Reposition vehicles behind protective cover (if time permits).
8. Shut down all engines and turn off power.
9. Remain protected until blast effects have passed.
10. Dismounted Marines take immediate protective action.
11. Drop face down to the ground with heads pointed toward the direction of the blast, all exposed skin covered, and eyes closed.
12. Remain on the ground until blast effects have passed.
13. Company commander implements SOPs to accomplish the following tasks.
14. Reestablish communications with all company elements and battalion.
15. Prepare and forward NBC-1 report to battalion headquarters.
16. The report must include lines BRAVO, DELTA, HOTEL, and either CHARLIE or FOXTROT of NBC-1 report.
17. Implement continuous monitoring.
18. Send updated SITREPs to battalion headquarters as necessary.
19. Company conducts reorganization.
20. Identify threats and evacuate injured personnel.
21. Redistribute personnel (as needed).
22. Conduct essential maintenance.
23. Evacuate fatalities.
24. Company continues mission IAW OPORD/FRAGO.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-5404

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-6408: React to a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force or is operating independently and must respond immediately to a nuclear attack. Company elements observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, a monitoring device detects a nuclear hazard, or the unit receives a strike warning (STRIKEWARN). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the company commander is reached and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The company reacts to an unwarned nuclear attack.
2. Leader's supervise unit's response to nuclear attack and determine status of casualties.
3. The company commander sends a NBC-1 report to the battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.
4. The unit takes action following nuclear detonation.
5. Marines check for injuries and give first aid.
6. Marines monitor each other for initial symptoms of radiation poisoning
7. Leaders report unit personnel and equipment status to immediate superiors.
8. Company places radios back into operation and monitors nets.
9. Vehicles and other equipment are returned to full combat-ready status.
10. Designated Marines begin continuous monitoring with radiacmeters.

11. Leaders reestablish security.
12. Check dosimeter device readings.
13. When there is no longer a radiation hazard, only the senior leader present announces, "ALL CLEAR".
14. The unit detects radiation.
15. Marines shout, "FALLOUT!", upon detecting radiation or hearing the command.
16. All Marines are aware of the radiation hazard.
17. Leaders collect readings on radiacmeters and dosimeters from Marines and report readings to the company commander.
18. All Marines with dosimeters and leaders know acceptable radiation levels.
19. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each radiacmeter and radiac set.
20. The company performs periodic or continuous monitoring IAW unit SOP.
21. The company begins continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when a nuclear burst is reported or radiation at 1cGy per hour is detected by periodic monitoring.
22. Stationary units stop continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when dose rate falls below 1cGy per hour.
23. Moving units perform continuous monitoring until movement is completed.
24. Radiation levels are checked whenever the unit moves into a new area and before Marines dismount.
25. The company takes actions to reduce exposure to further radiation.
26. Floors of vehicles are covered with a layer of sandbags.
27. At least 24 hours of uncontaminated food and water for each Marine is kept on hand.
28. The company will bypass the area unless the mission requires contaminated area to be traversed.
29. When crossing contaminated area: pick the route that allows the fastest travel consistent with the mission; ensure doors, windows, and hatches of vehicles are closed, consistent with the security requirements; go as fast as possible through the area while maintaining safety and security; and employ staggered column formation when possible (to avoid throwing dust onto trailing vehicles) and increase the interval between vehicles.
30. Marine will eat and drink from approved sources.
31. Marines wear a handkerchief or scarf over their noses and mouths to avoid inhaling contaminated dust.
32. Leaders monitor radiation levels for each crew and try to reduce exposure to higher radiation dose levels.
33. Marines wear rubber overshoes (not chemical overboots) outside of vehicles in contaminated areas if possible; overshoes are stored outside vehicles before Marines reenter.
34. Avoid handling contaminated material.
35. The company monitors the communications nets to stay informed on the contamination threat in the AO.
36. The company conducts decontamination.
37. The unit performs partial decontamination by washing and brushing off fallout.
38. Essential items are decontaminated first (driver's area, gunner's sight, weapons).
39. Leaders supervise partial decontamination, ensuring the unit can perform its assigned mission without exposure to excessive radiation.
40. The company commander coordinates with higher headquarters for operational decontamination (as soon as the tactical situation permits).
41. The company continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-6407 TANK-TAC-6806

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-CBTS-5404 TANK-CBTS-5405
TANK-CBTS-5410

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
13. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
14. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-6409: Cross an NBC Contaminated Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The protective measures a unit takes to move through an area where the presence of chemical or biological agents or radioactive material is identified.

CONDITION: While conducting tactical operations lead elements of the company detect NBC contamination, or the unit is directed by the battalion task force commander to cross a NBC contaminated area. The type of agent employed is not known (chemical/biological) or the operational exposure guidance (OEG) is specified by the battalion commander. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company takes appropriate measures to prepare for movement. It enters, moves through, and exits the contaminated area along the specified route. The company reports the presence of any type of NBC contamination to the battalion commander. It monitors and reports dosage rates and radiacmeter readings as directed in the OEG. It sustains no NBC related casualties.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company prepares for movement to cross radiologically contaminated area.
2. Take actions to provide extra shielding (such as using wet sandbags on the vehicle floor).
3. Stow externally carried equipment inside vehicles or cover it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.
4. Check radiac instruments to ensure IM-93s are zeroed or DT-236s are

preset.
5. Assume MOPP 4.
6. Close and secure vehicle hatches if METT-TC permits.
7. Activate NBC overpressurization systems if in the closed hatch configuration.
8. Company prepares for movement to cross a chemically or biologically contaminated area.
9. Stow externally carried equipment inside vehicles or cover it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.
10. Assume MOPP 4.
11. Attach M9 paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of chemical contamination.
12. Close and secure vehicle hatches if METT-TC permits.
13. Activate NBC overpressurization systems if in closed hatch configuration.
14. Company crosses the contaminated area.
15. Conduct movement along route designated by company commander.
16. Avoid stirring up dust, if possible.
17. Increase interval and lateral dispersion between vehicles if terrain permits.
18. If applicable, monitor radiac instruments for radiation exposure and report OEG information to the commander IAW SOP.
19. If applicable, monitor chemical alarms and M9 paper.
20. If applicable, mark contaminated area.
21. Sustain no NBC related casualties.
22. Company exits the contaminated area.
23. Report exit of the contaminated area to the battalion commander.
24. Submit NBC-1 report with radiation and/or chemical/biological data.
25. If NBC monitoring results are negative, initiate unmasking procedures IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP.
26. Zero IM-93s and/or reset DT-236s.
27. Conduct coordination for operational or thorough decontamination, as applicable.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CBTS-6406	TANK-CBTS-6408

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CBTS-5410	TANK-CBTS-5403
TANK-CBTS-5405		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
13. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
14. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

15. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
16. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-6410: Conduct Operational Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A decontamination operation that consists of two techniques, the mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange and the vehicle/equipment wash-down. Decontamination carried out by an individual and/or a unit, restricted to specific parts of operationally essential equipment, material and/or working areas, in order to minimize contact and transfer hazards and to sustain operations. This may include decontamination of the individual beyond the scope of immediate decontamination, as well as decontamination of mission-essential spares and limited terrain decontamination.

CONDITION: While the company is conducting tactical operations, the enemy employs NBC weapons against the company resulting in contamination. The company reacts to the attack and is required to conduct immediate and operational decontamination before continuing its mission. The battalion NBC officer and/or NCO are available to assist the company in decontamination activities. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company performs immediate decontamination and conducts tactical movement to the decontamination site. The unit performs operational decontamination, effectively decontaminating all areas without spreading contamination or suffering additional casualties. The company maintains security throughout the operation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company conducts immediate decontamination.
2. Conduct skin decontamination within one minute after being contaminated: conduct chemical decontamination using the M258A1/M291 kit; conduct biological decontamination using soap and water; conduct radiological decontamination using soap and water.
3. Assume MOPP level 4.
4. Conduct operator's spraydown.
5. Conduct personal wipedown: wipedown begins within 15 minutes after first exposure; contaminated Marines wipe down masks, hoods, gloves, helmets, and other essential equipment using the M258A1/M291 kit; platoons conduct chemical/biological wipedown; decontaminate personal weapons, paying particular attention to plastic handguards and stocks; avoid sharp objects that could cause rips or tears in garments; platoons conduct radiological wipedown; exposed Marines brush off any dry contaminants from their gear, mask carrier, clothing, and gear; and avoid spreading contamination into clean areas.
6. Conduct chemical/biological spraydown: spraydown, employing the M11 or M13 decontamination apparatus (DAP), begin within 15 minutes after personal wipedown is completed; crews scrub STB or soap and water onto contaminated surfaces and leave it in place at least 30 minutes before removal; and decontaminate only the surfaces crewmen must touch while operating their

equipment.

7. Conduct radiological spraydown: remove gross contamination such as mud, dirt, or dust from vehicles using available items (sticks, shovels, brooms); use available items (such as brooms and tree branches) to remove additional contamination; water is effective for removing contamination, but runoff must be strictly controlled; and use ditches to contain runoff.
8. Mark the contaminated area.
9. Company commander (in coordination with NBC NCO) coordinates and plans for operational decontamination.
10. Request operational decontamination support.
11. Verify location of the decontamination site, movement routes to the site, and arrival times at the site for advance party and main body.
12. Establish communications with battalion NBC team.
13. Coordinate with battalion task force commander for relief from current mission.
14. Issue movement, security, and decontamination instructions to the company IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP.
15. Company NBC NCO and advance party (including company supply section) prepare decontamination site.
16. Link up with battalion NBC staff and at decontamination site.
17. In coordination with battalion NBC staff, establish vehicle washdown site.
18. Prepare MOPP gear exchange site at a clean area upwind from vehicle washdown.
19. Coordinate linkup with the company at the decontamination site.
20. Ensure the company supply section or the battalion NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange, including the following for all contamination: four long-handled brushes; one large piece of plastic; one cutting tool; plastic bags; replacement chemical protective overgarment, overboots, gloves, and helmet cover for each crewman; M9 paper; one decon 1 and one decon 2 wipe packet per person; one M295 SDK decon packet per person.
21. For chemical/biological contamination: one 5-gallon container of STB dry mix and one M258A1 or two M295 skin decontamination kits per person.
22. For radiological contamination: three 3-gallon containers, two sponges, soapy water and rinse water, paper towels, one IDK per person if water is not available.
23. Company conducts tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepares for operational decontamination.
24. Move to the predecontamination staging area (taking required precautions if route is contaminated).
25. Establish a perimeter defense.
26. Establish and maintain local security IAW SOP or commander's guidance.
27. Prepare vehicles for washdown: secure all external equipment, cover the gun muzzle, remove vegetation used as camouflage, remove large amounts of mud, close ballistic doors, and close all vehicle hatches.
28. Following vehicle preparation, drivers remain with their vehicles, other Marines dismount, either at the marshaling area or at a dismount point and move (using designated paths only) to the MOPP gear exchange site.
29. Company performs vehicle decontamination (this step is usually performed by drivers while other crewmen complete MOPP gear exchange).
30. Ensure vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
31. Follow guidance of site OIC/NCOIC in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
32. Assist decontamination team in decontaminating vehicles as required.
33. When washdown is complete, move vehicles to the designated holding area

upwind from decontamination site as directed by OIC/NCOIC.
34. Suffer no additional NBC casualties.
35. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
36. After vehicle decontamination is complete, drivers move to the MOPP gear exchange site and complete MOPP exchange.
37. Under supervision of the company NBC NCO, site OIC/NCOIC, or decontamination team, company conducts MOPP gear exchange.
38. Individual crewmen complete the following steps in sequence, using the buddy system: decontaminate and drop gear (weapon, helmet, LBE, mask carrier, and personal items); decontaminate hood and gloves, and roll up hood; remove overgarment/overshoes; remove gloves; put on clean overgarment; put on clean overboots/gloves; secure hood; and secure gear.
39. Suffer no additional NBC casualties.
40. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
41. Company completes decontamination activities.
42. Mount vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post-decontamination assembly area.
43. Follow additional guidance of OIC/NCOIC as required.
44. Reestablish security as directed by company commander.
45. Company commander ensures that the battalion decontamination crew covers, marks, and departs contaminated area.
46. Continue to monitor NBC situation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-6406 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-CBTS-5403 TANK-CBTS-5406

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
12. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
13. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
14. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
15. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
16. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
17. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
18. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-6411: React to Enemy Indirect Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures and steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of enemy indirect fires on combat power. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to an indirect fire attack. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The tank company reacts to an indirect fire attack in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP) or appropriate references. If moving, the unit continues movement until at least 300 meters from the impact area. If stationary, the unit takes cover within 10 seconds or moves out of the impact area within 3 minutes of the impact of the first round. The unit take no more than 10 percent casualties. The unit reports attack to higher headquarters.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The unit reacts to indirect fire while moving.
3. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("INCOMING" or appropriate code word).
4. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
5. All personnel close hatches and doors of vehicles within 5 seconds.
6. All elements continue direction of movement unless redirected by unit commander.
7. The unit reacts to indirect fire while stationary.
8. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("INCOMING" or appropriate code word).
9. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
10. All Marines are under cover within 10 seconds.
11. If directed, Marines mount vehicles within 3 minutes and move out to a rally point.
12. All vehicles move to a designated rally point at distance and direction given by the unit commander.
13. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
14. Marines or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within 5 minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
15. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the situation dictates.
16. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
17. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
18. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-TAC-6806

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-TAC-5805

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

TANK-CBTS-6412: Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The passive defensive measures or steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of an enemy air attack.

CONDITION: While conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force, the tank company observes hostile aircraft or receives a report that hostile aircraft are operating in the area. The tank company is not in the direct path of the attacking aircraft and is directed to take passive air defense measures. Weapons control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The tank company uses attack avoidance (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, cover, and concealment) to avoid detection and/or engagement by the hostile aircraft and/or damage limiting measures to minimize the effects of an air attack.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The tank company uses attack avoidance measures (dispersion, camouflage, cover, and concealment) and available resources to hide from hostile aircraft and limit vulnerability while stationary or moving.
2. Erect/install camouflage nets.
3. Use vegetation to camouflage vehicles.
4. Cover vehicle tracks.
5. Avoid silhouetting vehicles or positioning them against contrasting terrain.
6. Cover shiny objects with mud, tape, burlap sacks, or other materials.
7. Close ballistic shield doors.
8. If no cover and concealment is available, halt to reduce dust trail.
9. If occupying a tactical position, company employs appropriate damage limiting measures.
10. Ensure adequate dispersion when in an assembly area.
11. Occupy OPs (day and night) to provide early warning of approaching aircraft.
12. Establish and rehearse air attack alarms and procedures.
13. Vehicle crew or individual identifying the enemy aircraft alerts the company with a contact report containing the following elements: "CONTACT"; "BANDIT(S)"; cardinal direction (specify "NORTH," "EAST," "WEST," or "SOUTH"); report aircraft to higher headquarters.
14. If moving, company employs appropriate damage-limiting measures.

15. Maintain prescribed march speed and interval during road marches.
16. If company is identified by aircraft during the march, vehicles disperse, seek the nearest concealed position, and stop.
17. Stagger vehicles as necessary to avoid creating a linear target.
18. Employ terrain driving techniques, using the following whenever possible to prevent detection: folds of the earth, depressions, and covered and concealed routes.
19. Employ air guards to provide 360-degree observation, maintaining coverage until movement is completed.
20. Employ appropriate air attack alarms, drills, and procedures as necessary.
21. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified.
22. Vehicle crew or individual identifying the enemy aircraft alerts the company with a contact report containing the following elements: "CONTACT"; "BANDIT(S)"; cardinal direction (specify "NORTH," "EAST," "WEST," or "SOUTH"); report aircraft to higher headquarters.
23. Report aircraft to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-5408

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

TANK-CBTS-6413: React to Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active defensive measures and or steps taken by a unit to engage enemy aircraft in order to destroy it or reduce the effectiveness of its attack.

CONDITION: The tank company receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs) in the area. Company personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The unit is in a tactical position. Weapons control status is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The tank company destroys the attacking aerial platforms or forces them away from friendly positions. Time required to perform this task in MOPP 4 or blackout conditions is increased.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. While stationary, tank company (or element identifying hostile aerial platforms) takes combined arms air defense measures against non-attacking aerial platforms.
2. Alert unit to presence of hostile aircraft.

3. Occupy defensive positions.
4. Search the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.
5. Visually identify presence of aerial platforms in the area and report them to higher headquarters.
6. Company commander evaluates situation and directs engagement of aerial platforms if threat warrants.
7. Engage aerial platforms with all available small arms fires (rifles and machine guns).
8. Select aim points based on football-field lengths, if applicable (one football field equals approximately 91 meters); company uses preselected aim points when in a static position.
9. If the hostile aerial platform is a jet these measures apply: if the jet is crossing the area, aim two football fields in front of the aircraft's nose; if it is overhead, aim two football fields in front of the nose; if it is flying directly at friendly vehicles, aim slightly above the nose.
10. If the hostile aerial platform is a helicopter or UAV, these measures apply: if the platform is crossing overhead, aim one-half football field in front of its nose; if it is flying directly at friendly vehicles, aim slightly above the helicopter/UAV body; if it is hovering, aim directly at or slightly above the helicopter/UAV body.
11. Tanks employ MPAT rounds against either rotary or fixed-wing platforms.
12. Reload weapons following engagement of aircraft.
13. Send SITREP to higher headquarters.
14. Company commander evaluates situation and directs elements to move as necessary.
15. While stationary, company takes combined arms air defense measures against attacking aerial platforms.
16. Give air attack alarm.
17. Immediately engage attacking aerial platforms with all available personnel and weapons.
18. Reload weapons following engagement of aircraft.
19. OP personnel continue to scan their assigned sectors.
20. Send SITREP covering aircraft actions and casualties to higher headquarters.
21. Company commander evaluates situation and directs elements to move as necessary.
22. While moving, company takes combined arms air defense measures against non-attacking hostile aerial platforms.
23. Alert company to presence of hostile aircraft.
24. Disperse vehicles laterally and in depth.
25. Continue to move to covered and concealed positions.
26. Company commander directs all personnel not assigned to crew-served weapons to dismount and prepare to engage the aircraft or to increase dispersion.
27. On order, engage non-attacking aerial platforms.
28. Reload weapons following engagement of aircraft.
29. Company commander sends SITREP to higher headquarters.
30. While moving, company takes combined arms air defense measures during convoy movement.
31. Alert the company to presence of non-attacking hostile aerial platforms.
32. Give air attack alarm for attacking hostile aerial platforms.
33. Disperse vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road, if possible) and move to covered and concealed positions if the terrain permits.
34. Maintain vehicle intervals, increase interval dispersion, and/or use

evasive driving techniques.
35. Company commander directs personnel to engage with all available weapons on order of the senior individual present.
36. Automatically return fire with all available weapons per engagement procedures if an aircraft is attacking.
37. Tanks employ MPAT rounds against either rotary or fixed-wing platforms.
38. Reload weapons following the attack.
39. Company commander sends SITREP to higher headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-6412 TANK-TAC-6806

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-CBTS-5408 TANK-CBTS-5409

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

TANK-CSS-6501: Conduct Logistical Planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The role of combat service support (CSS) in any military unit is to sustain the force for continuous combat operations. In the company, the commander has ultimate responsibility for CSS. The XO and the Tank Leader are the team's primary CSS operators; they work closely with the task force staff to ensure they receive the required support for the company's assigned operations.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. The battalion commander issues a warning order to prepare for combat operations. The company commander and staff conduct logistical planning in preparation for sustained operations. The company has all weapons and equipment. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts logistical planning in accordance with standard operating procedures, the appropriate field manual, the order, and

higher commander's guidance. Within that support structure, the company must plan, prepare, and execute its portion of the battalion task force CSS plan. Concurrent with other operational planning, the company develops its CSS plan during the mission analysis and refines it in the war-gaming portion of the troop-leading process. CSS rehearsals are normally conducted at both task force and company levels to ensure the team receives a smooth, continuous flow of materiel and services. The company commander establishes the company combat trains under the control of the Tank Leader. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander plans CSS activities.
2. Estimate fuel and ammunition usage.
3. Identify a location for resupply as near as possible and allow adjustments as the tactical situation changes.
4. Identify locations of company trains based on the tactical situation and METT-TC and SOP.
5. Identify prestock points and supplies to be prepositioned.
6. Obtain requirements for cross leveling from battalion headquarters.
7. Company commander provides input and recommendations based on anticipated requirements to the battalion S-4.
8. Develop an estimate on resupply rates for mission specific supplies and equipment.
9. The company commander reports to the battalion per SOP on time as needed.
10. Report fuel and ammunition usage per SOP.
11. Report personnel losses per SOP.
12. Report special requirements such as resupply of NBC gear or vehicle system specific items.
13. Report operational specific items (such as obstacle-building equipment and materials system or explosives for conducting a breach).

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
6. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
10. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
11. MCWP 4-24 Commander's Guide to Maintenance
12. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CSS-6502: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Resupply is the act of replenishing stocks of all classes of supply in order to maintain the combat power of the unit. The S-4 section is responsible for and organized to process supply requests and to receive, issue, and temporarily store supplies. Distribution priorities for items in short supply are determined by the commander based on recommendations by the S-4 and the operational requirements of the task force.

CONDITION: During continuous tactical operations the company commander receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing the company to conduct routine resupply within 90 minutes of the arrival of the LOGPAC, or he determines that routine or emergency resupply is necessary. The company has a unit SOP with all required report formats. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company requests supplies/services necessary to restore it to fully mission capable status. It receives supplies/services as available and conducts distribution as necessary to company elements. The company completes the resupply operations within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO or by the company commander.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company Executive Officer (XO)/Tank Leader monitor supply status and report status as required by unit SOP.
2. Compile accurate supply status (by supply class) from leaders of each platoon/section/element.
3. Reports cover the following supply classes: Class I (rations), Class II (supplies and equipment), Class III (POL products), Class IV (construction materials), Class V (ammunition), Class VI (personal demand items), Class VII (major end items), Class VIII (medical supplies), and Class IX (repair parts).
4. Submit consolidated status report to company commander and combat trains command post (CTCP).
5. Company reports personnel status to the CTCP, requests replacements, and processes reassignments/replacements.
6. Platoon Sergeants report personnel strength/losses (with battle roster numbers) to platoon/element commander and XO/1stSgt.
7. The 1stSgt compiles reports of personnel strength, losses, and battle roster changes and submits them to the company commander and CTCP.
8. The 1stSgt and platoon sergeants reassign remaining personnel to ensure key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.
9. The 1stSgt and platoon sergeants assign replacements using the same criteria.
10. Company reports vehicle, equipment, fuel, and ammunition status and requests resupply or other support as needed.
11. Platoon sergeants and section leaders report vehicle and equipment status, including battle damage assessment, to platoon commanders and XO/1stSgt.
12. Platoon sergeants and section leaders report maintenance, recovery, and evacuation support requirements to platoon commanders and XO/1stSgt.
13. XO/Tank Leader compile platoon/section reports/requests and maintenance forms and submit consolidated reports/requests and forms to the CTCP and/or unit maintenance collection point (UMCP).
14. XO/Tank Leader coordinate LOGPAC with battalion S-4.
15. Coordinate actions at LRP.
16. Tank Leader prepares the LOGPAC and obtains requested classes of supply.

17. Consolidate replacements and Marines returning from medical treatment for transport to the company area.
18. Consolidate vehicles returning from maintenance for movement to the company area.
19. Obtain mail from task force S-1 section.
20. Obtain personnel actions documents from S-1 section (including award, finance, and legal documents as required).
21. LOGPAC elements and Tank Leader move to and conduct actions at LRP.
22. Using covered and concealed routes (if available), LOGPAC move to the LRP.
23. Using covered and concealed routes (if available), Tank Leader moves to the LRP and meets LOGPAC.
24. Conduct actions at LRP as coordinated and/or as specified in unit SOP.
25. XO/Tank Leader coordinate company resupply.
26. Determine method and location of resupply; determine unit priority for resupply if all requested supplies/services are not available; determine unit order for resupply, including attachments; and issue FRAGO alerting company that LOGPAC is en route.
27. Company conducts service station resupply, as applicable.
28. The Tank Leader and LOGPAC move to designated resupply location along covered and concealed routes, if available.
29. Medical and maintenance sections conduct linkup with Tank Leader and LOGPAC to organize resupply site, establishing security and using available cover and concealment
30. The Tank Leader issues FRAGO to platoon sergeants and section sergeants on the organization of the resupply site, specifying location of corpsmen, maintenance, supply points, KIA collection points, and EPW holding area.
31. Designated platoons/sections/elements conduct tactical movement to resupply site.
32. Designated platoons/sections/elements conduct appropriate actions of service station resupply as directed by the company commander and/or unit SOP.
33. Maintain security of assigned sector.
34. Support elements issue Class III (package and bulk) and Class V supplies.
35. Supply section issues Class I, II, IV, VI, and VII supplies.
36. Maintenance section conducts required maintenance activities.
37. Medical section conducts required medical activities: inspect hygiene, make routine medical checks, and restock combat lifesaver bags and first aid kits as required.
38. The 1stSgt conducts required personnel activities: assign replacements; issue mail; collect award, legal, and finance documents; and supervise collection of EPWs, KIAs, and associated documents.
39. Complete service station resupply within 90 minutes of the LOGPAC's arrival in the company area.
40. Company conducts tailgate resupply, as applicable.
41. The Tank Leader and LOGPAC move to company location along covered and concealed routes, if available.
42. Medical and maintenance sections link up with Tank Leader and LOGPAC to organize tailgate resupply.
43. The Tank Leader issues FRAGO to platoon sergeants and section sergeants specifying organization of tailgate resupply.
44. The Tank Leader guides LOGPAC vehicles to each platoon/section/element position.
45. LOGPAC vehicles move through company area using available cover and concealment.
46. Platoons/sections/elements conduct appropriate actions of tailgate

resupply as directed by the company commander and/or unit SOP.
47. Maintain security of assigned sector.
48. Support elements issue Class III (package and bulk) and Class V supplies.
49. Supply section issues Class I, II, IV, VI, and VII supplies.
50. Maintenance section conducts required maintenance activities.
51. Medical section conducts required medical activities: inspect hygiene, make routine medical checks, and restock combat lifesaver bags and first aid kits as required.
52. The 1stSgt conducts required personnel activities: assign replacements; issue mail; collect award, legal, and finance documents; and supervise collection of EPWs, KIAs, and associated documents.
53. Complete tailgate resupply within 90 minutes of the LOGPAC's arrival in the company area.
54. LOGPAC returns to field trains.
55. Under supervision of Tank Leader, move to LRP by time specified in OPORD or IAW unit SOP.
56. Supply section coordinates for next LOGPAC.
57. Request Class I support from S-4 personnel and ensure Class III and V requests have been received accordingly.
58. As applicable, turn in Class II and VII items to S-4 personnel and/or request Class II and VII support from S-4 personnel.
59. Request Class IV and V support from S-4 personnel.
60. Ensure that company corpsmen have requested Class VIII supplies from battalion aid station (BAS).
61. Transfer KIAs to mortuary affairs point; turn in mail to task force mail clerk; turn in personnel action documents (including award, legal, and finance documents) to S-1 section; and transfer EPWs to EPW collection point in the field trains.
62. Company conducts refuel on the move (ROM) as directed in the OPORD/FRAGO.
63. Move to the ROM site IAW OPORD/FRAGO and METT-TC factors.
64. Maintain security during refueling operation.
65. Send updated SITREPs on refueling status to task force XO/TOC as necessary.
66. Company conducts emergency resupply.
67. Request emergency resupply of Classes III, V, and IX from the CTCP/UMCP as required.
68. XO/Tank Leader coordinate linkup with resupply elements (normally at active LRP).
69. XO/Tank Leader move Class III/Class V resupply elements to company area.
70. Conduct tailgate or service station resupply as applicable and as METT-TC factors permit.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-CSS-6501

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-5501

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
6. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees

7. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
11. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
12. MCWP 4-11.6 Bulk Liquid Operations
13. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

TANK-CSS-6503: Conduct Maintenance Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Proper maintenance is the key to keeping vehicles, equipment, and other materials in serviceable condition. It is a continuous process that starts with preventive measures taken by each vehicle crew and continues through repair and recovery efforts by higher-level maintenance personnel. It includes the services involved in inspecting, testing, servicing, repairing, requisitioning, recovering, and evacuating. Company maintenance functions begin with preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS), a daily crew responsibility, and crew-level preparation and are performed as far forward as the situation allows.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and has sustained sufficient vehicle damage to require on-site repair in order to continue the mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts maintenance and supply operations in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company commander establishes the company trains, controlled by the Tank Leader, consisting of maintenance, supply, communications, and medical support personnel. The company trains may be augmented with CSS personnel from the Battalion. The company trains provide limited, immediate organic support and coordinate all maintenance and supply requirements accordingly. All damaged equipment is repaired to an operating status or evacuated to the Battalion S-4 for higher echelon repair. The Company XO/Tank Leader update the logistics estimate based on maintenance/recovery operations, identifies and analyzes current and future problems, and advises the company commander. The company trains monitor tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted maintenance and recovery support to the unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The company commander organizes the company combat trains under the control of the Tank Leader.
2. Company trains personnel gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries,

situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
3. The company commander receives a vehicle damage report.
4. Vehicle commanders determine whether or not damage is beyond crew troubleshooting capabilities.
5. Vehicle commanders provide condition, location, and circumstances of damage to the platoon sergeant.
6. Estimate support requirements necessary to initiate recovery and repair.
7. Platoon notifies maintenance chief of damaged vehicle.
8. Maintenance chief dispatches maintenance team.
9. Organize maintenance effort based on priorities established in the SOP and the nonoperational conditions report.
10. Maintenance team moves to the vehicle breakdown site using covered and concealed routes.
11. Move damaged vehicles or equipment to secure areas when it is subject to hostile fire.
12. Use smoke screens and camouflage to obscure the removal of the damaged equipment from enemy observation.
13. Crew and maintenance personnel inspect disabled vehicles for safety hazards.
14. Check for radioactive or chemical contamination.
15. Check for damaged ammunition.
16. Make sure abandoned vehicles are checked for booby traps prior to recovery.
17. Expeditiously remove and treat casualties.
18. The maintenance chief determines maintenance requirements.
19. Determine man-hours, equipment, special tools, and repair parts necessary for repair.
20. Determine when on-site maintenance is not feasible and higher-echelon maintenance is necessary.
21. Report vehicle repair needs and status to the Tank Leader and Battalion Maintenance Chief.
22. Unit recovers equipment.
23. The maintenance chief coordinates recovery/repair.
24. Unit uses self or like-vehicle recovery.
25. Unit recovery operations use covered and concealed routes whenever possible.
26. Recovered vehicles are moved to secure locations in order to conduct repairs.
27. Unit conducts repairs.
28. conduct repairs on-site when possible.
29. Accomplish repairs within 2 hours unless otherwise ordered by the company commander.
30. Crew assists the maintenance team conducting repairs.
31. When the repairs exceed the 2 hour timeline, evacuate equipment to the UMCP IAW SOP.
32. Remove usable parts, weapons, sensitive items, personal gear, and equipment.
33. Destroy or render ineffective, all equipment, sensitive items, or information and weapons that must be left with the vehicle.
34. Destruction or disabling will be accomplished only on command order.
35. Company commander reports operational status to battalion CP.
36. Report daily IAW unit SOP or operations order.
37. Provide updates to higher headquarters when necessary.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-6502 TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-CSS-6501

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-5501 TANK-CSS-5502

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
10. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
11. MCWP 4-24 Commander's Guide to Maintenance
12. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
13. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
14. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

TANK-CSS-6504: Provide Medical Evacuation and Treatment of Casualties

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Medical treatment of wounded or injured Marines during combat operations is a continuous, progressive operation that occurs in a series of separate, but interlocking, stages. It involves personnel, equipment, and facilities at virtually every level of the organization. The normal flow of care for combat casualties is self-aid/buddy-aid then from the enhance first aid provided by the combat lifesaver (at the point of injury); to the emergency medical treatment provided by company senior corpsman (at the company CCP); to the advanced trauma management provided by the physician at the BAS.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has sustained casualties during the current mission. The company has an aid team attached and a corpsman for each platoon/squad. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE)/rules of interaction (ROI), and the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize casualties and evacuates casualties to the higher headquarters casualty collection point. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company executive officer (XO) and First Sergeant (1stSgt) plan casualty treatment and evacuation with the senior company or platoon corpsmen.
2. Designate company casualty collection point (CCP).
3. Plan casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) routes.
4. Plan disposition of the casualty's weapon and equipment.
5. Plan security of the casualty collection point.
6. Ensure aid and litter teams are designated by all elements.
7. Ensure all elements are briefed on and understand ROE and ROI.
8. Company elements treat and evacuate casualties.
9. Identify serious casualties requiring evacuation.
10. Administer first aid to casualties.
11. Stabilize the casualties.
12. Administer the proper lifesaving measures.
13. Position casualties on vehicle(s), if available.
14. Retain classified documents (signal operating instructions, maps, orders, overlays) and mission-essential equipment (night vision devices, crew-served weapon) previously controlled by the casualty.
15. Deliver classified documents and mission-essential equipment to company headquarters as soon as factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) allows.
16. 1stSgt reports casualties to the battalion combat trains command post (CTCP) or higher headquarters trains command post.
17. Report key personnel losses.
18. Include number, location, and status of casualties.
19. 1stSgt, designated NCO, or senior company corpsman coordinates the casualty evacuation by ground ambulance to the battalion or higher headquarters aid station or to the battalion and or higher headquarters collection point, and prepares them for transport.
20. Move casualties to the rear of the company position to a covered and concealed location.
21. Retain classified documents (SOI, maps, orders, overlays) previously controlled by the casualty.
22. Determine which casualties are most serious.
23. Prevent further injury to casualties.
24. Follow instructions in the operations order (OPORD) or SOP.
25. Move casualties using covered and concealed routes.
26. Company requests helicopter evacuation of casualties based on factors of METT-TC.
27. Submit medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) request using the correct format (digital or analog).
28. Select and mark the best available covered and concealed landing zone (LZ).
29. Move casualties by the best available means to the LZ, and continue treatment.
30. Assist the flight or ambulance crew with the casualties.
31. Maintain security of the LZ to include coordinating any suppressive fires.
32. Company evacuates contaminated casualties.
33. Initiate decontamination before loading.

34. Cover casualties if it is impossible to lessen the spread of contamination en route.
35. Ensure casualties are not evacuated to an uncontaminated facility or with uncontaminated casualties.
36. Decontaminate vehicles and equipment as soon as possible.
37. Company evacuates enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties.
38. Check enemy bodies for booby traps.
39. Search EPW for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.
40. Prevent EPW from having access to weapons during evacuation.
41. Maintain security of EPW casualties.
42. Evacuate by the same standards as US casualties.
43. 1stSgt supervises evacuation of killed in action (KIA) and personal effects.
44. Submit a casualty report to the battalion CTCP or higher headquarters trains command post IAW the SOP.
45. Direct the recovery of KIAs' government property (weapon, protective mask).
46. Evacuate KIA remains to the battalion or higher headquarters field trains by backhaul transportation.
47. Transport KIAs separately from wounded, if possible.
48. XO or 1stSgt reassign personnel.
49. Base reassignments on the commander's guidance.
50. Ensure key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CSS-6501

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-5503	TANK-CSS-5505

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
4. FM 4-02.7 Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-02G First Aid
7. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
8. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
9. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

TANK-CSS-6505: Process Enemy Prisoners of War

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: EPWs and captured enemy equipment and materials are excellent sources of combat information and intelligence. This information, however,

will be of tactical value only if prisoners and materials are processed and evacuated to the rear quickly. In any tactical situation, the company will have specific procedures and guidelines for handling prisoners and captured materials; these measures are prescribed in team and task force SOPs and in the commander's OPORD. Basic principles for handling EPWs are covered by the "five-S and T" procedures: search, segregate, silence, speed, safeguard and tag. However, the tempo of an operation may not allow the company team to tag prisoners and equipment. The company commander must weigh operational requirements against completing the "five-S and T" steps. Some circumstances may only allow for the company to complete only the "search" step in handling EPWs and then pass the prisoners along to follow on forces to complete processing of EPWs.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. During the conduct of operations enemy soldiers are captured. The company is responsible for processing EPWs in accordance with (IAW) the commander's intent, OPORD, and unit standard operating procedure (SOP). Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information IAW the SOP. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in accordance with the "five-S's and T", at a minimum, EPWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according their rights under international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Captured enemy troops are processed IAW the "five-S's and T".
2. The company commander collects all items of tactical significance.
3. Extract information that is of immediate value.
4. Report items the higher headquarters' S-2.
5. The company speeds prisoners to the rear.
6. The company coordinates with the battalion S-4 for transportation, food, water, and emergency clothing of EPWs.
7. The company coordinates with the battalion S-4 for transportation of captured materials.
8. The company decides whether to evacuate prisoners from unit location or move to an alternate location (EPW collection point, MSR).
9. The company coordinates with organic corpsmen personnel for medical support and evacuation of sick and wounded EPWs.
10. The company guards for prisoners until guards are released by higher headquarters.
11. The company continues the mission IAW the OPORD and commander's intent.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-CSS-6501

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-5503

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
6. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-6601: Conduct Amphibious Planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: After receipt of planning guidance, the company commander prepares estimates of supportability based on: mission and concept of operations of the landing force; enemy situation with particular attention to the enemy antitank defenses; terrain, weather, and beach conditions; shipping and landing craft availability; tank strength available to the landing force.

CONDITION: The company is attached to an infantry battalion of the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) that is alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious operation. The Amphibious Task Force (ATF) is currently in transit. The initiating directive is received. A Carrier Battle Group (CVBG) is also enroute. Threat forces have direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary and fixed-wing aircraft, and Electronic Warfare (EW) capabilities. It is anticipated that operations ashore will be of limited duration. The initial planning conference is completed and the Commander Landing Force (CLF) has issued the MAGTF planning directive. The GCE order is issued. The infantry battalion commander/staff and subordinate leaders begin their initial planning.

STANDARD: The company commander analyzes the mission and coordinates with higher headquarters concerning tank employment to ensure coordinated initial planning. During this phase of planning the company commander may also act as a special staff officer on the battalion staff in order to provide expertise concerning tank employment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company commander analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
2. Company commander develops preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidance provided by the GCE and battalion commanders.
3. Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff, providing input regarding basic requirements, essential elements of information (EEI's) and other intelligence requirements (OIR's); identify intelligence gaps to request response/collection from higher, lower and adjacent headquarters.
4. Company commander issues warning order to subordinate element leaders.
5. Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff during the selection of recommended landing area, Landing Force (LF) objectives, and

beachhead for regimental, CLF/Commander Amphibious Task Force (CATF) approval.
6. Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff in the development of additional battalion objectives, if desired.
7. Brief estimate of supportability to the battalion commander.
8. Company commander provides input to the battalion staff regarding tank employment as the staff constructs the tentative task organization and begins the concurrent development of the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
9. Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff as they conduct a thorough and continuous analysis of the terrain, weather, hydrographic conditions, and enemy situation throughout the planning process.
10. Company commander conducts concurrent planning (when possible) with the battalion, providing input concerning tank employment as the plan progresses.
11. Upon receipt of the battalion order, the company commander finalizes his plan and briefs subordinate leaders.
12. Company commander constructs/coordinates enroute training plans for subordinate units and forwards them to the battalion.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
7. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
10. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-6602: Assist in the Development of the Amphibious Landing Plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The landing plan is the basis upon which an orderly ship-to-shore movement is conducted by the landing force. The ship-to-shore movement plan includes the detailed plans, tables, diagrams, and schedules prepared by both Navy and landing force commanders, and the plans establish priorities for landing units of the landing force. When subordinate units of the tank battalion are attached to infantry units, their plan for landing is reflected in the landing document of the units they are supporting. Plans for the landing of tactical units are found in the landing plan appendix to the amphibious operations annex of the operation plan.

CONDITION: The company is attached to an infantry battalion of the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) that is alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious operation. The battalion task force has received the GCE/MAGTF concept of operations and has developed a plan of attack which is approved. Sufficient landing craft are

available. The amphibious landing can occur during the day, night, or periods of limited visibility.

STANDARD: The company commander ensures that the landing plan supports accomplishment of the mission. The landing plan must provide for the delivery of the company, in the desired formation, with the necessary equipment, over the selected beaches, at the time set by the battalion commander. Flexibility is preserved through the selective scheduling and subsequent cross decking (if required), of personnel and equipment so that critical elements are brought ashore, as required.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander assists the battalion in determining the requirements for ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
2. The company commander provides input regarding assignment of elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
3. The company commander reviews allocated landing assets and ensures that they are sufficient.
4. The company commander provides input into the development of the proposed Serial Assignment Table and ensures that it is based on the task organization for the landing.
5. The company commander ensures that the development of the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated and compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents.
6. The company commander provides input for the development of the Approach Schedule.
7. The company commander ensures that he receives the Debarkation Schedule (prepared jointly by the GCE and the ship's commanding officer), when applicable.
8. The company commander coordinates cross-decking of his unit/equipment if required by the landing plan.
9. The company commander ensures that the Tactical-Logistics Group (TACLOG) is aware of the location of troops, equipment, supplies, landing requirements, and of adjustments to the landing sequence.
10. The company commander coordinates planning with the battalion for pre D-Day transfers of personnel and equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
7. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
10. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-6603: Conduct an Amphibious Assault Landing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An attack launched from the sea by naval and landing forces embarked in ships or craft involving a landing on a hostile shore.

CONDITION: CATF issues the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MAGTF landing plan developed after the final rehearsal. Close, continuous, and detailed coordination among the CATF, MAGTF, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staff members, as well as unit commanders has occurred throughout the entire planning process.

STANDARD: The initial stages of the assault will generally result in some degree of decentralized control. Actions by subordinate leaders must be aggressive and bold. Tactical control measures are used to allow subordinate leaders to regain control as quickly as possible. Reliance on mission-type orders will further facilitate control and seizure of initial objectives. While many of the fires contained in the plan for supporting fires may be scheduled based on planned rates of movement, adjustments must be made to reflect the actual rate of movement on the ground. The company commander must identify alterations needed to planned fires and make them known to the battalion FSCC. As material is delivered ashore, means must be established to make emergency resupply immediately available. This capability must be sustained throughout the buildup of combat power.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander receives and disseminates to subordinate leaders, final intelligence update which emphasizes critical aspects of the landing such as beach obstacles, known and suspected location of defensive positions in the vicinity of landing beaches, and antiaircraft weapons positions.
2. The company commander confirms H-hour.
3. The company commander ensures that all personnel and equipment are assembled, staged, and prepared for debarkation.
4. Boat team commanders demonstrate control over the loading of all troops and equipment.
5. The company adheres to electromagnetic emission control (EMCON) condition set by the MAGTF, removing restrictions on radio transmissions only on order.
6. Boat team commander's orient subordinates to visible terrain features on or near the beach (when practicable) and alert all team members when the wave is within 100 meters of the beach.
7. Unit commanders quickly regain control of their units, and maintain momentum of the attack by avoiding unnecessary delays.
8. The company demonstrates effective employment of air and NGFS to suppress and/or neutralize targets of opportunity.
9. The company provides accurate counterbattery fire data to the battalion Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC).
10. The company uses terrain effectively for cover and concealment.
11. The company demonstrates effective indirect fire control/coordination via the battalion's FSCC, using FOs; and requests adjustments to the delivery

times of preplanned fires to coincide with actual progress on the ground.
12. The company effectively utilizes CAS to support the assault.
13. The company provides situation reports to the battalion commander as the assault progresses.
14. The company maintains momentum of the attack through issuance of fragmentary orders (FRAGO's), the integration of coordinated fire and maneuver, and aggressive small unit leadership.
15. The company effectively conducts linkup with adjacent forces, demonstrating positive communications, and fire support coordination.
16. The company maintains reliable HF, UHF, and VHF communications.
17. The company establishes covered communications on those covered nets identified in the CEOI.
18. The company coordinates logistics support through the battalion.
19. The company maintains dispersion of personnel, equipment, and supplies on the beach.
20. The company demonstrates knowledgeable treatment and timely MEDEVAC of casualties.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-EXPD-6602 TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-EXPD-6601

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-31.4 Marine Expeditionary Units (Special Operations Capable)
7. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
8. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
9. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6701: Establish a Base Camp

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A base camp is a grouping of units or activities within a defined, defensible perimeter with specific access control points and traffic control. All units or activities are under operational control of a single commander for security operations.
CONDITION: The company is conducting support stability operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to establish and occupy a base camp (lodgment area) at the location and time specified. Engineer, intelligence, and other required combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) personnel and assets are provided. Interpreters are provided. Environmental, construction, and restoration constraints are provided. The company provides its own security. All company personnel and equipment are available. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating

procedures (SOP). The company is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company evaluates the directed or proposed base camp location and coordinates with higher headquarters civil affairs (CA) personnel, if available. The company prepares for the operation, moves to the location, establishes local security and clears the base camp of any threat. The company establishes a defined, defensible perimeter and constructs facilities within environmental constraints, or uses existing facilities if available and adequate. The company conducts command and control (C2) of base camp operation, IAW the order and/or international and local agreements. All operations adhere to the ROE and ROI without serious injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLP) to prepare the order and evaluates the directed, or proposed, base camp location.
2. Analyze intelligence database to determine the following at a minimum: disposition and urban concentration of local civilian population; affiliation, composition, and dispositions of local military and paramilitary organizations; natural defensive terrain features; mounted and dismounted mobility corridors in the vicinity of the base camp location; conditions and mobility of existing roads, railways, pipelines, and waterways for use as lines of communication and/or supply routes; conditions, features, and current occupants of buildings and other facilities within the base camp location; conditions and availability of local power, water, sewer, and phone utilities; and sites for possible drop zones (DZ), landing zones (LZ), and/or pickup zones (PZ).
3. Evaluate security vulnerabilities.
4. Coordinate through higher headquarters to relocate and/or confirm base camp location as necessary.
5. The company commander coordinates civil-military operations through higher headquarters civil affairs (CA), if available.
6. Establish liaison with local civilians, police, and/or military authorities to determine availability of terrain sites, installations, facilities, and civilian labor force.
7. Submit for approval, recommended use for civil/military installations, facilities, and/or labor force to its higher headquarters.
8. The company commander issues the order.
9. Address orientation to include the higher headquarters' AO, lines of communication, supply routes, locations of high-value asset(s), distances from urban areas, and command-directed named areas of interest (NAI) as applicable.
10. Address the threat situation trends and recent activities and include at a minimum: factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known belligerents; description of military and paramilitary uniforms, vehicles, insignia, markings, and equipment to include threat weapon systems, NVGs, and their capabilities; current locations of weapons holding areas, staging areas, and/or encampments; locations of police stations, barracks, governmental and political party headquarters; and locations of known and/or suspected minefields.

11. Address civilian situation to include impact on mission.
12. Address terrain to include dead space, infiltration lanes, and dispositions and conditions of existing facilities and utilities.
13. Address weather to include effects of drainage and flooding and effects on NVGs and weapon systems.
14. Address location, disposition, and mission of friendly forces in the AO, if applicable.
15. Address task organization of assigned and attached elements to best accomplish the commander's intent.
16. Address mission statement that includes base camp location, operational time, purpose, and duration.
17. Address company commander's intent.
18. Address concept of the operations that describes at a minimum: reconnaissance focus and tempo during movement and/or occupation of the location; and actions to initially secure and clear the base camp location.
19. Address area security of the base camp to include: priorities for protection of civil/military personnel, installations, facilities, supplies, and other assets; perimeter sectors and orientation for platoons; sectors and/or battle positions (BP) with orientation for attached CS and CSS platoons, if available; and criteria for commitment, movement, and actions of the quick reaction force (QRF), if applicable.
20. Establish graphic control measures support concept of operation to include the perimeter of the secured area, platoon boundaries, BPs if applicable, supply routes, contact points, checkpoints, and terrain index reference system (TIRS)/grid index reference system (GIRS) as required.
21. Integration of fire support to maintain maximum range forward of the base camp perimeter.
22. Designate priorities of fire, describe fire control measures, and describe clearance of fires in the AO outside of the perimeter.
23. Establish priority of effort for engineers to include survivability positions and obstacle/barrier emplacement.
24. Integrate additional higher headquarters intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets to augment reconnaissance and surveillance as necessary.
25. Address commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs), ROEs/ROIs, quartering (advance) party instructions, movement to the base camp location, engagement criteria, patrol requirements, passage of lines if necessary, coordination tasks with units acting in the AO, and civil-military affairs.
26. Address priorities for combat service support (CSS) and concept of CSS operations to include: availability of host-nation (HN) support; mess facilities, showers, and heads; storage for Class III, IV, and V supplies; maintenance and refuel areas; aid station and evacuation procedures; contracted services; and casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) or medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).
27. Address primary and alternate command post (CP) locations.
28. Address responsibilities and procedures for integrating supporting analog units into the digital network.
29. Company prepares for the operation.
30. Submit updated personnel status (PERSTAT) report in order to coordinate personnel support from higher headquarters.
31. Coordinate with civilian military operations center (CMOC) for base camp development (installation and/or facility repair and construction) and/or logistic support from higher headquarters.

32. Coordinate contracts for base camp development, class IV supplies, generators for alternate power supply, and engineer support with higher headquarters.
33. Provide requirements for base camp fortification; protective and tactical obstacles; mobility requirements for road improvements; repair and/or structural reinforcement of barracks, storage, and CP locations; and construction of entrance checkpoints and LZs/DZs/PZs.
34. Coordinate minefield clearance if necessary.
35. Monitor procurement and contracting efforts.
36. Dispatch quartering party IAW order and/or SOP: reconnoiter route and base camp location, establish local security, establish initial liaison with local leadership, mark entrances, exits, routes, and/or positions as required, mark mines, and position guides at release point (RP).
37. Company conducts movement to the base camp location.
38. Follow guides directions and clear RP without halting.
39. Occupy initial positions designated by the quartering party.
40. Orient weapons outward from perimeter to cover sectors of responsibility.
41. Maintain readiness condition (REDCON) 2 until directed otherwise.
42. Company establishes security and clears the base camp.
43. Assume reduced REDCON level based on order and mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.
44. Reposition vehicles as required and dismount two-man teams to secure the perimeter.
45. Search buildings and clear base camp IAW order and/or SOP.
46. Establish observation posts (OP) to cover dead space and concealed infiltration lanes.
47. Deploy protective obstacles IAW ROE and/or SOP.
48. Company constructs the base camp.
49. Maintain REDCON level based on METT-TC factors.
50. Coordinate and assist engineers and civilian labor with base camp construction IAW the order, contracts, and/or SOP.
51. Issue and account for Class IV supplies for base camp construction IAW priorities, contracts, and/or engineer estimates.
52. Emplace roadblocks, and perimeter obstacles (triple standard concertina, barriers) to limit base camp access to designated points.
53. Construct checkpoints at all entrances to base camp.
54. Adhere to international and local agreements and environmental constraints.
55. Establish and safeguard wire communications throughout the base camp.
56. Company conducts base camp operations IAW order.
57. Conduct operations to support its higher headquarters and other units operating within the AO IAW order, and/or international and local agreements.
58. Maintain or designate a QRF based on the current threat.
59. Conduct security and reconnaissance patrols both inside and outside of the perimeter as necessary.
60. Use higher headquarters human intelligence (HUMINT) or designated teams interact with local population to obtain information and intelligence, if available.
61. Company command and control base camp operations.
62. Monitor the situation: ensure ROE/ROI are strictly enforced; ensure weapon systems are oriented, not directly aimed, in the direction of belligerents outside the perimeter; leaders conduct negotiation and liaison, and react proportionally to belligerent escalation IAW order; and ensure that

authorization for use of force is provided by following the correct procedures.
63. Supervise base camp construction through inspections (commander or designated representative): identify discrepancies and shortfalls, adjust priorities and redirect assets as necessary, and coordinate base camp development with higher headquarters as necessary.
64. Refine base camp area security plan.
65. Ensure designated analog units receive related information and reports that were digitally transmitted if applicable.
66. Maintain communications with higher headquarters CP.
67. Maintain communications with units/elements within the base camp and operating within the AO, informing them of changes in the following: threat situation, change in REDCON status, movement and/or displacement of perimeter defenses commitment of the QRF.
68. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units if applicable.
69. Cross talk to coordinate with units working within the AO on higher command net.
70. Report information, to include the following, IAW order or SOP: violations of ROE/ROI, seizure of contraband and/or illegal materials/items, capture of paramilitary and/or belligerent personnel, detention of civilians, and needs of the local populace.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
10. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6702: Conduct a Quick Reaction Force (QRF)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A unit employed as an element of the reserve utilized to reinforce and/or relieve encircled friendly forces or assist in the tactical recovery of aircraft and personnel.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is ordered to be a Quick Reaction Force (QRF) for the task force. The battalion task force is operating from a firm base and is conducting security patrols in their area of operations. The company prepares for, and responds to, calls for support from patrolling units as a

mounted QRF. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct a QRF mission. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company establishes the Quick Reaction Force (QRF) and maintains a platoon prepared to react at REDCON 1(-) continuously. When called to react, the unit departs the firmbase within five minutes and responds to enemy action IAW unit SOP and higher commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLP) to prepare the order.
2. Company commander issues the order.
3. Address orientation to include lateral and rear boundaries, routes, start points (SP) and release points (RP), command directed named areas of interest (NAI), and the time/distance factors for reaction times.
4. Address belligerent situation to include as a minimum: factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known belligerents; description of uniforms, vehicles, insignia, markings, and equipment to include threat weapon systems, night vision goggles (NVG), and their capabilities; current locations of weapon holding areas, staging areas, and/or encampments; locations of police stations, barracks, and governmental and political party headquarters; and description of likely belligerent courses of action (COA) based on most recent activities and equipment.
5. Address terrain to include as a minimum: defensible terrain at or near company demonstration locations; locations where the company can best be observed by belligerents; and key or favorable terrain to belligerents.
6. Address weather to include as a minimum: effects on mobility and reaction times and effects on NVGs.
7. Address task organization of assigned and attached elements to best accomplish the commander's intent.
8. Address company commander's intent.
9. Address scheme of maneuver that describes as a minimum: reconnaissance to include focus, tempo, and engagement criteria; develop R&S matrix and graphics to provide further focus/guidance for reconnaissance assets; patrol routes to include control measures and OP locations; critical areas on or near routes; order of march, march technique(s), road march and catch-up speeds; and contingency actions during patrol.
10. Establish OPs: either mounted (maximize vehicular optics and displacement) and/or dismounted (maximize stealth and concealment); location and purpose with relation to patrols and/or checkpoints; category, either short (less than 12 hours) or long (more than 12 hours) duration; and contingency actions.
11. Establish checkpoints: location and purpose; required activities, search requirements, movement and passage restrictions; duration; and contingency actions.
12. Movement and actions of the QRF: triggers (criteria) for commitment;

primary and alternate routes and linkup points; fire control measures; and handover procedures and command and control (C2) relationships after linkup.

13. If available, identify locations of liaison and human intelligence (HUMINT) collection to defuse belligerent activities.
14. Establish graphic control measures to support concept of operation to include base camps, phase lines (PL), contact points, and checkpoints, as required.
15. Establish priorities of fire.
16. If available, integrate additional higher headquarters' intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets to augment company surveillance, to include: tactical unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) to reconnoiter NAIs, routes, demonstration areas, belligerent assembly areas, and/or key/decisive terrain; ground surveillance radar (GSR) positions for surveillance along avenues of approach and/or lateral routes to the front or flanks of OPs; and employ Improved Remotely Monitored Battlefield Sensor Systems (IREMBASS) along trails and/or infiltration lanes to front and flanks of OPs.
17. Identify commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
18. Address liaison and translator requirements, if available.
19. Address ROE/ROI to include as a minimum: use of force, reaction to provocation, authentication procedures for order to fire, and weapons control status and orientation.
20. Address priorities for service support and concept of CSS operations: medical evacuation (MEDEVAC), emergency refuel and resupply, maintenance and vehicle recovery, and special supply requirements (such as Class IV/V, construction, and barrier materials).
21. Address movement and/or positioning of company commander.
22. Address movement and/or positioning of the company executive officer (XO) or command post (CP), if applicable, to maintain communications with higher headquarters.
23. Address responsibilities and procedures for integrating supporting analog units into the digital network: update locations and status of analog units to digital elements, provide locations of key digital elements to analog units, and provide key information that was digitally transmitted to analog units.
24. Company prepares for operations.
25. Conducts reconnaissance and identify: locations for OPs and checkpoints; available routes to include main supply routes (MSR); casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) routes, collection points, and civilian medical treatment facilities; unit compounds, bases, or key facilities; sites designated by higher headquarters or where information suggests rising tensions; and potential overwatch or weapon positions.
26. Conduct rehearsals (QRF): check internal communications and compatibility; rehearse movement and linkup procedures; rehearse actions on contact and authentication procedures for use of force; and rehearse CASEVAC, rearmament, and resupply procedures.
27. Prior to departure, company informs all units in area, either US or international, of patrol times and location for departure, composition, route(s), and time of return (if applicable).
28. Company conducts mounted or dismounted patrols.
29. Initiate movement at the designated time using proper formations, movement technique, interval, and speed IAW order and/or SOP.
30. Maintain continuous 360-degree ground and air surveillance.
31. Maintain light discipline and display appropriate markings/colors IAW

order and/or SOP (vehicles).
32. Ensure movement and security measures are clearly observable to belligerents as specified in the order.
33. Report control measures IAW order and/or SOP (patrol leaders).
34. Company conducts OPs.
35. Occupy OPs IAW order and/or SOP (designated elements).
36. Report OP locations using the long form spot report (SPOTREP), if applicable, in order to maintain and update the COP.
37. Continue to update their locations to prevent them from fading from friendly COPs.
38. Improve OP position as necessary and employ active and passive protective measures.
39. Conduct local reconnaissance patrols as necessary to cover dead space, provide local security, and observe routes, NAIs, and other locations from different vantage points.
40. Execute contingency actions upon contact IAW order and/or SOP as necessary.
41. Maintain the COP and report information IAW order and/or SOP.
42. Company operates checkpoints.
43. Occupy checkpoints IAW order and/or SOP (designated elements).
44. Construct, equip, and improve checkpoints as necessary and employ active and passive protective measures.
45. Conduct local reconnaissance patrols as necessary to cover dead space, provide local security, and observe routes, NAIs, and other locations from different vantage points.
46. Checkpoints execute contingency actions upon contact IAW order and/or SOP as necessary.
47. Maintain the COP and checkpoints report information IAW order and/or SOP.
48. Company conducts linkup with area and/or base camp commanders, as necessary.
49. Reconnoiter and secure area outside of base camp.
50. Conduct long-range recognition.
51. Establish voice and digital communications before entering direct fire weapons range.
52. Respond to challenges and authenticate correctly IAW signal operating instructions (SOI).
53. Complete linkup.
54. Exchange short-range recognition IAW order or SOP.
55. Complete movement and occupy positions as planned or designated by the local commander.
56. Company QRF conducts the following, once deployed: initiate movement using proper formations, movement technique, interval, and speed IAW order and/or SOP; maintain continuous 360-degree ground and air surveillance; display appropriate markings/colors on vehicles IAW order and/or SOP; attack or defend as necessary to relieve endangered element IAW order and/or SOP; conduct linkup with element IAW order and/or SOP; assist with casualty treatment and evacuation, to include providing security, and other service support activities as necessary; and report control measures and situation updates IAW order and/or SOP.
57. Company maintains command and control (C2) of the operation.
58. Monitor the situation (commander).
59. Ensure ROE/ROI are strictly enforced.
60. Ensure weapon systems are oriented, not directly aimed, in the direction of belligerents.
61. Leader conduct negotiation and liaison and react proportionally to

belligerent escalation IAW order and/or ROE/ROI.
62. Ensure that authorization for use of force is provided by following the correct procedures.
63. Company commander positions himself and moves to best observe and influence operations while maintaining communications with subordinate units.
64. Maintain voice and digital communications with higher headquarters (XO and/or CP).
65. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units.
66. Report information that best allows timely decisions by the commander and his higher headquarters IAW order and/or SOP.
67. Confirm or deny higher's information requirements (CCIR and specific information requirements [SIR]).
68. Identify threat and/or belligerent factions, compositions, and activities.
69. Identify capabilities and limitations of infrastructure to support local populace.
70. Identify serviceability of roads and routes, source information for power and/or influence, and needs of society.
71. Continue to monitor the operation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5819	TANK-TAC-5813	TANK-OTH-5702
TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5811

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
9. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6703: Conduct Convoy Security

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This mission requires the company to provide a convoy with security and close-in protection from direct fire while on the move. The task force may choose this COA if enemy contact is imminent or when it anticipates a serious threat to the security of the convoy. Convoy security should be planned and executed with the same level of detail and force protection measures given to a combat mission. Depending on METT-TC factors, the company is capable of providing effective protection for a large convoy. Companies may also conduct convoy escort in wheeled vehicles in order to ensure freedom of movement throughout the AOR.

CONDITION: During tactical operations as part of a battalion task force, the company team receives an order to provide convoy security within a contiguous or non contiguous area of operation (AO). Engineers, air defense artillery (ADA), indirect fires, battalion task force scouts, intelligence gathering resources, and linguists are available to the company team upon request. The unit has established communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing informational media in accordance with the standard operating procedure(SOP). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and the international media may be present in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE)/rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Contact is possible. The company complete coordination with the supported element. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company reconnoiters the route of the convoy, identifies, marks, bypasses, or reduces obstacles within its capabilities, clears positions from which the enemy/threat could impede movement, and/or prevents the enemy/threat from seizing or destroying high-value assets within the convoy. The company ensures the convoy safely reaches its destination. All operations adhere to the ROE and ROI without serious injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLP) to prepare the order.
2. Company commander/convoy commander issues the convoy order.
3. Address orientation to include lateral and rear boundaries, routes, start points (SP) and release points (RP), command directed named areas of interest (NAI), and the time/distance factors for reaction times.
4. Address belligerent situation to include as a minimum: factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known belligerents; description of uniforms, vehicles, insignia, markings, and equipment to include threat weapon systems, night vision goggles (NVG), and their capabilities; current locations of weapon holding areas, staging areas, and/or encampments; locations of police stations, barracks, and governmental and political party headquarters; and description of likely belligerent courses of action (COA) based on most recent activities and equipment.
5. Address terrain to include as a minimum: defensible terrain at or near company demonstration locations; locations where the company can best be observed by belligerents; and key or favorable terrain to belligerents.
6. Address weather to include as a minimum: effects on mobility and reaction times and effects on NVGs.
7. Address task organization of assigned and attached elements to best accomplish the commander's intent.
8. Address route of march (including a strip map for each vehicle commander).
9. Plan order of march.
10. Plan actions at halts (scheduled and unscheduled).
11. Plan actions in case of vehicle breakdown.
12. Plan actions for a break in column.
13. Plan actions in built-up areas.
14. Plan actions on contact, covering such situations as snipers, enemy contact (including near or far ambush), indirect fire, and minefields.
15. Plan a riot drill.

16. Plan refugee control drill.
17. Plan an evacuation drill.
18. Plan actions at the delivery site.
19. Brief chain of command.
20. Brief guidelines and procedures for negotiating with local authorities.
21. Brief communications and signal information to include MEDEVAC and attack aviation frequencies.
22. Conduct convoy security operation when directed by higher headquarters.
23. Company establishes and maintains security in all directions and throughout the length of the convoy.
24. Be prepared to adjust the disposition of the security force to fit the security requirements of each particular situation.
25. Several factors affect disposition, including METT-TC, convoy size, organization of the convoy, and types of vehicles involved.
26. The company commander positions security elements, such as platoons, to the front, rear, and/or flanks of the convoy, or disperses the combat vehicles throughout the convoy body.
27. Company executes actions on contact during enemy ambush.
28. As soon as company acquires an enemy ambush force, escort vehicles action toward the enemy.
29. Escort vehicle seek covered positions between the convoy and the enemy and suppress the enemy with the highest possible volume of fire permitted by the ROE.
30. Contact reports are sent to higher headquarters as quickly as possible.
31. Call for indirect fire or attack aviation fires to assist in destroying the enemy force or to break contact from the ambush.
32. The convoy commander retains control of the convoy vehicles and continues to move them along the route at the highest possible speed.
33. Convoy vehicles, if they are armed, may return fire only if the security force has not positioned itself between the convoy and the enemy force.
34. Subordinate leaders or the convoy commander may request that any damaged or disabled vehicles be abandoned and pushed off the route.
35. The escort leader uses SPOTREPs to keep the convoy security commander informed.
36. If necessary, the escort leader or the security commander can then request support from the reserve; he can also call for and adjust indirect fires.
37. Once the convoy is clear of the kill zone, the escort element executes one of the following COAs based on the composition of the escort and reaction forces, the commander's intent, and the strength of the enemy force: continue to suppress the enemy as the reserve moves to provide support, assault the enemy, or break contact and move out of the kill zone.
38. Company executes actions on contact upon arriving at an obstacle.
39. The lead element identifies the obstacle and directs the convoy to make a short halt and establish security.
40. The escort overwatches the obstacle and requests that the breach force move forward.
41. The escort maintains 360-degree security and provides overwatch as the breach force reconnoiters the obstacle in search of a bypass.
42. Once all reconnaissance is complete, the convoy commander determines which of the following COAs he will execute: bypass the obstacle, breach the obstacle with the assets on hand, or breach the obstacle with reinforcing assets.
43. Company executes actions at halt.
44. The convoy escort remains at REDCON-1 status regardless of what actions other convoy vehicles are taking.

45. The convoy commander signals the short halt and transmits the order via tactical radio.
46. Based on METT-TC factors, he directs all vehicles in the convoy to execute the designated formation or drill for the halt.
47. Ideally, the convoy will assume a herringbone or coil formation.
48. If the sides of the road are untrafficable or are mined, however, noncombat vehicles may simply pull over and establish 360-degree security as best they can and post local security.
49. This will allow movement of the escort vehicles as necessary through the convoy main body.
50. If possible, escort vehicles are positioned up to 100 meters beyond other convoy vehicles; escort vehicles remain at REDCON-1 but establish local security based on the factors of METT-TC.
51. When the order is given to move out, convoy vehicles reestablish the movement formation, leaving space for escort vehicles.
52. Once the convoy is in column, dismounted security elements (if used) return to their vehicles, and the escort vehicles rejoin the column.
53. When all elements are in column, the convoy resumes movement.
54. Company commander/convoy commander reports completion of convoy escort mission to higher headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6208	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-OTH-5701
TANK-TAC-5804		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
7. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6704: Conduct Checkpoint Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Establishment of checkpoints is a high-frequency task for companies and subordinate elements involved in stability operations. Checkpoints can be either deliberate or hasty.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is ordered to establish a checkpoint in the battalion task force AO. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon

request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants are present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company establishes a checkpoint(s) during support operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. Checkpoint layout, construction, and manning should reflect METT-TC. Position the checkpoint where it is visible and where traffic cannot turn back, get off the road, or bypass the checkpoint without being observed. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Company commander receives the order and develops a plan for establishing and manning checkpoints/control points
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance if not familiar with the AO.
5. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
6. Employ all available information-gathering assets required to support the mission, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
7. Request interpreters to help interface with the local populace if necessary.
8. Position a combat vehicle off the road, but within direct fire range, to deter resistance to Marines manning the checkpoint.
9. Vehicles should be in a hull-down position and protected by local security.
10. It must be able to engage vehicles attempting to break through or bypass the checkpoint.
11. Place obstacles in the road to slow or canalize traffic into the search area.
12. Establish a reserve.
13. Establish a bypass lane for approved convoy traffic.
14. Establish wire communications within the checkpoint area to connect the checkpoint bunker, the combat vehicle, the search area, security forces, the rest area, and any other elements involved in the operation.
15. Designate the search area (separate search areas for vehicles, male civilians, and female civilians).
16. If possible, search should be below ground to provide protection against such incidents as the explosion of a booby-trapped vehicle.
17. Establish a parking area adjacent to the search area.
18. If applicable, checkpoint personnel should include linguists.
19. Properly construct and equip the checkpoint.
20. Consider inclusion of the following items: barrels filled with sand, concrete, or water (emplaced to slow and canalize vehicles), concertina wire (emplaced to control movement around the checkpoint), secure

facilities for radio and wire communications with the controlling headquarters, first-aid kit/combat lifesaver bag, sandbags for defensive positions, wood or other materials for the checkpoint bunker, binoculars, night vision devices, and/or flashlights, and long-handled mirrors (these are used in inspections of vehicle undercarriages).

21. Elements manning a deliberate CP may require access to specialized equipment, such as the following: floodlights, duty log, flag and unit sign, barrier pole that can be raised and lowered, and generators with electric wire.
22. Unit executes the mission.
23. Follow ROE and ROI guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.
24. Ensure elements understand procedures for dealing with news media.
25. Unit S-2 section processes combatants or suspected war criminals as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, SOP, or other guidance.
26. Inspect and process captured documents, material, and equipment.
27. Identify and report time sensitive information to higher headquarters immediately using a SPOTREP with at least an IMMEDIATE precedence.
28. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CBTS-5401 TANK-OTH-5703

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
3. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
10. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6705: Secure Civilians During Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The actions a unit takes to identify and segregate combatants and noncombatants while moving them out of the immediate area of operations.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to secure civilians in order to protect them from injury. Some are refugees and some are inhabitants of the area in which the unit is operating. Some individuals and groups are openly hostile. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with

higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company secures civilians during operations in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and segregates combatants and noncombatants, searches them, safeguards them, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations (AO). The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Company commander receives the order and develops a plan for securing the civilians.
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
4. Conduct a map reconnaissance if not familiar with the AO.
5. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
6. Employ all available information-gathering assets required to support the mission, define the battlefield environment, describe battlefield effects, and determine enemy courses of action (COAs).
7. Request interpreters to help interface with the local populace if necessary.
8. Develop control measures for expected or unexpected situations.
9. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
10. Identify security elements, search elements, and guard elements.
11. Designate an intermediate collection point to deal with large numbers of civilians.
12. Company XO and/or Tank Leader coordinate for additional combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) assets as required.
13. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis.
14. Plan fire support, engineer support, nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support, air defense (AD) support, and CSS.
15. Select and designate methods of communications.
16. Plan casualty evacuation.
17. Develop a media plan.
18. Company prepares for mission.
19. Company commander conducts confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure platoon commanders understand commander's intent and concept.
20. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
21. Conduct extensive R&S IAW the commander's intent.
22. Conduct precombat checks IAW the commander's intent.
23. Supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
24. Conduct rehearsals if possible.
25. Position forces IAW the plan.
26. Unit executes the mission.

27. Establish and maintain 360 degree and three dimensional security in the AO in which civilians are gathered.
28. Segregate civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treat them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
29. Search civilians.
30. Keep identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status.
31. Restrain and detain noncombatants who do not follow instructions.
32. Safeguard noncombatants and provides humane but firm treatment at all times.
33. Move noncombatants away from fire fights and the immediate combat area.
34. Provide food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment.
35. Assign guards to escort civilians out of the immediate AO.
36. Evacuate civilians to a processing and reception station or to an intermediate collection point, report this situation and status in a timely manner to higher headquarters.
37. Give proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials.
38. Follow ROE and ROI guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.
39. Unit leaders assess the operation.
40. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
41. Ensure civilians are treated with respect.
42. Enforce ROE and ROI.
43. Ensure elements understand procedures for dealing with news media.
44. Use FRAGOs as necessary to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
45. Unit S-2 section processes combatants or suspected war criminals as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, SOP, or other guidance.
46. Inspect and process captured documents, material, and equipment.
47. Coordinate with the unit S-4 to evacuate captured material equipment and EPWs.
48. Identify and report time sensitive information to higher headquarters immediately using a SPOTREP with at least an IMMEDIATE precedence.
49. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-6501 TANK-CSS-6505

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-5505

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
8. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Operations
9. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

12. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
13. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
14. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
15. MCWP 3-33.3 Marine Corps Public Affairs
16. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6706: Conduct a Cordon and Search

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Cordon and search involves isolating a predesignated area by cordoning it off and systematically searching for enemy personnel, weapons, intelligence, supplies, explosives or communications equipment.

CONDITION: The company is conducting support and stability operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a cordon and search for insurgents, and/or their sympathizers, and for any material of tactical or intelligence value, at the location and time specified. In the area of operation (AO) is the local civilian populace and representatives of governmental organizations, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), private voluntary organizations (PVO), and international media outlets. Linguist support is available to the company, but it is not supported by local police or indigenous military forces. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The company is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the cordon and search IAW the SOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The company establishes a cordon of the designated area without being detected by the insurgents or sympathizers. It conducts the search and captures all insurgents, sympathizers, and/or enemy/threat material in the cordoned area. The company complies with the ROE/ROI while minimizing inconvenience to local civilians. It minimizes collateral damage. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company prepares for the mission.
2. Refine the plan for cordon and search operations, based on continuously updated intelligence.
3. Ensure the cordon plan prevents escape of individuals in the search area.
4. Ensure the search plan will present the least possible inconvenience for local civilians.
5. Finalize the company task organization.
6. Designate cordon element, search element, and reserve and/or quick-reaction force (QRF).
7. Designate support positions to provide protection for forces conducting

the operation.
8. Disseminate ROE/ROI to operational elements.
9. Divide cordoned area into zones.
10. Assign a search team to each zone.
11. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility, if possible, IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP.
12. Conduct extensive reconnaissance of the area just before the search.
13. Conduct precombat inspections.
14. Company command group supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures (TLP) to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
15. Coordinate with the local civilian police force to conduct the actual search, if their numbers and training permit.
16. Position forces to support the plan.
17. Company conducts the cordon and search mission.
18. Move into the area to be searched.
19. Depart IAW movement tables and in the configuration specified by the company OPORD.
20. Approach the area by stealth maintaining security during movement without being detected by the enemy/threat.
21. Move during the hours of darkness, if possible, using as many different routes as possible into the area.
22. Establish the cordon (cordon element).
23. Move into designated positions to surround area as rapidly as possible.
24. Establish security to prevent escape of insurgents/sympathizers and to block entry of reinforcements.
25. Establish OPs with clear fields of observation and fire.
26. Establish roadblocks and checkpoints to control movement into and out of search area.
27. Employ dismounted patrols and observed fires to cover gaps and dead space in cordon perimeter.
28. Establish a foothold in the assigned area.
29. Secure the objective area.
30. Adjust cordon as required and closes gaps using patrols or a series of observation posts (OP) to prevent enemy/threat from escaping.
31. Identify and apprehend individuals evading the search.
32. Protect the force conducting the actual search.
33. Conduct the search (search element).
34. Announces the search.
35. Employ special teams, if available, to conduct search tasks: EPW processing/handling teams, interrogation teams, documentation teams (using cameras/recorders to record search actions), demolition teams, psychological operations (PSYOP) teams and civil affairs (CA), mine detection team, fire support team (FiST), scout dog team, and tunnel reconnaissance team.
36. Conduct the search of suspected insurgents or sympathizers, supplies, and equipment with the least inconvenience to the populace using one of three methods.
37. Assemble inhabitants in a central location if they appear to be hostile. NOTE: This method provides optimum control and simplifies search and interrogation; however, taking inhabitants from their dwellings may encourage ill feelings and looting.
38. Restrict inhabitants to their homes. NOTE: This method precludes most civilian movement and discourages looting, but makes control and interrogation difficult.

39. Control the heads of households. NOTE: This method, which reduces looting and prevents thefts by the search teams, is generally considered the best of the three methods because it is the least disruptive to local civilians.
40. Search subsurface and underwater areas, if applicable.
41. Inspect any freshly excavated ground in case it is a hiding place.
42. Use mine detectors to locate metal objects underground and underwater.
43. Consider any threat material found to be booby trapped until an inspection proves it safe.
44. Prevent hostile forces from outside the search area from joining the inhabitants of the area and interfering with the search.
45. Company processes captured insurgents/enemy and material as required.
46. Detain insurgents/sympathizers using the least possible force.
47. Turn captured personnel over to local police as soon as the situation permits.
48. Turn captured material over to appropriate agencies as soon as possible for maximum tactical/intelligence value.
49. Company commander directs the cordon and search operation to completion.
50. Control the rate of search as necessary.
51. Employ the reserve and/or QRF to assist the cordon and search elements, as the situation requires.
52. Direct reorganization, as necessary.
53. Enforce the ROE and ROI.
54. Send updated SITREPs to the battalion task force commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-6505

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5813 TANK-CBTS-5401 TANK-CSS-5505

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
3. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
11. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
12. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
13. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-6707: Conduct Presence Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Military units deployed to support noncombat operations in an area of operations.

CONDITION: During stability operations, the company/team (CO/TM) receives an order to conduct presence operations within a noncontiguous area of operation (AO), in order to confirm or supervise a cease fire; gain information; establish mobile checkpoints; cover space between observation posts (OP) or checkpoints; show force presence to reassure communities; protect and/or escort formerly belligerent elements or local population through trouble spots; or search/recover remains. The order specifies all information required for patrols, overt OPs, checkpoints, and reconnaissance activities. Engineer and intelligence gathering resources are available to the CO/TM. The unit has established communications and digital connectivity, when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and the international media may be present in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE)/rules of interaction (ROI) is published. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company/team operates on visible routes and locations to deter belligerent actions and to defuse tense situations between belligerents IAW the order, higher commander's intent, and guidance. Presence patrols operate along designated route(s) and conduct reconnaissance to answer information requirements. OPs are established to maintain surveillance for the specified duration. The company/team establishes checkpoints, conducts search and seizure procedures, and prevents movement of personnel and equipment whose intent and/or presence conflict with objectives and/or international agreements. The company/team organizes a quick reaction force (QRF) based on the operational environment. All operations adhere to the ROE/ROI without serious injury to friendly civilians and military forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLP) to prepare the order.
2. Company commander issues the order.
3. Address orientation to include lateral and rear boundaries, routes, start points (SP) and release points (RP), command directed named areas of interest (NAI), and the time/distance factors for reaction times.
4. Address belligerent situation to include at a minimum: factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known belligerents; description of uniforms, vehicles, insignia, markings, and equipment to include threat weapon systems, night observation devices (NOD), and their capabilities; current locations of weapon holding areas, staging areas, and/or encampments; locations of police stations, barracks, and governmental and political party headquarters; and description of likely belligerent courses of action (COA) based on most recent activities and equipment.
5. Address terrain to include: defensible terrain at or near company demonstration locations, location where the company can best be observed by belligerents, and key or favorable terrain to belligerents.
6. Address weather, task organization of assigned and attached elements and commander's intent.
7. Address scheme of maneuver that describes at a minimum: reconnaissance, patrolling, establishing OPs, establishing checkpoints, movement and

actions of the QRF; if available, locations of liaison and human intelligence (HUMINT) collection to defuse belligerent activities; graphic control measures to support concept of operation to include base camps, phase lines (PL), contact points, and checkpoints, as required; priorities of fire; and if available, integration of additional higher headquarters' ISR assets to augment company.

8. Address priorities for service support and concept of CSS operations.
9. Address movement and/or positioning of company commander and XO.
10. Company prepares for operations.
11. Conduct reconnaissance and QRF rehearsals.
12. Company conducts mounted or dismounted patrols.
13. Company conducts OPs.
14. Company operates checkpoints.
15. Company conducts linkup with area and/or base camp commanders, as necessary.
16. Company conducts QRF, as necessary.
17. Company maintains command and control (C2) of the operation.
18. Monitor the situation.
19. Ensure ROE/ROI are strictly enforced.
20. Ensure weapon systems are oriented, not directly aimed, in the direction of belligerents.
21. Leaders conduct negotiation and liaison and react proportionally to belligerent escalation IAW order and/or ROE/ROI.
22. Ensure that authorization for use of force is provided by following the correct procedures.
23. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units.
24. Report information that best allows timely decisions by the commander and his higher headquarters IAW order and/or SOP.
25. Confirm or deny higher's information requirements (CCIR and specific information requirements [SIR]): threat and/or belligerent factions, compositions, and activities; capabilities and limitations of infrastructure to support local populace; serviceability of roads and routes; source information for power and/or influence; and needs of society.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-OTH-6706	TANK-OTH-6704	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-OTH-6702	

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-OTH-5703	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-CMDC-5208

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations
4. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
7. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance
8. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6801: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An assembly area (AA) is an area in which a unit or command is assembled prior to further action.

CONDITION: The company receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to occupy an assembly area independently or as part of a battalion. The order and unit SOP specify required assembly area activities, REDCON levels, and priorities of work. Time is available to complete assembly area procedures. Enemy contact is not likely. Additional assets are available for cross-attachment to the company or the company may cross attach to another unit. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company enters the assembly area without stopping or blocking the route of march, establishes local security, and maintains appropriate REDCON levels. The company performs all specified assembly area procedures and executes priorities of work as specified in the OPORD/FRAGO/SOP or by the company commander.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander designates company personnel for quartering party duties IAW unit SOP and tactical requirements.
2. Brief personnel on company or battalion requirements for the quartering party.
3. Assist in reconnaissance of the route and the proposed assembly area; assist in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes; assist in marking obstacles, mines, and contaminated areas.
4. Select and mark tentative platoon, section, and vehicle positions IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
5. Maintain surveillance and provide security of the area until the arrival of the company.
6. As required, post company guides at the battalion RP and platoon guides at the company RP.
7. Company clears RP and moves into assembly area.
8. Follows directions from the guides stationed at the RP.
9. Move off the route of march and clear the RP without stopping or blocking traffic.
10. Orients weapon systems outward to cover sectors of responsibility.
11. Company conducts initial occupation of assembly area.
12. Follow directions from guides and move into marked vehicle positions (using ground guides as necessary).
13. Orient weapon systems to cover sectors of responsibility.
14. Following proper cool-down procedures, shut down engines simultaneously.
15. Company commander/XO/Tank Leader initiate assembly area activities.
16. Review organization of the assembly area with quartering party personnel.
17. Designate platoon direct fire responsibilities.
18. Direct platoon commanders to prepare platoon fire plans.
19. Keep the battalion commander informed of the status of the operation, taking the following steps as appropriate: report company's arrival at assembly area; report completion of initial occupation of assembly area

positions; as necessary throughout the operation, compile SITREPs from platoon commanders (via wire, messenger, FM, or digital system) and forward consolidated SITREPs to the battalion commander (via wire, messenger, FM, or digital system).

20. Determine security procedures, REDCON level, and priorities of work.
21. The company establishes local security as specified.
22. Establish mounted and dismounted OPs (as necessary); establish sectors of fire that provide overlapping fields of fire and identify responsibility for observation during periods of limited visibility; establish patrols to prevent enemy infiltration and to clear possible enemy OPs; reduce dead space to a minimum by employing hasty obstacles and indirect fires; establish communications security in the assembly area IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP; camouflage vehicles and equipment; and enforce noise, light, and litter discipline.
23. The company assumes specified REDCON level.
24. Assume REDCON-1 (full alert). NOTE: A period of maximum preparedness, REDCON-1 ensures that all crewmen are alert and prepared for action immediately; vehicles are loaded and secured, and weapons are manned; digital linkup, if applicable, is complete; and vehicles are ready to move immediately, with engines running and OPs pulled in.
25. Assume REDCON-1.5 (full alert). NOTE: A period of maximum preparedness, this level has the same readiness requirements as REDCON-1 except that vehicle engines are not running.
26. Assume REDCON-2 (full alert). NOTE: Equipment is stowed except for wire and telephone gear, if used; digital linkup, if applicable, is complete; platoon vehicles and weapons are manned; OPs and chemical alarms are still deployed; engines are off; and all vehicles are ready to move within 15 minutes of notification.
27. Assume REDCON-3 (reduced alert). NOTE: Fifty percent of each crew stands down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop leading procedures; remaining personnel man vehicles, weapons, and OPs; monitor radios; and continue with assembly area procedures; digital link within company team is maintained; and vehicles are ready to move within 30 minutes of notification.
28. Assume REDCON-4 (minimum alert). NOTE: Seventy-five percent of each crew stands down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop leading procedures; one vehicle per platoon has crew-served weapons manned; digital link is maintained with platoon commanders/sergeants, as applicable; OPs are manned; and vehicles are ready to move within 1 hour of notification.
29. Company commander prepares company fire plan.
30. Coordinate with adjacent units.
31. Develop fire plan using platoon fire plans and information from higher headquarters and adjacent units.
32. Ensure that fire plan affords overlapping sectors of observation and fire (including supporting fires) within the company team and with adjacent units.
33. Send copy of fire plan to the battalion commander (via messenger or digital system).
34. Company conducts priorities of work, including required OPSEC, maintenance, resupply, and rest activities.
35. Establish and maintain security IAW company commander's guidance, OPORD/FRAGO, and/or unit SOP.
36. Perform necessary vehicle and equipment maintenance.
37. Procedures include the following: report equipment deficiencies through the platoon sergeant to the Tank Leader, organizational maintenance

personnel, and/or higher-echelon maintenance personnel; within capabilities, recover or evacuate damaged vehicles and equipment; perform emergency repairs and operator maintenance as necessary; perform and/or assist with scheduled maintenance; and on order of the battalion commander, destroy vehicles and equipment that cannot be recovered or evacuated.

38. Coordinate and conduct company resupply, including refueling and rearmament.
39. Develop and implement sleep plan.
40. Company conducts cross-attachment as required.
41. If attaching to an outside battalion the company commander coordinates with the gaining force's TOC; coordinates contact point and time of cross-attachment; and submits status report(s) as necessary.
42. XO coordinates prior to movement with the losing task force's CTCP for logistical support to accompany the company, support may include the following: maintenance team, corpsmen and vehicle support; and resupply operations, including refueling and rearming, prior to departure from original unit.
43. If attaching a platoon from an outside unit or detaching a platoon to an outside unit: losing and gaining commanders conduct coordination to verify contact point and time of cross-attachment; attached/detached platoon refuels and rearms prior to departure from original unit; XO coordinates cross-attachment of the appropriate types of mechanics (for example, a tank company would receive a mechanic with the attached mechanized platoon; a mechanized company would receive a tank mechanic with the attached tank platoon; attached/detached platoon enters the net of the gaining company/unit; completion of cross-attachment is reported to the gaining and losing units (company and other unit) and their higher headquarters (battalion and other unit).
44. Company performs field sanitation operations.
45. Maintain adequate supply of potable water; establish field heads and hand-washing facilities; perform personal hygiene activities; and establish mess facilities and ensure safe food preparation, storage, and disposal.
46. Company commander/subordinate leaders conduct troop-leading procedures until ordered to move for the next mission.
47. On receipt of further orders, company conducts preparations for departing the assembly area.
48. As directed, reconnoiter route and calculate time-distance factors from the company team position to the SP.
49. Conduct police call to ensure no equipment, supplies, or other items of tactical or intelligence value is left behind.
50. Progressively increase readiness levels as required based on task force commander's guidance or SOP.

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5801 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations

6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6802: Conduct Consolidation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Consolidation is the organizing and strengthening of a newly captured position so that it is used against the enemy.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting tactical operations independently, or as part of a battalion and either gains an objective or repels an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated but is still capable of some disorganized resistance. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company destroys, captures, or forces all enemies to withdraw. The company completes consolidation within one hour and sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The company maintains situational awareness by monitoring FM and digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company clears area of the enemy.
2. Reports and updates on enemy status are made in FM or digital communications.
3. Destroy or capture all enemy combat vehicles and personnel.
4. Drives enemy from the objective/defensive sector and surrounding key terrain.
5. Company establishes security.
6. Position tanks to cover armor avenues of approach.
7. Emplace observation posts (OP).
8. Position vehicles so they have overlapping fields of fire.
9. Annotate graphic control measures on overlays.
10. Company establishes a hasty defense.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6803: Conduct Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Reorganization is the shifting of internal resources within a degraded unit to increase its level of combat effectiveness.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion and either gains an objective or repels an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated and the platoon completes consolidation. The company sustained casualties and damaged/destroyed equipment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company removes all EPWs, WIAs, and KIAs from the company area within 1 hour. The company conducts immediate resupply and cross-leveling of Class V items and reestablishes a chain of a command. The company accomplishes reorganization of elements below 50 percent strength within 1 hour and verifies that all Marines and leaders are aware of the new chain of command. The company maintains situational awareness by monitoring FM or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander reports status to Battalion Commander/XO via FM or digital communications.
2. Report casualties and personnel status, class III and V status, vehicle status, communications equipment status, and items for resupply.
3. Company commander establishes or reestablishes command and control.
4. Reestablish communications with the battalion and adjacent units, using FM or digital communications.
5. Develop a COA for the unit.
6. Coordinate with adjacent units.
7. Company accounts for personnel and determines WIAs, MIAs, and KIAs.
8. Report personnel status to Battalion Commander/XO via FM or digital communications.
9. Company commander replaces key losses.
10. Utilize personnel from disabled vehicles, fill leader positions first, verify all tanks have at least a three-man crew, redesignate wingmen, and submit requests for replacement personnel using FM or digital communications.
11. Company initiates evacuation procedures.
12. Submit requests via FM or digital communications, evacuate the seriously wounded and KIAs, recover and evacuate disabled vehicles, and evacuate intelligence information and EPWs.
13. Company cross-levels and resupplies ammunition.
14. Inventory and cross-level remaining ammunition, redistribute ammunition from damaged vehicles, reload ready storage area and machine gun bins to capacity, and request resupply from Battalion Commander/XO after consolidating vehicle SITREPs and determining ammunition, fuel, personnel, and vehicle status.
15. Company prepares for tactical operations.
16. Restore communications, perform maintenance checks and emergency repairs, verify FM communications in all vehicles prior to movement, refuel and rearm, continue to implement SOP, and issue FRAGO, as necessary.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-6505	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CSS-6502
TANK-CSS-6504		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5803	TANK-CSS-5503	TANK-CSS-5501
TANK-CSS-5505		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6804: Conduct Tactical Movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Moving tactically dictates that elements of a unit are organized to facilitate combat. Movement techniques are used to traverse terrain such as traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch, which is determined by the likelihood of enemy contact. Movement formations are the arrangement of Marines and/or vehicles for a specific purpose related to terrain and the likelihood of enemy contact. Formations include box, column, diamond, line, vee, wedge, and echelon (right or left).

CONDITION: While conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a battalion, the company receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order may or may not specify the route or axis of advance. The likelihood of enemy contact may or may not change several times during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement that are specified in the company team OPORD/FRAGO and that are appropriate based on the likelihood of enemy contact. As necessary, the company adjusts the route/axis, formation, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact or changes in the tactical situation (METT-TC factors). The company maintains security at all times.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct troop-leading procedures.
2. Implement force protection measures based upon METT-TC.
3. Ensure that overwatch is always maintained.
4. Select traveling overwatch technique when speed is desirable but contact with the enemy is possible.
5. Report potential threats to higher and adjust force protection measures accordingly.

6. Select bounding overwatch technique when contact with the enemy is expected
7. Select alternate bounding method when a secure, but more rapid, advance is required.
8. Select successive bounding method when maximum security and ease of control are required.
9. Select movement formation based on METT-TC. Note: The company normally uses formations only with the traveling or traveling overwatch movement technique.
10. Select column formation when speed is critical, when the company team is moving through restricted terrain on a specific route, and/or when enemy contact is not likely and the company team is using the traveling movement technique.
11. Select wedge formation when the company is on terrain that allows dispersal and requires enhanced security to the front and flanks. NOTE: The wedge can be used when the company team is using the traveling or traveling overwatch technique to facilitate transition to bounding overwatch.
12. Select vee formation when the company is on terrain that allows dispersion and needs to maximize firepower to the front while maintaining flank security. NOTE: The vee can be used when the company is using the traveling or traveling overwatch technique. It allows rapid transition to traveling overwatch and bounding overwatch.
13. Select echelon formation when the company team must maximize firepower to the flank.
14. Select line formation when the company is required to cross danger areas and is provided with overwatch by another element or when the company team assaults enemy positions. NOTE: The line formation is used in limited circumstances in the assault, including when there is no more intervening terrain between the enemy and the company, when all enemy antitank systems are destroyed, or when the unit is exposed to artillery fire and must close rapidly with the enemy.
15. Company commander briefs company team and initiates movement.
16. Brief platoon commanders and other key subordinates thoroughly on movement route or axis, movement techniques, and formations.
17. Specify conditions under which the company will change movement techniques and/or formations.
18. Designate bounding and overwatch elements (if applicable) based on METT-TC.
19. Brief/update direct fire plan and control measures.
20. Specify use of waypoints and/or POSNAV to assist in navigation, if applicable.
21. Use correct visual signal and/or voice command on FM radio to initiate movement technique and/or formation.
22. Uses graphic control measures or other cue to initiate movement technique and/or formation.
23. Company executes movement technique as directed by the company commander.
24. As ordered, employ traveling technique: assume correct order of march as directed by the company commander; move continuously as one unit, with elements trailing one after the other; maintain interval and dispersion between vehicles as terrain and weather permit; use terrain-driving techniques by individual vehicles to reduce exposure; maintain visual contact between lead and trail elements; as much as possible, maintain platoon integrity and organize the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission; and maintain areas of responsibility for observation

and fire to ensure 360-degree security.

25. As ordered, employ traveling overwatch technique: platoons assume positions as lead (bounding) and trail (overwatch) elements as designated by the company commander; lead element moves continuously; trail element halts periodically at advantageous vantage points to provide overwatch and/or base of fire for the lead element; use terrain-driving techniques by individual vehicles to reduce exposure; Company Commander maintains command and control of the company team, using hand-and-arm signals or FM communications as the terrain allows, and vehicle commanders maintain 360-degree security.
26. The company commander designates the bounding and overwatch elements and specifies either the alternate or successive bounding method.
27. Deploy lead (bounding) and trail (overwatch) platoons.
28. As ordered, employ bounding overwatch technique.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5827 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6805: Conduct a Movement to Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A movement to contact is a form of the offense designed to develop the situation and to establish or regain contact with the enemy.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a battalion and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a movement to contact. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the movement to contact in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit maintains all around security and is not surprised by the enemy. The unit focuses all efforts on finding the enemy. The security force

locates and fixes the enemy and continues to develop the situation allowing the unit to rapidly deploy and attack in any direction. The unit makes contact with the smallest element possible. The unit maintains contact with the enemy once gained. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commanders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Company commander receives an order or anticipates a new mission and begins the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order, conduct a map reconnaissance, and conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
4. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
5. Include location and orientation of enemy forces and target acquisition assets; enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves; location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems; positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets; enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines; enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems; and likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
6. Develop reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP to conduct a physical reconnaissance.
7. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
8. Develop an R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
9. Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
10. Develop a scheme of maneuver using the following fundamentals: focus all efforts on finding the enemy by developing a strong reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition effort and through the employment of robust security forces; make contact with electronic means first, if that is not possible, then make contact with the smallest force possible, consistent with protecting the force; make initial contact with small, mobile, self-contained forces to avoid decisive engagement of the main body; and task-organize the force and use movement formations that enable the unit to deploy and attack rapidly in any direction.
11. Maintain the ability to mass fires rapidly in any direction.
12. Keep forces within supporting distances to facilitate a flexible response.
13. Provide all around security for the unit.
14. Maintain contact, once gained, regardless of the maneuver option adopted.
15. Rely on SOPs and drills to develop the situation and maintain tempo.
16. Develop a flexible scheme of maneuver since the location of the engagement with the enemy is not known.
17. Support the higher commander's concept and intent.
18. Avoid mounted movement on terrain restricting maneuver (such as draws, ravines, narrow trails, or steep slopes).
19. Address actions at known or likely enemy locations; methods for moving through and crossing dangerous areas; formation and known locations where the formation will change; actions and array of forces at the final objective or limit of advance (LOA); and decision points (DPs) and

criteria for execution of maneuver options that may develop during execution.

20. Integrate and synchronize combat support and combat service support.
21. Plan responsive and decentralized fires for each phase of the operation; plan targets based on known or suspected enemy locations and danger areas and to support future operations; refine targets based on the reconnaissance effort as the operation progresses; maximize the use of priority targets along the axis of advance; ensure immediately responsive fire support to the lead elements by assigning priority of fires to the advance guard; position observers effectively and maximize the use of lead maneuver forces to call for fires since they often have the best view of the enemy (observers must understand the essential fire support tasks for each phase of the operation); and synchronize the movement and positioning of artillery and mortars with the tempo of the unit and the fire support requirements.
22. Plan engineer support.
23. Task-organize engineer forces well forward to support potential breaching operations; allocate additional mobility assets and engineer forces to the advance guard; and integrate obstacle intelligence requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.
24. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting CS and CSS units.
25. Ensure terrain visualization products from the higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions and or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.
26. Maintain the flexibility to mass engineers to breach significant obstacles; plan obstacle belts, obstacle control measures, and situational obstacles to support flank security; and develop plans for the hand off of marked obstacles, lanes, and bypasses.
27. Consider the requirement for route maintenance, clearance, and repair.
28. Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone and or axis.
29. Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
30. Plan scatterable mine systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
31. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
32. Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan; ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations; develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit; and develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
33. Plan combat service support (CSS).
34. Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
35. Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
36. Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective.
37. Plan and coordinate the locations, displacements, and routes of CSS assets to maintain responsive support.

38. Continuously update the CSS plan based on near-real-time status of units.
39. Plan and coordinate for aerial resupply if available.
40. Plan casualty evacuation.
41. Conduct risk management.
42. Prepare for the movement to contact.
43. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence; conduct extensive reconnaissance; and conduct precombat checks.
44. Subordinates conduct parallel planning as well as start their preparation for the movement to contact immediately after the unit issues a warning order (WARNO).
45. Supervise and/or inspect subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
46. Conduct rehearsals.
47. Address actions to cross known danger areas; the advance guard making contact with a small enemy force; the advance guard making contact with a large force beyond its capabilities to defeat; the advance guard making contact with an obstacle the reconnaissance and surveillance force has not identified and reported; a flank security force making contact with a small force; a flank security force making contact with a large force beyond its capability to defeat; actions to report and bypass an enemy force (based on the bypass criteria); and transition into a maneuver option.
48. Conduct R&S efforts.
49. Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition; determine size, location, and composition of obstacles and seeks bypasses or breach site; determine composition, disposition, and strength of reserves; determine enemy vulnerabilities; focus on the enemy's security forces forward of the enemy's main defense to locate positions and obstacles along the unit's planned routes of advance; seek to locate restrictive terrain and danger areas; and maintain contact once gained.
50. Prepare to initiate contact or continue the movement to contact at night or other periods of limited visibility.
51. Unit executes approach march technique.
52. Assign axis of advance or a zone and a march objective to orient movement.
53. Select routes based on IPB and guidance from higher headquarters.
54. Develop the situation early, but avoid decisive engagement (once found, the enemy must be kept under surveillance and his activity reported).
55. Establish a hasty defense, if the unit reaches the objective before making contact with the enemy, then seeks guidance from higher headquarters.
56. Assist platoons by ensuring the availability of adequate supporting fires, mobile transportation assets, timely accurate intelligence, and reserve forces.
57. Ensure R&S force provide security to the front during the approach march.
58. Ensure flank security elements operate far enough out to prevent the enemy from placing direct or observed indirect fires on the company.
59. Ensure platoons are prepared to rapidly deploy and attack, giving them the flexibility to maneuver rapidly to a decisive point on the battlefield to destroy the enemy.
60. Contain the bulk of the company's combat elements and ensure they are arrayed to achieve all around security.
61. Use standard formations and battle drills that allow the unit commander, to rapidly shift combat power on the battlefield.
62. Execute a hasty ambush, force-oriented attack, hasty defense, or retrograde.

63. Unit executes search and attack technique.
64. Seek the most likely locations of enemy base camps, command and control sites, and mortars.
65. Designate a main effort and supporting efforts that enable the company to maintain the amount of flexibility the situation dictates.
66. Coordinate for indirect-fire weapons that can respond to all platoons as needed.
67. Ensure the company combat trains support the main effort while remaining responsive to the rest of the unit.
68. Find and fix the enemy.
69. Conduct a hasty attack, maintain surveillance, and finish the enemy rapidly.
70. Conduct hasty or deliberate attacks, or maneuver to block enemy escape routes while another unit conducts the attack.
71. Employ indirect fire or close air support (CAS) to destroy the enemy.
72. Unit leaders assess the operation.
73. Upon making unexpected contact with the enemy, the unit commander decides on a COA (consider a bypass, hasty ambush, force-orientated attack, attack by fire, or hasty defense).
74. Unit complies with ROE.
75. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
76. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
77. Unit processes captured documents and/or equipment as required.
78. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5805

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6806: Conduct Actions on Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: In both offensive and defensive operations, contact occurs when a member of the company encounters any situation that requires an active or passive response to the enemy. These situations may entail one or more of the following forms of contact: visual contact to include civilians (friendly elements may or may not be observed by the enemy), physical contact (direct fire) with an enemy force or hostile civilians, indirect fire contact, contact with obstacles of enemy or unknown origin, contact with enemy or unknown aircraft, situations involving NBC conditions, and/or situations

involving EW tactics.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and recognizes one of the forms of contact or receives a report of enemy contact. The company conducts actions on contact in response to a variety of circumstances, including the following: subordinate platoon(s) conducting actions on contact, reports from the battalion task force or another higher unit, and/or reports from or actions of an adjacent unit. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and/or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company executes actions on contact and reports the contact to higher headquarters using a logical, well-organized process of decision-making and action entailing the following four steps: deploy and report, evaluate and develop the situation, choose a COA, and execute the selected COA. The company executes the directed course of action in accordance with the commander's intent. No friendly unit suffer casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. All platoon and company headquarters monitor report of contact.
2. A report of contact is sent to the battalion commander.
3. Elements not in contact make estimates of the situation by determining essential enemy information.
4. Identify location of enemy flanks.
5. Identify covered and concealed routes around the enemy position into his flanks and rear.
6. Identify possible locations of obstacles.
7. Identify possible locations supporting enemy elements.
8. Locate supporting enemy elements.
9. All information of the enemy and terrain is reported to the company commander and relayed to the battalion CP.
10. The company is not decisively engaged by initial contact.
11. The company commander estimates the situation.
12. Make a METT-TC assessment and follow the battalion commander's intent.
13. Company commander selects a course of action (COA).
14. The unit attacks when the enemy is a defending platoon or smaller, a moving enemy company or smaller, or a surprised/unprepared enemy.
15. The unit fixes an enemy unit while the battalion bypasses.
16. The unit bypasses the enemy when the mission dictates.
17. The company defends when the enemy in contact is significantly superior.
18. The company commander reports the situation to the battalion CP.
19. Report enemy contact IAW SOP or the OPORD.
20. Report company COA.
21. Request required assistance.
22. Recommend battalion COA if enemy contact exceeds company capabilities.
23. The company executes COA selected by the company commander or directed by the battalion commander.

24. Bypass or engage enemy elements as the mission dictates.
25. Employ organic and supporting fire support to assist the maneuver.
26. Use all available cover and concealment.
27. Maintain freedom of maneuver.
28. The company maintains enemy contact and continues the mission per battalion orders or the battalion commander's intent.
29. The enemy in contact is rendered combat ineffective.
30. Friendly units remain free to maneuver.
31. The situation is clearly reported to battalion headquarters allowing them freedom to take subsequent action based on the initial enemy contact.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6807: Conduct a Hasty Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A hasty attack is an attack in which preparation time is traded for speed in order to exploit an opportunity. It is launched with the forces at hand and with minimum preparation to destroy the enemy before he is able to concentrate or establish a defense.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a battalion. Through a lack of situational awareness (SA) from ineffective reconnaissance or degraded capability, the advance guard of the unit encounters an enemy force unexpectedly. Time is available for the unit commander to make a decision on what action to take and for the main body to fully deploy. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts a hasty attack in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and the battalion commander's intent. The unit commander and staff evaluate the situation and decide on a course of action (COA). The unit deploys, redeploys, and redirects reconnaissance

assets to gain information. The unit executes the selected COA IAW the higher commander's intent. The unit maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and maintain situational awareness using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit advance guard performs actions on contact and develops the situation; deploy, report, and determine the enemy's dispositions and intentions; avoid a decisive engagement IAW commander's intent; and prevent a defending enemy from improving forward defenses.
3. Unit commander reports contact to the higher headquarters; requests indirect fire and close air support (CAS) from the higher headquarters; and decides on a COA.
4. Deploy, redeploy, or redirect reconnaissance assets to gain information.
5. Consider a bypass, hasty-ambush, force-oriented attack, attack by fire (ABF), or hasty defense.
6. Issue a FRAGO and graphics for the selected COA to subordinate elements.
7. Unit bypasses the enemy using one or both of the following bypasses techniques: avoid the enemy and bypass or fix the enemy by fire and bypass.
8. Unit executes a hasty ambush.
9. Direct platoons and subordinate elements to occupy hasty firing positions.
10. Maneuver quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react.
11. Assign platoons and subordinate elements sectors of fire into an engagement area.
12. Mass fire upon enemy targets once the majority of the enemy formation is in the engagement area IAW the commander's intent.
13. Reports status to higher headquarters.
14. Unit executes a force-orientated attack.
15. Deploy and engage the enemy to develop the situation quickly (platoon in contact).
16. Suppress known and suspected positions (designated overwatch platoon).
17. Move forward and observe likely enemy counterattack routes.
18. Request indirect fires to block enemy routes of reinforcement and withdrawal or provide smoke to screen or deceive.
19. Direct engineers (if available) to be prepared to conduct a breach of hasty protective and delaying obstacles.
20. Direct employment of situational obstacles to protect the company's flanks and help isolate enemy forces.
21. Attack a stationary force and destroy the enemy in position.
22. Attack a moving force and destroy the enemy in a designated engagement area.
23. Attack a withdrawing force and destroy the enemy by pursuit by fire, movement, or both.
24. Report status to higher headquarters.
25. Unit executes an attack by fire (ABF).
26. Select ABF positions that allow the unit to effectively engage the enemy and provide adequate cover and concealment.
27. Direct platoons and attached elements to occupy designated ABF positions.
28. Determine location of enemy elements using R&S assets and updated SA.
29. Place a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy positions.
30. Call for and adjust indirect fires to suppress, destroy, or obscure the enemy force.

31. Direct the shifting, refocusing, and redistribution of fires as necessary to destroy enemy forces.
32. Direct the lifting of fires to facilitate the movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
33. Alternate firing positions as necessary.
34. Report status to higher headquarters.
35. Unit executes a defense.
36. Select defensive positions that allow the unit to effectively engage the enemy and provide adequate cover and concealment.
37. Designate and distribute defensive control measures and disseminate the information to subordinate commanders.
38. Designate target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas, and direct fire responsibilities.
39. Occupy defensive positions.
40. Engage the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.
41. Employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability.
42. Direct the shifting, refocusing, and redistribution of direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements.
43. Employ indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan or OPORD and or FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force.
44. Direct the lifting and shifting of indirect fires.
45. Shift indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements.
46. Lift indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
47. Company commander issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required.
48. Issue FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified.
49. Report status to higher headquarters.
50. Defeat the enemy or conduct battle handover with follow-on forces IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent.
51. Unit executes a retrograde.
52. Establish initial defensive positions (lead platoons).
53. Reposition to the rear.
54. Employ indirect fires, obstacles, and smoke to assist forward elements with disengagement and displacement.
55. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.
56. Disengage and displace to the rear.
57. Report status to higher headquarters.
58. Unit complies with ROE.
59. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
60. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
61. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
62. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
63. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CMDC-6207
TANK-TAC-6804		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6808: Conduct a Deliberate Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A deliberate attack is a tactical action characterized by preplanned and coordinated employment of firepower and maneuver to close with and destroy or capture the enemy. An attack planned and carefully coordinated and rehearsed with all concerned elements based on thorough reconnaissance, evaluation of all available intelligence and relative combat strength, analysis of various courses of action, and other factors affecting the situation. It generally is conducted against a well-organized defense when a hasty attack is not possible or was conducted and failed.

CONDITION: The tank company is conducting operations independently or as part of a battalion and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a force-oriented attack against a stationary force at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and/or graphics. The unit is occupying an assembly area out of contact with the enemy. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts the attack in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive R&S. The unit avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The unit limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting unit elements through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke. The unit fully employs all available combat power to isolate and destroy the enemy force. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander receives order or anticipates a new mission and begins METT-TC.
3. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not

received with order; conduct a map reconnaissance; and conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).

4. Employ all available information-gathering assets; define the battlefield environment; describe battlefield effects; evaluate the enemy; and determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).
5. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
6. Include location and orientation of enemy forces; include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves; include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems; include location of enemy target acquisition assets; include positioning of enemy air defense (AD) assets; include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines; include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems; and include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).
7. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MCPP (if attached from higher).
8. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates; develop an R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent; and include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
9. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
10. Designate the main effort as required: assign the main attack to the platoon with the greatest combat power; ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort; attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS); assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or non-lethal effects and priority of targets; and narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.
11. Designate the supporting effort.
12. Designate a breach element as required.
13. Designate an assault element as required.
14. Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed.
15. Plan fire support.
16. Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective; assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or non-lethal effects and priority of targets; plan obscuration fires as required; plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary; plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort; plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense; plan fires in support of the approach to the objective (these fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces); plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves; and plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide.
17. Conduct attack.
18. Plan engineer support.
19. Report status to higher headquarters.
20. Unit complies with ROE.
21. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
22. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

23. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
24. Unit processes captured documents and/or equipment as required.
25. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6206
TANK-CMDC-6208		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5811	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804
TANK-TAC-5805		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
9. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
10. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
12. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6809: Follow and Support
SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Follow and support is a tactical operation in which a committed force follows and supports the mission accomplishment of a force conducting an offensive operation. Such a force is not a reserve but is committed to accomplish any or all of these tasks: destroy bypassed units; relieve in place any direct pressure or encircling force that halted to contain the enemy; block movement of enemy reinforcements; secure lines of communication; guard prisoners, key areas, and installations; secure key terrain, and control refugees.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is tasked to follow and support the lead element in an attack or movement to contact. The company commander receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to follow and support and then conduct linkup with the lead element's fixing or overwatch force to destroy pockets of resistance bypassed by the lead element. Indirect fire and intelligence assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and passes information in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this

task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts follow and support, conducts linkup with engaged friendly force, and then destroys the enemy, enabling the lead force to rejoin the lead element and continue its mission. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company conducts movement and linkup with the lead element fixing force.
2. Use covered and concealed routes that do not interfere with battlespace or movement of the lead element, to the maximum extent possible.
3. Use the most advantageous formation and movement technique based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
4. Based on the formation selected, maintain proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security.
5. Conduct linkup with the lead element, if applicable, and exchange critical tactical information.
6. Maintain and update the common operational picture (COP).
7. Accept responsibility for the following applicable tasks: destroy pockets of resistance bypassed by the lead element; secure the flanks of a penetration to prevent the enemy from closing the penetration; expand the area of a penetration; secure lines of communications (LOC); secure key terrain; protect key installations; guard enemy prisoners of war (EPW); and process detained civilians.
8. Company commander issues a FRAGO to the company using voice or digital communications, at a minimum including the following information: describe the friendly and enemy situations; specify any changes to company and/or platoon tasks and purpose; specify any changes to the scheme of maneuver; develop company direct fire plan; and specify any additional instructions as necessary.
9. Company assumes responsibility for supported unit's task to allow the fixing force to rejoin the lead element.
10. Suppress, obscure, or destroy the enemy/threat resistance with indirect fires.
11. Conduct actions on contact, if enemy/threat contact occurs.
12. Employ direct fires to destroy the enemy/threat resistance fixed by the supported force.
13. Company commander keeps the battalion commander informed of the situation and prepares the company for future operations.
14. During execution, send updated situation reports (SITREP) to the battalion commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
15. Report completion of the follow and support mission to the battalion commander.
16. Direct the company to conduct consolidation and/or reorganization at a secure location and await further orders.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6827

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5807 TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-TAC-5805
TANK-TAC-5819

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6810: Conduct an Attack by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Attack by fire (ABF) are fires (direct and indirect) employed to destroy the enemy from a distance, normally used when the mission does not dictate or support occupation of the objective. This task is usually given to the supporting element during the offensive and as a counterattack option for the reserve during defensive operations. An attack by fire is not done in conjunction with a maneuvering force. When assigning this task, the commander must specify the intent of fire, either to destroy, fix, or suppress.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct an attack by fire (ABF) to fix, attrite, or destroy the enemy force. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander selects an ABF position and issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO). The company maneuvers to and occupies designated ABF positions IAW the commander's FRAGO and intent. The company conducts ABF by placing effective direct and indirect fires on the enemy element, to fix, attrite, destroy, or force the enemy to withdraw IAW the commander's intent. The company completes the ABF mission with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company commander selects an ABF position and issues a FRAGO.
2. Evaluate the situation.
3. Select ABF position that allows the company to effectively engage the enemy and that provides adequate cover and concealment for the company.
4. Plan direct and indirect fire planning and integration.
5. The direct fire plan allows the company to mark its fire on the objective.
6. Determine triggers for lifting and shifting direct and indirect fires.

7. Issue a FRAGO to the company addressing changes in the friendly and enemy situations and directing the company to occupy the designated position.
8. Company maneuvers to and occupies ABF position.
9. Use maneuver along covered and concealed axes (if available) to prevent the enemy force from effectively engaging the company.
10. Maintain security by suppressing enemy forces and maintaining observation to the front, flanks, and rear.
11. If attached, employ infantry squads, based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC), to assist mounted elements.
12. Infantry support functions include the following: secure positions prior to occupation by mounted elements; augment mounted antitank (AT) fires with Javelin fires; provide local security for the attack by fire force; and occupy the most advantageous position that allow the platoons to place accurate fires on the enemy and to take advantage of unit weapon systems and standoff range.
13. Company commander and/or fire support team (FiST) employs indirect fires.
14. Select and occupy positions affording clear observation of the enemy force.
15. Call for and adjust suppressive and obscuration fires against the enemy to allow the company to occupy the ABF position.
16. Call for and adjust indirect fires to disrupt, divert, limit, or obscure the enemy force.
17. The company conducts ABF.
18. Employ available weapon systems to attrite, fix, defeat, or destroy identified enemy elements or force them to withdraw.
19. Employ tank main gun, and Javelin (if applicable) to destroy armored vehicles and fortified positions.
20. Reposition or maneuver to alternate positions as necessary to maintain flexibility, enhance survivability, and maintain desired weapons effects on the enemy; maintain 360-degree security; and employ infantry squads (if applicable).
21. Company commander and platoon commanders direct the ABF mission to completion.
22. Orient subordinate elements and focus and distribute direct fires against identified enemy elements.
23. Shift, refocus, and redistribute direct fires as necessary to suppress or destroy identified enemy elements.
24. Direct the shifting of indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy vehicles or positions.
25. Lift fires to facilitate the movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy are achieved.
26. Issue additional FRAGOs and associated graphics to direct or retask subordinate elements as required, to conduct one of the following frequently performed offensive tactical actions/tasks: advance in contact, support by fire, follow and support, bypass, clearance in restricted terrain, or assault.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5808

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6811: Conduct Support by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Support by fire is a tactical task in which the company maneuvers to a position on the battlefield from which it can observe the enemy and engage him with direct and indirect fires. The purpose of support by fire is to prevent the enemy from engaging friendly forces. To accomplish this, the company must maintain orientation both on the enemy force and on the friendly maneuver force it is supporting.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to establish a support by fire (SBF) to support the attack or breaching operations of another unit. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander selects a SBF position and issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO). The company maneuvers to and occupies designated SBF positions IAW the commander's FRAGO and intent. The company conducts SBF by placing effective direct and indirect fires on the enemy element in order to prevent the enemy form engaging friendly maneuver and/or breaching forces. The company completes the SBF mission with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The company commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance to reconnoiter tentative overwatch/support position and routes to the location.
2. The position provides observation or overwatch and fields of fire.
3. The position provides adequate cover and concealment as appropriate.
4. Use natural or man-made obstacles on the position.
5. Identify avenues of approach for enemy armor/infantry elements.
6. Place effective fires within constraints of the terrain on the enemy flanks and provide overwatch within primary weapon range to cover assault elements.

7. Company commander coordinates with supported/overwatch unit commander.
8. Develop common fire control measures.
9. Adjacent and supporting units know each others plan.
10. Conduct joint briefbacks/rehearsals when possible.
11. Company commander designates fire procedures and control measures.
12. Target reference points are identified.
13. Establish sectors of observation and fire for each vehicle and position.
14. Disseminate rules and methods of engagement.
15. Inform all personnel of safety guidance for firing near friendly units.
16. Establish engagement priorities.
17. All personnel know signals for open fire, cease fire, lift fires, and shift fires and tasks for specific weapons or teams.
18. The company moves to firing positions.
19. Utilize covered and concealed routes.
20. Establish security.
21. Verify fire procedures and control measures.
22. Primary weapon systems are emplaced.
23. Emplace weapon systems covering sectors of fire and observation and any additional designated targets which maximize flank shots on the enemy.
24. Leaders position primary weapon system, special weapons, crew-served weapons, and any other special items.
25. The company maintains observation.
26. The overwatch element continually observes the supported unit's axis, sector, or direction of attack.
27. The overwatch element continually watches the supported unit's route.
28. Identify and target known or suspected enemy positions that could engage the supported unit.
29. On order, the company, under the commander's control, engages the enemy.
30. Acquire targets and place an accurate volume of fire on the enemy.
31. The volume of fire from the overwatch element is reduced when enemy fires become ineffective.
32. On signal from the maneuver unit, the company lifts and shifts fires.
33. Lift fires but continue to observe assigned sectors and be prepared to engage any threat to the assault element.
34. Shift fires to another target by walking fires in front of the maneuver unit.
35. The company ceases fire on order.
36. The company maneuvers as necessary to continue to support/overwatch.
37. The company continues the mission as directed by the battalion commander.
38. Move to the objective on order.
39. Consolidate and reorganize if necessary.
40. Pass the initial objective and conduct an attack on a second objective while another element supports by fire.
41. Issue additional FRAGOs and associated graphics to direct or retask subordinate elements as required, to conduct one of the following frequently performed offensive tactical actions/tasks: advance in contact, support by fire, follow and support, bypass, clearance in restricted terrain, or assault.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5809 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6812: Conduct a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A bypass is a tactical task that involves maneuvering around an obstacle, position, or enemy force to maintain the momentum of advance. Bypassed obstacles and enemy forces are reported to higher headquarters. It is conducted in accordance with the bypass criteria, which is established by higher headquarters, and specifies the conditions and size under which enemy units and contact are avoided.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and makes contact with an enemy force and/or an obstacle. It initiates actions on contact and is then directed by the battalion task force commander to conduct a bypass. Indirect fire and intelligence assets are available to the company team upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company locates a suitable bypass route or axis affording cover and concealment, and if possible, moves along bypass routes outside the enemy/threat's direct fire range. It conducts the bypass without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy/threat element. A fixing force from within the company maintains contact with the enemy element until it conducts handover to a supporting force, if applicable. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company conducts reconnaissance of the route to confirm the feasibility of the bypass.
2. Determine nature of enemy/threat or obstacle contact, including size, location, composition, and other factors.
3. Identify bypass route that affords adequate cover and concealment and intervening distance, preventing the enemy/threat from effectively obstructing and/or firing on the company.
4. If adequate cover and concealment or intervening distance is not available, plan additional security measures, such as employment of

screening or obscuring smoke.
5. Ensure bypass affords routes away from enemy/threat positions, obstacles, and kill zones (KZ).
6. Ensure that terrain along the bypass will support the maneuver of company vehicles.
7. If the company does not locate a suitable bypass, the company commander sends a SITREP to the battalion task force commander and prepares the company to take actions as directed.
8. Company commander designates fixing force, if enemy/threat contact is made.
9. Fixing force maintains contact with the enemy/threat force.
10. Suppress the enemy using direct and indirect fire.
11. Employ obscuring or screening smoke to facilitate maneuver of the rest of the company.
12. Maintain contact with the enemy until one of the following occurs: it completes destruction of the bypassed enemy element; it is relieved by follow-on forces to rejoin the company; and it is attached to a follow-on force.
13. Company (less the fixing force, if applicable) conducts tactical movement or maneuver along the route or axis, focusing on the following considerations: use appropriate movement technique and formation, maintain proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security, based on formation selected and availability of overwatch.
14. Identify and react to enemy/threat forces along the route.
15. Avoid decisive engagement.
16. Mark bypass as required.
17. Company takes appropriate actions after completion of the bypass.
18. Report completion and location of the bypass route to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital communications.
19. Continue the assigned mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5810	TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5805

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6813: Conduct an Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The assault is a complex tactical task that entails closure with the enemy, under fire of his weapons, to the point that the assaulting force gains positional advantage over and destroys the enemy. A company may be required to assault prepared or unprepared enemy positions from either an offensive or defensive posture.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct an assault on an enemy force. The company is task organized with a platoon of infantry. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander identifies the method to gain positional advantage over the enemy and issues OPORD or fragmentary order (FRAGO) detailing the assault. The company maneuvers to initiate assault based on the commander's OPORD/FRAGO and intent. The company conducts the assault by placing effective direct and indirect fires on the enemy element to destroy, capture, or force the enemy to withdraw. The company completes the assault mission with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander plans and coordinates the assault.
2. Plan covers a scheme of fire and maneuver with sufficient direct and indirect fires to suppress the enemy.
3. Platoons are given appropriate missions.
4. Platoons may be assigned overwatch/attack by fire missions when there is a need for more fires than can be provided by the battalion overwatch.
5. Maneuver routes avoid open areas and obstacles.
6. Actions on objective, subordinate objectives, or other measures to coordinate synchronization are outlined.
7. The method of assault is appropriate (dismounted assault supported by fire when there are obstacles and fields of fire but dismounted approach is available; mounted assault when there is an ability to close quickly and enemy fires can be suppressed; dismounted assault with tanks leading when limited fields of fire for enemy and no obstacles to movement and primary threat is small-arms and hand held HE weapons).
8. The assault is planned to exploit an enemy weakness (direction not covered by fires or direction enemy is not oriented to defend, such as a flank).
9. Fire control measures to coordinate internal and external overwatching and supporting fires with maneuver, allow target handoff and preclude friendly casualties.
10. Company prepares for final assault.
11. The company collects and reports tactical information about the enemy situation on the objective.
12. Conduct last minute checks of weapon systems, vehicles, and equipment.
13. Scans the enemy position to determine enemy size and type, enemy weak

point, weapon systems, location of minefields, ditches, wire, and routes of assault to the objective.
14. The company commander reports to the battalion when ready to assault.
15. Company remains in hide positions until ready to assault; maintain stealth.
16. The company receives order to assault the enemy position
17. Company assaults the enemy position.
18. Platoons maneuver IAW the company commander's orders obtaining flank and rear shots whenever possible.
19. The FO controls artillery in support of the assault.
20. The FAC controls CAS in support of the assault.
21. The NGLO controls naval gunfire in support of the assault.
22. The company assaults in appropriate formation affording maximum firepower forced.
23. Maintain forward momentum along assault routes in conjunction with other company elements.
24. Infantry dismounts move using covered and concealment to assault position short of the objective.
25. Tanks, AAVs, LAVs provide suppressive fire on the objective to support infantry/assault element assaults.
26. Employ all weapon systems to defeat the enemy in detail and destroy all resistance on the objective.
27. On order, supporting fires are shifted or lifted.
28. Tanks, AAVs, LAVs, and/or dismounted infantry assault through the objective.
29. Tanks move up, over, and around obstacles destroying remaining enemy armored vehicles, bunkers, and other forces.
30. Company destroys all fleeing vehicles.
31. Dismounted infantry flush out all dismounted resistance on the objective in the trenches or in hiding.
32. Company maintains communication with supporting elements.
33. The company consolidates and reorganizes.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6804		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5811	TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5805

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6814: Conduct an Ambush

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An ambush is an attack by fire or other destructive means from a concealed position on a moving or temporarily halted enemy. It may take the form of an assault to close with and destroy the enemy, or it may be an attack by fire only, executed from concealed positions. An ambush does not require that ground be seized or held. Ambushes are generally executed to reduce the enemy's forces overall combat effectiveness.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route. The enemy is operating along lines of communications or avenues of approach, in squad-size to company-size units, and can be reinforced with similar units, air support, and indirect fire. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander selects an ambush site and issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO). The company maneuvers to and occupies designated ambush site IAW the commander's FRAGO and intent. The company conducts the ambush by placing effective direct and indirect fires on the enemy element to accomplish the higher commander's intent. The company completes the ambush mission with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander develops an ambush plan.
2. Select a tentative ambush formation; or, for area ambushes, element locations or sectors and a scheme of maneuver which will maximize engagement of the enemy's flank or rear.
3. Establish criteria for initiation of ambush.
4. Develop signals for initiating ambush, cease fire, assault, withdrawal from the kill zone, and withdrawal from the ambush site.
5. Distribute information on target engagement techniques, if not in SOP.
6. Develop a plan for assault element actions in the kill zone.
7. Establish a withdrawal plan.
8. The company performs passage of lines and moves to the ambush site.
9. The company establishes an ambush site.
10. Conduct the reconnaissance undetected.
11. The company commander and security element leader(s) select the security positions that provide early warning of enemy approach toward any company element.
12. The company commander selects a kill zone that restricts enemy maneuver of the ambush site.
13. The company commander and support element leader select support position(s) that permit observation and effective fires in the kill zone.
14. The company commander and assault element leader select the assault position that provides observation and cover and concealment and is close enough for rapid assault into the kill zone.

15. Select positions large enough for all personnel and fighting positions.
16. The company commander and element leaders select primary and alternate covered and concealed routes to and from all positions and the ambush site.
17. The company commander leaves a surveillance team in positions observing the kill zone.
18. The reconnaissance element returns undetected.
19. Based on the reconnaissance, the company commander confirms or modifies his ambush plan.
20. Modification to the ambush plan are immediately disseminated to subordinate leaders.
21. Subordinate leaders verify receipt of the modified order and disseminate changes to all personnel.
22. The security elements move and occupy covered and concealed positions.
23. Elements move into position utilizing the appropriate movement technique.
24. Leaders designate sectors of observation and fire for individuals and primary weapon systems.
25. Designated personnel emplace antipersonnel and antitank mines, obstacles, and early warning devices, as the threat dictates.
26. Leaders check positions from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible.
27. Leaders position themselves to control their elements.
28. Subordinate leaders check all target acquisition and night-observation devices.
29. Leaders maintain communications with the company commander.
30. The occupation and establishment of the position(s) is undetected by the enemy.
31. Subordinate leaders report to the company commander when the position(s) is established.
32. Support and assault elements move and occupy covered and concealed positions.
33. Move after security teams are in position.
34. Teams move on order.
35. The company commander, FO, XO, and subordinate leaders position themselves for best control.
36. Subordinate leaders maintain communications with the commander.
37. The unit prepares the ambush site.
38. Leaders confirm sectors of observation and fire for individuals and primary weapon systems.
39. Designated personnel emplace antipersonnel and antitank mines, obstacles, and early warning devices, as the threat dictates.
40. Leaders check positions from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible; do not enter the kill zone.
41. Subordinate leaders check all target acquisition and night-observation devices for most effective positioning.
42. The occupation and establishment of the position(s) is undetected by the enemy.
43. Leaders report to the company commander when the position(s) is established.
44. The company employs OPSEC.
45. Camouflage, noise, and light discipline are enforced
46. Security forces are alert and using all available observation devices.
47. Radio-listening silence is enforced.
48. When the security team detects the enemy, it alerts the company commander.
49. As a minimum, the team reports the size of the target, the direction of

movement, and any special weapons or equipment carried.

50. The company commander alerts the company upon receipt of the report.
51. If the enemy is moving to attack the ambush, the security team engages the enemy force, the company commander maneuvers elements or employs the reserve to defeat and protect other elements of the ambush.
52. If the enemy force is too large, does not enter the kill zone, or has too many maneuver elements remaining outside the kill zone, the company commander will not initiate the ambush.
53. If the enemy does not detect the company, the company allows them to pass, reports the force to the battalion command post, and continues the mission.
54. If any element is detected, it engages the enemy and alerts the company.
55. If the enemy element enters the kill zone and falls within the engagement criteria, the ambush is initiated.
56. The company executes the ambush.
57. The company commander initiates the ambush, or authorizes a subordinate leader to initiate the ambush.
58. The company commander or leader initiate the ambush with the largest casualty producing weapon available.
59. If ambushing mounted or armored elements, the leader initiates the ambush with multiple, simultaneous antiarmor shots.
60. All weapons engage targets suitable to their characteristics.
61. The security team blocks any enemy attempts to maneuver and engage the ambush forces, block escape from the kill zone.
62. Platoons execute ambush.
63. The company uses indirect fire support systems.
64. Suppress and kill the enemy force.
65. Isolate the enemy force by blocking enemy reinforcements and counterattacking the original force.
66. When resistance in the kill zone ends, the company commander orders lifting and shifting of all fires, and prepares for the assault on the target.
67. On the company commander's signal, the support element lifts or shifts all supporting fires.
68. If applicable, the assault force assaults the kill zone.
69. Per the order, SOP, or the company commander's signal, the assault element assaults the target before it can react effectively.
70. All special teams accomplish their tasks immediately after their assault element establishes local security before the kill zone.
71. The company withdraws from the kill zone.
72. On order or on completion of actions in the kill zone, the assault element withdraws to a designated rally point.
73. The support element covers the withdrawal of the assault element from the kill zone.
74. The assault element accounts for all personnel and reports to the company commander.
75. The other elements withdraw to the point designated in the order.
76. The company commander uses planned indirect fore to assist and cover the withdrawal, or complete destruction of the enemy in the kill zone.
77. The company reorganizes and consolidates at the designated rally point.
78. The company moves from the rally point as soon as all elements report personnel and equipment accountability to the company commander.
79. The company commander reports the results of the ambush and company status to the battalion CP and continues the mission as directed by the battalion commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6208	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CMDC-6207

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6815: Conduct a Clearance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Clear is a tactical task to remove all enemy forces and eliminate organized resistance within an AO or an objective. The company may be tasked to clear an objective area during an attack, with the purpose of facilitating the movement of the remainder of the task force, or with clearance of a specific part of a larger objective area. Mechanized infantry rifle companies or company teams may be best suited to conduct clearance operations, which in many cases will involve working in restricted terrain.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct a clearance mission of a defile, wooded area, built-up area, or road network. The company is task organized with a platoon of infantry. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO). The company maneuvers to and clears the designated area IAW the commander's FRAGO and intent. The company conducts the clearance by placing effective direct and indirect fires on the enemy element to accomplish the higher commander's intent. The company completes the clearance mission with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander plans and coordinates the clearance.
2. Plan covers a scheme of fire and maneuver with sufficient direct and

indirect fires to suppress the enemy.

3. The company commander must take several important terrain considerations into account in planning and executing the clearance task.
4. These factors are based on the OAKOC terrain analysis.
5. Careful analysis of the enemy situation is a mandatory step in ensuring the success of any clearance operation.
6. Determine the location of the enemy's vehicles, key weapons, and infantry elements in the AO.
7. Determine location of enemy TRPs, targets and engagement areas.
8. Identify the type and location of enemy reserve forces; identify the type and location of an enemy security force.
9. Assess the impact of the enemy's NBC and/or artillery capabilities.
10. To clear restrictive terrain the commander evaluates the tactical requirements, resources, and other considerations for each of the three phases of the operation: approach (the restricted terrain), clear (the area in and around the restricted area), and secure (the far side of the objective area).
11. The company commander takes the following actions in the approach phase: establish support by fire positions with the team's tanks and AAVs; destroy or suppress any known enemy positions to allow forces to approach the restricted terrain.
12. Provide additional security by incorporating suppressive indirect fires and obscuring or screening smoke.
13. Provide support by fire for the infantry rifle squads; be prepared to cover infantry elements from their dismount points to the points at which they enter the restricted terrain.
14. Move dismounted infantry rifle squads along axes that provide cover and concealment.
15. The approach phase ends when the infantry rifle squads are prepared to conduct an attack.
16. The clearance phase begins as the infantry squads begin their attack in and around the restricted terrain.
17. The infantry conducts clearance operations in concert with the AAVs or tanks; combat vehicles provide a base of fire to protect infantry elements as they clear an area; the infantry stops at a designated point or terrain feature where observation is affected; it provides a base of fire to allow the vehicles to bound to a new support by fire position; this cycle continues until the entire area is cleared.
18. Tanks provide effective fires in destroying bunkers and other fortified positions; they can also neutralize and/or penetrate ground-level floors in buildings, providing the infantry with access to and support in this type of restricted terrain.
19. Within restricted areas, tanks should be brought forward to accomplish specific missions but commanders should be aware of the following armor specific issues: short engagement ranges, which may be prevalent in these operations; limitations in elevating/traversing the main gun; and significant blind spots associated with targets above the tank.
20. Tanks have more effective armor protection than do AAVs and thus have greater survivability; they can also provide cover for infantry elements that move behind them when crossing danger areas.
21. Develop a direct fire plan covers responsibility for both horizontal and vertical observation and direct fire.
22. Infantry squads should clear a defile from the top down and should be oriented on objectives on the far side of the defile.
23. Dismounted engineers with manual breaching capability should move with the

infantry; engineers should move with the overwatching vehicles to reduce obstacles.
24. During the clearance phase, tanks and AAVs may be required to operate in DS of infantry elements.
25. Company maintains communication with supporting elements.
26. The company consolidates and reorganizes.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6816: Conduct a Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A raid is a tactical operation, usually small in scale, involving a swift penetration of hostile territory to secure information, confuse the enemy, or destroy installations. It ends with a planned withdrawal upon completion of the assigned mission.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force, and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a raid on a specified target/objective at a given location and time. The raid will occur in daylight or darkness and may be beyond supporting distance of the battalion task force. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The company has the necessary elements and equipment to perform the specific purpose of the raid and to sustain itself during the operation. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts the raid IAW the SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company conducts planning, preparation, and leaders reconnaissance to confirm or modify the commander's operational plan (OPLAN) for the raid mission. The company initiates the raid not later than (NLT) the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The company surprises the enemy and

accomplishes the assigned tasks IAW the commander's intent. The company does not become decisively engaged, adheres to the ROE, and minimizes collateral damage. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts planning for the raid; disseminates warning order(s) (WARNO) to all elements; and develops scheme of maneuver to accomplish a number of missions.
2. Purpose and objectives of the raid (including operations to capture prisoners; capture or destroy specific command and control); destroy logistical areas; obtain information concerning enemy locations, dispositions, strength, intentions, or methods of operation; and confuse the enemy or disrupt his plans.
3. Special operational factors, based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC), that will influence the raid.
4. Requirements for special operational teams, including those needed to handle demolitions, enemy prisoners of war (EPW), and searches.
5. Develop direct fire plan to mass the company team's fires on the objective.
6. Develop a withdrawal plan.
7. Task organize the company team: designate support force (with the task of support by fire [SBF]); designate maneuver force (with the task of attack by fire or assault); designate breach force, if required; and designate any necessary support specialists (special teams), if required.
8. Assign a limited objective for the raiding unit to orient on.
9. Designate support positions and integrate indirect fires to provide protection for forces conducting the operation.
10. Disseminate order and associated graphics with ROE to operational elements.
11. Conduct necessary coordination with adjacent and higher units and, as applicable, governmental/civil agencies.
12. Brief elements thoroughly on plans.
13. Direct rehearsals IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP.
14. Company prepares for the raid.
15. Conduct precombat checks and precombat inspections; conduct tactical movement to the objective rally point (ORP), using covered and concealed routes whenever possible; conduct passage of lines, if necessary; occupy and secure the ORP; conduct rehearsals IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP; and prepare for the leader's reconnaissance.
16. Company commander conducts leader's reconnaissance with key personnel to confirm or modify his plan.
17. Conduct the reconnaissance undetected.
18. Select positions that permit observation and effective fires to provide support and protection during the raid operation (commander, support force leader, and maneuver force leader).
19. Select assault position that provides observation, cover, and concealment (if possible), and is close enough for rapid assault into the objective area (commander with maneuver force leader).
20. Refine direct fire plan based on observations/intelligence gained during the reconnaissance.
21. Select positions large enough for all personnel and fighting positions.
22. Select primary and alternate routes affording cover and concealment to and from all positions, the objective area, and the ORP (commander and element

leaders).
23. Observe the objective area to verify and update intelligence information, including positions of friendly forces and/or areas for search (if possible).
24. Leave a surveillance team in position to observe the objective area.
25. Returns to the ORP undetected (with remainder of the reconnaissance element).
26. Company team commander confirms or modifies operational plan based on results of the leader's reconnaissance.
27. Modify the plan and immediately disseminate changes to subordinate leaders and the battalion task force commander, if necessary.
28. Direct subordinate leaders to verify receipt of the modified order and to disseminate changes to all personnel.
29. Abort the plan, inform the battalion task force commander and subordinate leaders, and await further guidance, if necessary.
30. Direct initiation of the raid if reconnaissance confirms the plan.
31. Support force element establishes a SBF position for the raid.
32. Conduct tactical movement to designated positions, occupy SBF position; secure and isolate the area around the objective to provide early warning; and to prevent escape or reinforcement of enemy forces on the objective.
33. Designate sectors of observation and fire for individuals and primary weapon systems; emplace antipersonnel (AP) mines, antitank (AT) mines, obstacles, and early warning devices as the enemy/threat dictates, and submit the applicable obstacle report to the commander; and maintain the common operational picture (COP) and update as necessary.
34. Ensure positions provide concealment and clear fields of observation and fire.
35. Complete preparations without being detected by the enemy and report completion to the company team commander.
36. Maneuver force initiates movement toward the objective area.
37. Hold fire until it is ready to penetrate the objective or is engaged by enemy fire.
38. Report to the company team commander when in position and ready to assault.
39. Company team commander initiates the raid.
40. Direct support force to place direct and indirect fires on the objective as appropriate, engaging enemy forces with the largest available casualty producing weapon.
41. Establish security to block any enemy attempts to maneuver and engage the maneuver force, to block reinforcement of the enemy in the objective area, and to prevent enemy escape from the objective area.
42. Maneuver force attacks and secures the objective area.
43. Lift and shift fires, as necessary, to allow maneuver force to conduct the assault (support force).
44. Conduct assault on the objective area.
45. Accomplish assigned tasks, including those assigned to special support teams.
46. Send updated situation reports (SITREP) to higher commander as necessary.
47. Update COP to edit/delete previously reported enemy icons to reflect the results of the engagement.
48. Company team withdraws from the objective area, using the sequence designated, to a covered and concealed position away from the objective area, IAW the order, SOP, or as directed.
49. Initiate movement out of the objective area, moving on a different route or axis from that used in the assault (if possible).

50. Cover the withdrawal as necessary, IAW the plan.
51. Support force shifts indirect fires and smoke onto the objective to provide protection during withdrawal.
52. Support force and security element provide direct fire support.
53. Designated special teams or Marines provide security at withdrawal exit points until all maneuver force elements have withdrawn from the objective.
54. Support force and security element withdraw from the objective area.
55. Withdraw to the rally point designated in the OPORD/FRAGO, leaving no essential elements of friendly information (EEFIs) behind.
56. Account for all personnel and report through the chain of command to the company team commander.
57. Company commander directs the raid operation to completion.
58. Direct consolidation and reorganization activities.
59. Report completion of the raid and provides operational assessment to the battalion task force commander, including status of personnel/material involved in the raid.
60. Inform S-2 of priority information requirements (PIR) obtained during the raid.
61. Company processes EPWs and captured documents and/or equipment, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-41.2 Raid Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6817: Conduct a Feint

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The feint is in many ways identical to other special purpose attacks. Its purpose is to cause the enemy to react in a particular way, such as by repositioning forces, committing its reserve, or shifting fires. The key difference between the feint and other attack forms is that it is much more limited in scope, with an extremely specific objective. The scale of the operation, however, is usually apparent only to the controlling headquarters; for the element actually conducting the feint, such as a company team or task force, execution is just as rapid and as violent as in a full-scale attack. Feints will be successful only if the enemy believes that a full-scale attack operation is under way. To be believable, they must be

conducted with the same violence and the same level of precision as any attack.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct a feint against an enemy force. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander identifies a plan for the feint incorporating fires, movement of maneuver forces, smoke, EW assets, and communication equipment to support the attack and shaping of the battlefield. The feint is clearly visible to the enemy and forces a desired response, such as a repositioning of forces or early commitment of the enemy reserve. The company maneuvers to initiate the feint based on the commander's OPORD/FRAGO and intent. The company conducts the feint and causes the enemy force to commit. The company completes the feint with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander plans and coordinates the feint.
2. The company commander provides intent on the specific enemy action the feint is supposed to trigger (or deny), such as forcing the commitment of an enemy reserve force or preventing an enemy element from repositioning against the main effort attack.
3. Special planning considerations include the following: ensure the feint is resourced to appear as the main effort or as a significant threat to the enemy; establish clear guidance regarding force preservation; ensure adequate means of detecting the desired enemy reaction; designate clear disengagement criteria for the feinting force; assign attainable objectives; and issue clear follow-on missions to the feinting force.
4. The company is task organized to provide sufficient strength and composition to cause the desired enemy reaction.
5. The plan covers a scheme of fire and maneuver with sufficient direct and indirect fires to cause the enemy to commit.
6. Platoons are given appropriate missions.
7. Platoons may be assigned overwatch/attack by fire missions when there is a need for more fires than can be provided by the battalion overwatch.
8. Maneuver routes avoid open areas and obstacles.
9. Fire control measures to coordinate internal and external overwatching and supporting fires with maneuver, allow target handoff and preclude friendly casualties.
10. Company prepares for the feint.
11. The company collects and reports tactical information about the enemy situation on the objective.
12. Conduct last minute checks of weapon systems, vehicles, and equipment.
13. The company commander reports to the battalion when ready initiate the feint.

14. Company conducts the feint to cause desired enemy reaction.
15. The company commander issues clear, specific follow-on orders to ensure that the feint force is prepared, if necessary, to exploit the success of the main attack.
16. The company commander reports the status of the feint and its effects on the enemy to the battalion commander.
17. The company conducts follow-on mission as directed from higher.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-CMDC-6207 TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6818: Conduct a Demonstration

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The demonstration is an attack whose purpose is to deceive the enemy about the location of the main attack. This purpose is similar to that of a feint, but the friendly force does not make contact with the enemy. For example, the company's role might entail establishing an attack by fire position beyond the enemy's direct fire engagement range; the purpose would be to cause the enemy to commit a specific element simply by virtue of the positioning of the demonstration force.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The battalion commander orders the company to conduct a demonstration against an enemy force. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company commander identifies a plan for the demonstration incorporating fires, movement of maneuver forces, smoke, EW assets, and communication equipment to support the deception plan. The demonstration is clearly visible to the enemy without being transparently deceptive in nature.

The company maneuvers to initiate the demonstration based on the commander's OPORD/FRAGO and intent. The company conducts the demonstration and causes the enemy force to commit. The company completes the demonstration with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander plans and coordinates the demonstration.
2. The company commander identifies a Limit of Advance (LOA) so that the enemy can "see" the demonstration force but cannot effectively engage it with direct fires.
3. Plan covers a scheme of fire and maneuver with sufficient direct and indirect fires to cause the enemy to commit.
4. Platoons are given appropriate missions.
5. Platoons may be assigned overwatch/attack by fire missions when there is a need for more fires than can be provided by the battalion overwatch.
6. Maneuver routes avoid open areas and obstacles.
7. The force must also take any other security measures necessary to prevent engagement by the enemy.
8. Fire control measures to coordinate internal and external overwatching and supporting fires with maneuver, allow target handoff and preclude friendly casualties.
9. Company prepares for demonstration.
10. The company collects and reports tactical information about the enemy situation on the objective.
11. Conduct last minute checks of weapon systems, vehicles, and equipment.
12. The company commander reports to the battalion when ready initiate the demonstration.
13. Company conducts the demonstration to reinforce the enemy's expectations and contribute to the main effort.
14. Platoons maneuver IAW the company commander's orders and do not become decisively engaged.
15. Develop contingency plans for enemy contact to avoid becoming decisively engaged.
16. Establish the means to determine the effectiveness of the demonstration and assess its effect on the enemy.
17. The company commander issues clear, specific follow-on orders to ensure that the demonstration force is prepared, if necessary, to exploit the success of the main attack.
18. The company commander reports the status of the demonstration and its effects on the enemy to the battalion commander.
19. The company conducts follow-on mission as directed from higher.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-CMDC-6207

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations

6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6819: Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: The unit conducts an attack into a concentrated area of structures, facilities, and population, such as villages, cities, and towns in order to isolate and secure an objective or to destroy, capture, or force the enemy to withdraw.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations in an urban environment, either independently or as part of a battalion task force. The unit receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to clear a built-up area at the location and time specified. The built-up area may be a very small village (10 or fewer buildings), in a lateral strip area (along a road), or a concentration of structures/facilities. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer assets, and military intelligence assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Contact is possible. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company clears the built-up area IAW the SOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The company task organizes to clear the built-up area and employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The assault force clears each building to protect the main body from enemy fires. The support force overwatches the assault force as specified in the company OPORD or FRAGO. The company destroys, captures, or forces the enemy force to withdraw. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company commander plans for clearance of the built-up area.
2. Evaluate the situation, including the following factors: building types (including layout and construction materials); subsurface entry and exit points and avenues of approach; and requirements for special equipment and materials.
3. Task organize the company team: designate the support force, designate the assault force, and designate a reserve force (may include dismounted forces if attached from higher).
4. Breaching elements may be part of the assault or support force, depending on the type and location of anticipated obstacles.
5. Designate fire control measures for the support force; designate graphic control measures for the assault force; define and clarify ROE; establish

limits of advance (LOA), right/left limits, and phase lines (PL); designate building numbers (for control/identification purposes); and define restrictions for indirect fires based on ROE.

6. Company team conducts reconnaissance to determine the extent to which the built-up area must be cleared.
7. Develop an R&S matrix and graphics to focus reconnaissance assets; develop direct fire plan for support force based on insights gained from reconnaissance.
8. Company team employs the support force and indirect fires to overwatch and protect the assault force during movement to the built-up area.
9. Employ tanks and AAVs in support by fire (SBF) positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions, and cover high-speed avenues of approach.
10. Employ indirect fire and/or smoke to suppress, obscure, or destroy enemy elements.
11. Employ tanks and AAVs to breach walls and obstacles.
12. Assault force conducts tactical movement from dismount point to the built-up area.
13. Initiate movement after enemy defensive positions are suppressed, obscured, or destroyed.
14. Use covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.
15. Cross open areas rapidly using concealment of smoke and suppression of enemy targets provided by the support force.
16. Company commander employs the support force and indirect fires to overwatch and protect the assault force during clearance of the built-up area.
17. Establish sectors of fire and direct fire responsibilities for tanks and AAVs along the surface (ground, street, and water) level.
18. Employ indirect fires or smoke in support of the support force's initial movement to and through the built-up area.
19. Direct tanks and AAVs to provide support in the built-up area as necessary.
20. Monitor/control the flow of battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.
21. Company team secures subsurface avenues of approach.
22. Identify entry/exit points and connecting routes.
23. Clear subsurface areas (sewers, tunnels, subways, cellars, utility systems), if applicable.
24. Secure subsurface areas using available means, including obstacles (such as mines or rubble) or observation.
25. Maintain 360-degree security of subsurface areas.
26. Assault force clears super-surface buildings.
27. Use hand grenades, demolitions, and/or ballistic munitions to kill enemy forces.
28. Enter the building at the highest level possible.
29. Enter the first floor only when forced to do so using the appropriate urban operation techniques.
30. Once inside the building, secure the entry point by covering staircases and other routes leading to upper and lower stories.
31. Clear each room in the objective building and mark the cleared rooms.
32. Consolidate and reorganize in the cleared building to repel a possible enemy counterattack.
33. Position support force to cover enemy routes to the building and to overwatch movement to the next building.

34. Mark the building to show that it has been cleared.
35. Report clearance of built-up area to higher, using voice, digital, or other tactical means.
36. Continue mission IAW the commander's intent.
37. Support force provides overwatch and SBF for the assault force's movement and clearance operations.
38. Tanks and AAVs move as directed or as METT-TC dictates to support the assault force as it clears each building.
39. Engage enemy forces with appropriate weapon systems to destroy or force withdrawal of sniper teams, antitank guided missile (ATGM) teams, and armor vehicles within the sector.
40. Maintain 360-degree security of friendly forces, including assault force.
41. Higher commander is kept informed throughout the operation (Company Commander or XO).
42. Send updated SITREPs (voice or digital) as necessary during the operation.
43. Report the completion of clearance of the built-up area.
44. Company team consolidates and reorganizes to prepare for future missions.
45. Treat and evacuate casualties; secure and process enemy prisoners of war (EPW), as required.
46. Continue operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6813	TANK-TAC-6811	TANK-CBTS-6401
TANK-CMDC-6208	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5809	TANK-TAC-5811	TANK-CMDC-5207
TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5813	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6820: Defend in Sector

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A defense is sector is a technique that requires a defending unit to prevent enemy forces from passing beyond the rear boundary of the sector while retaining flank security and ensuring integrity of effort within the parent unit's scheme of maneuver. Initial positions generally are established as far forward as possible, but a commander may use any technique to accomplish the mission. The higher commander will normally assign a no-penetration criteria.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to defend in sector within an area of operations (AO). Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer, intelligence, and air defense (AD) assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP4.

STANDARD: The company defends in sector IAW the SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company occupies the designated sector by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. It establishes a series of battle positions (BP) and engagement areas (EA) in depth to cover the sector. The company destroys or defeats the enemy force, preventing it from penetrating the rear boundary of the sector. As necessary, the company moves to and defends subsequent positions within the sector. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company initiates occupation of defensive positions within the designated sector.
2. Conduct the steps for occupation of a BP based on time available.
3. Occupy primary positions as designated by the company commander via FM, digital, or visual signals.
4. Prepare alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Prepare subsequent positions if specified in OPORD or FRAGO.
6. Company commander and platoon/element leaders adjust positions as necessary to effectively cover EAs and sectors of fire.
7. Adjust primary positions as required, to cover likely enemy avenues of approach and to ensure interlocking fires.
8. Adjust alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions as required.
9. Select covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions, as necessary.
10. Company commander plans for obstacle integration.
11. Identify assigned battalion task force obstacles; coordinate with the battalion task force engineer for obstacle siting and obstacle emplacement; identify where he plans to mass direct/indirect fires; identify and mark the necessary fire control measures on the ground; identify tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage; and determine manpower requirements to assist the engineers in obstacle emplacement.
12. Plan for security during obstacle emplacement.
13. Company sites in the obstacle group.
14. Designate an element to drive the obstacle trace to ensure direct fire coverage; confirm that all vehicles have a protective obstacle; siting participants identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures; mark the general limits

and orientation of the obstacle group; and create/send obstacle report when emplacement is initiated, update when construction is completed.

15. Company integrates obstacles into both direct and indirect fire plans.
16. Emplace obstacle group IAW battalion task force OPORD or FRAGO and emplace protective obstacles to the front and flanks, and tied into existing obstacles, if applicable.
17. Company conducts obstacle turnover and transfer as required.
18. Conduct identity checks (normally only for obstacle transfer); conduct briefing on local friendly and enemy situations; provide description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition; brief other obstacles, to include booby traps; provide information on lanes, to include number, locations, marking, closure plan, and material; transfer graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, or other written records; and provide guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required.
19. Company commander keeps the battalion task force commander informed of obstacle operations.
20. Report completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer.
21. Report grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures and submit appropriate obstacle report using applicable format.
22. Company commander and fire support team (FiST) integrate indirect fires.
23. Establish artillery triggers; refine target locations, including coverage of obstacles; adjust targets (if required); plan for final protective fire (FPF), if required; and request critical friendly zones.
24. Company completes occupation of primary defensive positions.
25. Platoon/element leaders ensure that platoon/element sectors of fire and observation overlap.
26. Company commander ensures that company team sectors of fire and observation tie in with adjacent units.
27. Company commander/platoon and element leaders verify direct fire plans and proof vehicle and squad positions.
28. Emplace protective obstacles throughout the depth of the sector and ensure coverage of the obstacles by direct and indirect fires.
29. Request no-fire areas (NFA) for protection of OPs and forward positions.
30. Company commander completes actions for occupation of the defensive positions.
31. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital transmissions; submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission); implement changes based on guidance from the battalion task force commander; and update the company on any changes or reports from higher headquarters using voice or digital communications.
32. Company improves the defensive positions and conducts defensive priorities of work, as time permits.
33. Improve primary vehicle and infantry squad fighting positions and vehicle/infantry camouflage.
34. Conduct rehearsals based on time available; maintain security and surveillance of EA; clear fields of fire; and conduct vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
35. Establish thermal TRPs and wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP.
36. Emplace chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace prestock ammunition and supplies; and emplace decoys (if available).
37. Improve alternate, supplementary, and subsequent BPs.
38. Conduct resupply as directed in the OPORD.
39. Company commander initiates the defense.

40. Adjust readiness condition (REDCON) level as necessary.
41. Direct all platoons/elements to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire.
42. Direct platoon/element leaders to pull in OPs, if applicable.
43. Company engage the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.
44. Platoon commanders employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability.
45. Company commander, FiST, and platoon commanders employ and adjust indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan and/or OPORD or FRAGO, to achieve desired effects on the enemy force.
46. On order or when specified criteria are met, platoon commanders lift or shift fires and/or displace platoons to supplementary or subsequent BPs.
47. Company commander ensures that company team remains tied in with adjacent units after displacement.
48. Company commander and platoon commanders send SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary.
49. Company commander and platoon commanders direct the defense to mission completion.
50. Direct subordinate elements to move to alternate, supplementary, or subsequent BPs as required, focusing fires in appropriate EA to prevent penetration of the rear boundary.
51. Direct subordinate elements to move to alternate, supplementary, or subsequent BPs as required, maintaining unity of effort with adjacent flank units in sector.
52. Shift, refocus, and redistribute direct fires to destroy identified enemy elements.
53. Direct the shifting of indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements and/or the lifting of fires, to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when the target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
54. Company displaces to subsequent defensive positions (as necessary).
55. Company commander issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the battalion task force commander's guidance and/or OPORD or FRAGO.
56. If covered by an overwatch element, move as a unit to the next BP, with weapon systems oriented toward the enemy.
57. If not covered by an overwatch element, displace by platoon, employing bounding overwatch.
58. Company commander sends a complete SITREP to the battalion task force commander when displacement is completed, using voice or digital communications.
59. Continue to defend to mission completion.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6821	TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5816	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5814
TANK-TAC-5815		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility

5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6821: Defend a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Defense of a battle position is a technique that places a unit in a battle position (BP) to concentrate its fires, limit its maneuver, or place it in an advantageous position to counterattack. The BP is a general location on the ground. The commander positions his forces on the best terrain within and in the vicinity of the BP. The commander may position security forces forward of and about the BP. He can also locate combat support and combat service support elements outside the BP. The commander can maneuver his forces freely within the BP and seize the initiative to maneuver outside of the BP to attack enemy forces provided that it does not interfere with the higher commander's intent and concept.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to defend a battle position (BP). Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer, intelligence, and air defense (AD) assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The company observes an advancing enemy element, or it is alerted to an enemy unit by a spot report (SPOTREP) or contact report from the battalion task force commander or another element. The unit has established communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company defends a BP IAW the SOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The company occupies the designated BP and is prepared to defend by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. It orients on the designated portion of the battalion task force's engagement area (EA) or sector of fire and maintains security. The company destroys or defeats the enemy force within its area of operation (AO). The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander directs hasty or deliberate occupation of a BP.
2. Based on time available, the company may conduct either a hasty or deliberate occupation.
3. Company initiates hasty occupation of the BP: company commander issues a FRAGO for the hasty occupation using FM or digital communications; secure the position with infantry squads prior to occupation by the company team's tanks and AAVs, based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC); enter the BP from the flank or rear; and on order, move simultaneously into turret-down positions within the limits of the BP.
4. Company commander designates defensive control measures and disseminates information to the company team by voice or digital transmission: identify tentative locations for each platoon's primary BP and tentative positions for infantry squads; identify target reference points (TRP), EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions; identify tentative locations for the company team's supplementary BP and for each platoon's supplementary BP; identify TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary positions; designate covered and concealed displacement routes between the primary BP and alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions (if necessary); and designate observation posts (OP) for indirect fire observation.
5. Company commander and platoon/element leaders adjust positions as necessary to cover TRPs, EAs, and/or sectors of fire.
6. Adjust primary positions as required; adjust alternate and/or supplementary positions as required; and select covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions, as necessary.
7. Company commander completes hasty occupation of the BP.
8. Direct all platoons/elements to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire.
9. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital communications.
10. Implement changes based on guidance from the battalion task force commander.
11. Update the team on any changes or reports from higher headquarters using voice or digital communications.
12. Refine direct fire plan, including trigger lines, engagement criteria, fire patterns, break points, and disengagement criteria/plan, as time permits.
13. Direct the company to continue improvement of the BP with additional steps of a deliberate occupation, as time permits.
14. Company initiates deliberate occupation of the BP.
15. Occupy hide positions behind the BP (as designated by the company commander via FM, digital, or visual signals); establish local security, employing OPs and infantry squads as necessary; and perform simultaneous shutdown.
16. Company commander and platoon/element leaders prepare to conduct reconnaissance of the BP.
17. Designate reconnaissance element (usually platoon commanders and a security element); designate overwatch elements for the reconnaissance group (if applicable); and brief reconnaissance element and senior person remaining in hide position on priorities of work, reconnaissance plan, security plan, and contingency plan.
18. Company commander and platoon/element leaders conduct reconnaissance of

the BP.

19. Move to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective (if possible).
20. Use covered and concealed routes, to maximum extent possible.
21. Move through proposed EA, identifying all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and/or defensive terrain.
22. Evaluate any lateral routes.
23. Determine how the enemy will attack, covering the following considerations: how the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets; where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire (SBF) positions; where and when the enemy will conduct a breach or assault; where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces; effects of the enemy's combat multipliers; and the enemy's rate of movement.
24. Company commander identifies where he will kill the enemy.
25. At a minimum the commander needs to identify two points on the ground here he will kill the enemy (i.e. start killing the enemy here and complete the destruction here).
26. Mark TRPs that match the enemy scheme of maneuver through the depth of the sector; determine which platoon(s) will mass fires on each TRP; identify the purpose of each TRP; and record and mark exact TRP locations.
27. Identify locations of existing obstacles and possible positions for reinforcing obstacles.
28. Move to vantage point within the defensive position that affords a clear view of the company team's AO, if possible.
29. Identify terrain that corresponds to the company team and higher headquarters control measures.
30. Brief the higher headquarters scheme of maneuver.
31. Develop company fire plan that focuses fires at each TRP.
32. Designate primary, alternate, and supplementary positions as required.
33. Designate covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary BPs.
34. Designate OPs for indirect fire observation.
35. Brief company scheme of maneuver, to include trigger points, break points, and disengagement criteria/plan.
36. Designate, mark, and record key locations on the BP and in the EA (using daylight and limited visibility materials for marking).
37. Company commander or designated representative conducts linkup and adjacent unit coordination, focusing on the following critical requirements: identify location of OPs and patrols and update the common operational picture (COP) with their locations; confirm that sectors of fire and observation overlap; identify location of adjacent units, vehicles, and primary, alternate, and supplementary positions; identify location of dead space; confirm location and types of obstacles; confirm indirect fire data; and confirm communications information.
38. Company establishes security measures.
39. Establish mounted and dismounted OPs and conducts patrols to observe all avenues of approach into the company team's AO (including enemy/threat infiltration and reconnaissance routes).
40. Ensure OP locations are updated within the COP.
41. Provide security for elements working forward in the AO, such as engineers emplacing obstacles or digging survivability positions.
42. Secure obstacles; observe templated enemy landing zones (LZ); clear possible enemy OP positions; and establish hide positions.
43. Platoons/elements occupy the proposed BPs.
44. Ensure that platoon/element sectors of fire and observation overlap and

tie in with those of adjacent units.

45. Record and report grid locations of vehicle/squad positions to company team commander.
46. Company commander and platoon/element leaders verify direct fire plans and proof vehicle and squad positions.
47. Emplace protective obstacles.
48. Company commander plans for obstacle integration.
49. Identify assigned battalion task force obstacles; coordinate with battalion task force engineer for obstacle siting and obstacle emplacement; identify where he plans to mass direct/indirect fires; identify and mark the necessary fire control measures on the ground; identify tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage; determine manpower requirements to assist the engineers in obstacle emplacement; and plan for security during obstacle emplacement.
50. Company sites in the obstacle group.
51. Designated element drives the obstacle trace to ensure direct fire coverage; all vehicles confirm that they have obstacle coverage; siting participants identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures; mark the general limits and orientation of the obstacle group; and create/send obstacle report when emplacement is initiated, update when construction is completed.
52. Company integrates obstacles.
53. Emplace obstacle group IAW battalion task force OPORD or FRAGO and emplace protective obstacles to the front and flanks.
54. Company conducts obstacle turnover and transfer as required.
55. Conduct identity checks (normally only for obstacle transfer); conduct briefing on local friendly and enemy situations; provide description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition; brief other obstacles, to include booby traps; provide information on lanes, to include number, locations, marking, and closure plan; transfer graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, or other written records; and provide guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required.
56. Company commander keeps the battalion task force commander informed of obstacle operations.
57. Report completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer.
58. Report grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures.
59. Company commander and FiST integrate indirect fires.
60. Develop observation plan; establish artillery triggers; refine target locations; adjust targets (if required); plan for final protective fire (FPF), if required; request critical friendly zones (CFZ) for protection of friendly elements; request no-fire areas (NFA) for protection of OPs and forward positions (if required); and establish displacement criteria.
61. Platoons/elements occupy their respective BPs.
62. Ensure that platoon/element sectors of fire and observation overlap and tie in with those of adjacent units.
63. Record and report grid locations of vehicle/squad positions to company team.
64. Company commander and platoon/element leaders verify direct fire plan and proof vehicle and squad positions.
65. Emplace protective obstacles.
66. Company commander consolidates platoon fire plans and finalizes the company team fire plan.
67. Plot grid lines; identify platoon and infantry squad positions; identify

company team AO; identify TRPs and EAs (including location, range, and coverage responsibilities); identify range lines, trigger points, break points, and key terrain features; identify indirect fire targets, including FPF (if allocated); identify dead space; record appropriate marginal information, including engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire pattern, and disengagement criteria.

68. Company commander completes actions for deliberate occupation of the BP.
69. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital transmissions.
70. Submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission).
71. Implement changes based on guidance from the battalion task force commander.
72. Update the company on any changes or reports from higher headquarters.
73. Company improves the BP and conducts defensive priorities of work, as time permits.
74. Improve primary vehicle and infantry squad fighting positions; improve vehicle/infantry camouflage protection; conduct rehearsals based on time available; maintain security and surveillance of EA; clear fields of fire; conduct vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks; establish thermal TRPs IAW unit SOP; establish wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace prestock ammunition and supplies; emplace decoys (if available); improve alternate, supplementary, and/or subsequent BPs; and conduct resupply as directed in the OPORD.
75. Company commander initiates the defense.
76. Adjust readiness condition (REDCON) level as necessary.
77. Direct all platoons/elements to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire.
78. Direct platoon/element leaders to pull in OPs (if applicable).
79. Company engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.
80. Platoon commanders employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability.
81. Company commander and platoon leaders shift, refocus, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements.
82. Company commander/FiST/platoon commanders employ indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan and/or OPORD or FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force.
83. Company commander/FiST/platoon commanders direct the lifting and shifting of indirect fires.
84. Shift indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements and lift indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
85. Company commander issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required.
86. Platoons/elements move to alternate or supplementary BPs, as required, to maintain flexibility and survivability.
87. Company commander and platoon commanders send SPOTREPs and updated situation reports(s) (SITREP) and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary.
88. Company displaces to subsequent defensive positions (if necessary).
89. Company commander issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the battalion task force commander's guidance and/or OPORD or FRAGO.
90. If covered by an overwatch element, move as a unit to the next BP, with

weapon systems oriented toward the enemy.
91. If not covered by an overwatch element, displace by platoon, employing bounding overwatch.
92. Company commander sends a complete SITREP to the battalion task force commander when displacement is completed, using voice or digital communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6820	TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5816	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5814
TANK-TAC-5815		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
12. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6822: Defend a Strongpoint
SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A defense of a strongpoint is a form of defense of a battle position that requires more engineer work and may be required to be held at all costs. It denies key terrain to the enemy and forces his movement in a different direction.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to defend a strongpoint within an area of operations (AO). Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer, intelligence, and air defense (AD) assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel, engineer materials, and equipment are available. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company defends the strongpoint IAW the SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company occupies the strongpoint by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The company defends the position until enemy forces are destroyed or the company is ordered to withdraw or displace. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company team initiates preparations for strongpoint defense.
2. Occupy a hide position behind or to the flank of the strongpoint; establish local security; company commander determines the projected size of the strongpoint by assessing the number of vehicles, weapon systems, and individual Marines available to conduct the mission, as well as the terrain on which the company team will fight.
3. Company commander prepares to conduct reconnaissance of strongpoint AO.
4. Designate reconnaissance group and overwatch elements.
5. Brief reconnaissance group and senior Marine remaining in hide position on priorities of work, reconnaissance plan, security plan, and contingency plan.
6. Reconnaissance group conducts reconnaissance of the AO.
7. Identify all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and/or defensive terrain, dead space outside the strongpoint, restrictive terrain that must be cleared, areas or terrain that allows line of sight to the strongpoint, locations of fortifications and possible bunker locations, locations of existing obstacles and possible positions for reinforcing obstacles, minefield locations, and terrain that corresponds to higher headquarters control measures.
8. Designate primary positions that support the company team defensive plan.
9. Determine placement of vehicles, weapon systems, and infantry to cover strongpoint frontage and maintain security of the strongpoint.
10. Designate evacuation routes.
11. Company commander establishes a reserve.
12. Designate size and composition of the reserve IAW METT-TC analysis.
13. Designate reserve priorities, which may include the following: counterattacking along a portion of the perimeter against an identified enemy main effort, blocking enemy penetrations, and reinforcing a portion of the defensive line.
14. Identify the initial reserve position and positions for the reserve to occupy once committed.
15. Company commander or designated representative conducts linkup and coordinates with adjacent units, focusing on the following critical requirements: identify location of OPs and patrols; confirm that sectors of fire and observation overlap; identify location of adjacent units' vehicles and primary, alternate, and supplementary positions; identify location of dead space between the strongpoint and adjacent units and coordinate security and indirect fires to cover the dead space; confirm locations and types of obstacles and submit appropriate obstacle report IAW unit SOP; confirm indirect fire data; confirm communications information; identify routes into and out of the strongpoint; and confirm visual signals (color of smoke and flares).
16. Company establishes security measures.
17. Company commander plans for obstacle integration.
18. Identify and mark the necessary TRPs, EAs, and other fire control measures on the ground; identify tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage; plan to reinforce existing obstacles using

field expedient demolitions and booby traps, if adequate time and resources are available.

19. Company team sites in the obstacle group.
20. Designate an element to drive the obstacle trace to ensure direct fire coverage; confirm that all vehicles have obstacle coverage; siting participants identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures; mark the general limits and orientation of the obstacle group; and create/send obstacle report when emplacement is initiated, update when construction is completed.
21. Company team integrates obstacles into both direct and indirect fire plans.
22. Emplace obstacle group IAW battalion task force OPORD or FRAGO and emplace protective obstacles (designed to defeat dismounted assaults) into the overall countermobility plan.
23. Company team conducts obstacle turnover and transfer as required.
24. Conduct identity checks (normally only for obstacle transfer); conduct briefing on local friendly and enemy situations; provide description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition; brief other obstacles, to include booby traps; provide information on lanes, to include number, locations, marking, and closure plan; transfer graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, or other written records; and provide guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required.
25. Company commander keeps the battalion task force commander informed of obstacle operations.
26. Report completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer.
27. Report grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures.
28. Company commander and FiST integrate indirect fires.
29. Develop observation plan; establish artillery triggers; refine target location including obstacle coverage; adjust targets (if required); plan for FPF (if required); request critical friendly zones (CFZ) for protection of friendly elements; and request no-fire areas (NFA) for protection of OPs and forward positions (if required).
30. Company commander consolidates platoon fire plans and finalizes the company team strongpoint fire plan.
31. Plot grid lines; identify vehicle and dismounted fighting positions; identify company team AO; identify TRPs and EAs (including location, range, and coverage responsibilities); identify range lines, trigger points, break points, and key terrain features; identify indirect fire targets, including FPF (if allocated); identify dead space; record appropriate marginal information, including engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire pattern, and disengagement criteria; and disseminate fire plan to higher and subordinate leaders.
32. Company team conducts strongpoint priorities of work.
33. Company commander prioritizes available engineer assets for construction of primary positions and fortifications.
34. Construct individual/squad fighting positions; construct vehicle survivability positions; establish TRPs IAW with unit SOP; establish wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace prestock ammunition and supplies; emplace decoys (if available); improve secondary defensive line positions; clear fields of fire; employ patrols to cover dead space and enemy dismounted avenues of approach; platoon/element leaders record and report grid locations of vehicle and squad positions; and verify and validate vehicle and dismount

positions.
35. Company commander completes actions for occupation of the strongpoint.
36. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital transmissions.
37. Submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission).
38. Implement changes based on guidance from the battalion task force commander.
39. Update the company on any changes or reports from higher headquarters using voice or digital communications.
40. Company team improves the strongpoint and continues defensive priorities of work.
41. Improve primary vehicle and infantry squad fighting positions, vehicle/infantry camouflage and protection, and secondary/subsequent defensive line positions.
42. Conduct rehearsals based on time available.
43. Maintain 360-degree security and surveillance of EAs.
44. Conduct vehicle and weapons maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks, resupply as directed in the OPORD, and a displacement rehearsal covering actions the company team must take if it has to fall back to a second defensive perimeter.
45. Company commander initiates the strongpoint defense.
46. Adjust readiness condition (REDCON) level as necessary.
47. Direct platoons/elements to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire.
48. Direct platoon/element leaders to pull in OPs and patrols (if applicable).
49. Company team engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.
50. Platoons employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability.
51. Company commander/FiST/platoon commanders employ and adjust indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan and/or OPORD/FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force.
52. Employ command-detonated munitions to destroy enemy elements.
53. On order or when specified criteria are met, platoons lift or shift fires and/or displace to supplementary or subsequent fighting positions.
54. Company commander and platoon/element leaders send SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary.
55. Company commander and platoon/element leaders direct the strongpoint defense to mission completion.
56. Shift, refocus, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements.
57. Direct the shifting of indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements and/or the lifting of fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements, or employ indirect fires at point of penetration to stop enemy momentum.
58. Employ the company team reserve to counterattack against enemy forces or reinforce the perimeter against an enemy penetration, if necessary.
59. Issue additional FRAGOs to reposition platoons/elements within the perimeter of the strongpoint, as necessary.
60. Send SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
61. Order the company team to withdraw to second defensive perimeter on order, or as necessary.
62. Update COP to edit/delete previously reported enemy icons to reflect the results of the engagement.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5817

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
9. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6823: Defend an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The defense of a urban area is a technique that requires a defending unit to prevent enemy forces from entering or controlling a built-up area. A built-up area is defined as a concentration of structures, facilities, and population, such as villages, cities, and towns.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to defend a built-up area in an urban operations (UO) environment. The built-up area may be a very small village (10 or fewer buildings) in a lateral strip area (along a road), or a concentration of structures/facilities. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer assets, and air defense assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Enemy contact, which may include mounted and dismounted forces as well as indirect fires and aviation assets is expected within the next 24 hours, but not before the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company occupies and prepares defensive positions in an urban area by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. It establishes observation posts (OP) and other security measures, fighting positions, engagement areas (EA), and obstacles, as necessary based on the terrain and the expected enemy force. The company defends the built-up area

as directed until enemy forces are destroyed, defeated, or the unit is ordered to withdraw or displace. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander directs hasty or deliberate defense of a built-up area.
2. Based on the expected time of occupation, the company team may execute either a hasty or deliberate defense of the built-up area.
3. Company team initiates hasty defensive posture.
4. Company commander issues a FRAGO (voice or digital) for the hasty occupation, at a minimum, the FRAGO includes the following: address changes in friendly and enemy situation; address changes to company team or platoon tasks and purposes; and general changes to the scheme of maneuver that facilitate occupation of the defensive position; clear, secure, and mark the designated area to be defended using infantry squads with armor forces in support; infantry squads move to temporary defensive positions to facilitate the placement of mechanized forces; mechanized forces enter from the most advantageous covered, concealed, and cleared routes.
5. Move into assigned defensive positions, on order, using available cover and concealment afforded by built-up area.
6. Before the company team occupies defensive positions, the commander must address these considerations: whether the terrain (foundation) will support company team vehicles; whether building(s) will withstand effects of company team weapons; fire hazards; subsurface factors (hazards under the surface where the vehicles will be positioned); whether the position affords protection to the vehicles from all directions (to include front, flanks, rear, overhead, and subsurface); and movement and withdrawal routes.
7. Company commander designates defensive control measures and disseminates information to the company team by voice or digital transmission.
8. Designate dismounted infantry positions that will facilitate the adjustment of armor forces.
9. Dismounted positions include the following: antitank (AT) gunners, snipers, crew-served weapons and strongpoints, and observation posts (OP), to include indirect fire observation.
10. When employing dismounted forces, commanders and leaders must consider fratricide avoidance and the effects of dismounted elements on the capabilities of available weapon systems (such as backblast areas, sabot petal danger areas).
11. Identify tentative locations for each platoon's primary defensive positions; identify TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions; identify alternate and supplementary defensive positions for mounted and dismounted forces; identify alternate and supplementary TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary positions; complete coordination between mounted and dismounted elements for the execution of the plan; and establish signals for all elements IAW order or SOP.
12. Company commander and platoon/element leaders adjust positions as necessary to cover TRPs, EAs, and/or sectors of fire.
13. Adjust primary positions as required; adjust alternate and/or supplementary positions as required; and select covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, supplementary and subsequent positions, as necessary.

14. Company commander completes the hasty occupation.
15. Direct all platoons/elements to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire.
16. Adjust security element as necessary to facilitate effective employment of weapon systems.
17. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital communications.
18. Implement changes based on guidance from the battalion task force commander.
19. Update the company team on any changes or reports from higher headquarters using voice or digital communications.
20. Refine direct fire plan, as time permits, including trigger lines, engagement criteria, fire patterns, break points, and disengagement criteria/plan.
21. Direct the company team, as time permits, to continue improvement of the defensive position with additional steps of a deliberate occupation.
22. Company team initiates deliberate occupation of the defensive position.
23. Establish local security, prepare individual fighting positions behind the mechanized defensive position (in relation to sectors of fire), and perform simultaneous shutdown.
24. Company commander or designated representative conducts linkup and adjacent unit coordination, focusing on the following critical requirements: identify location of OPs and patrols; confirm that sectors of fire and observation overlap; identify location of adjacent units, vehicles, and primary, alternate, and supplementary positions; identify location of dead space; confirm location and types of obstacles in the area of operation (AO); confirm indirect fire data; confirm communications information; and identify routes into and out of the company team's defensive position.
25. Company commander and platoon/element leaders prepare to conduct reconnaissance of the defensive position outside the urban area or within the urban area (as required).
26. Designate reconnaissance objectives to identify weaknesses in the defensive plan and facilitate protection of the force.
27. Considerations include, but are not limited to the following: avenues of approach/positioning of obstacles, sniper positions, supporting weapons emplacement, subsurface effects (entry/exit points), noncombatants, location of key structures (such as water and electric facilities), concealment of friendly forces, potential friendly ambush points, and dead space.
28. Designate reconnaissance group (minimum of two squads).
29. Brief entire company team on the reconnaissance plan.
30. Establish contingency plans for the reconnaissance team and stay behind elements.
31. Establish priorities of work for defensive force.
32. Company commander and platoon/element leaders conduct reconnaissance of the defensive position outside the urban area or within the urban area, as required.
33. Move to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective (if possible).
34. Use covered and concealed routes, to maximum extent possible.
35. Move through proposed EA(s), identifying all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and/or defensive terrain.
36. Evaluate any lateral routes.
37. Determine how the enemy will attack, covering the following

considerations: how the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets, where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire (SBF) positions, where and when the enemy will conduct a breach or assault, where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces, effect of the enemy's combat multipliers, and the enemy's rate of movement.

38. Company commander describes where he will kill the enemy.
39. Choose at a minimum two points on the ground where he will kill the enemy (i.e. start killing them here and complete the destruction here).
40. Company establishes extended security measures.
41. Provide security for elements working forward in sector, such as engineers emplacing obstacles; secures/emplace obstacles; secure possible subsurface points of enemy entry (such as sewers or alleys); observe templated enemy landing zones (LZ); and improve existing defensive positions.
42. Company commander plans for obstacle integration.
43. Coordinate with battalion task force engineer for obstacle siting/emplacement.
44. Identify where the company team will mass direct/indirect fires.
45. Mark necessary control measures on the ground.
46. Identify supporting weapons positions for obstacle coverage.
47. Determine manpower required to provide support to engineers.
48. Platoon elements occupy their proposed BPs and fighting positions.
49. Ensure that platoon/element sectors of fire and observation overlap and tie in with those of adjacent units.
50. Record grid locations of vehicle/squad positions and reports them to company team commander.
51. Company commander and platoon/element leaders verify direct fire plan and proof vehicle and squad positions.
52. Emplace protective obstacles.
53. Company integrates obstacles.
54. Emplace obstacle group IAW OPORD or FRAGO; emplace obstacles on avenues of approach as necessary; and submit appropriate obstacle report using either digital or applicable analog format.
55. Company conducts obstacle turnover and transfer, as required.
56. Conduct identity checks (normally only for obstacle transfer); conduct briefing on local friendly and enemy situations; provide description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition; brief other obstacles, to include booby traps; provide information on lanes, to include number, locations, marking, and closure plan; transfer graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, or other written records; and provide guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required.
57. Company team keeps the battalion task force commander informed (FM or digital) of obstacle operations.
58. Report completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer.
59. Report grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures.
60. Company commander and FiST integrate indirect fires.
61. Establish artillery triggers; refine target locations; adjust targets (if required); plan for final protective fires (FPF), if required; request critical friendly zones (CFZ) for protection of friendly elements; and request no-fire areas (NFA) for protection of OPs and forward positions.
62. Platoons/elements occupy their BPs and fighting positions.
63. Ensure that platoon/element sectors of fire and observation overlap and tie in with those of adjacent units.
64. Select and develop vehicle positions that afford the best possible cover,

concealment, observation, fields of fire, and do not restrict the vehicles ability to move when necessary.

65. Select infantry squad positions that are mutually supporting and allow for overlapping sectors of fire, even when they are in separate buildings or are divided by walls.
66. Record grid locations of vehicle/squad positions and reports them to company commander.
67. Company commander and platoon/element leaders verify direct fire plans and proof vehicle and squad positions.
68. Emplace protective obstacles.
69. Company commander consolidates platoon fire plans and finalizes the company team fire plan.
70. Plot grid lines; identify platoon and infantry squad positions; identify company team AO; identify TRPs and EAs (including location, range, and coverage responsibilities); identify range lines, trigger points, break points, and key terrain features; identify indirect fire targets, including FPF (if allocated); identify dead space; and record appropriate marginal information, including engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire pattern, and disengagement criteria.
71. Company commander completes actions for deliberate occupation of the defensive position.
72. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the battalion task force commander using voice or digital communications.
73. Submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission).
74. Implement changes based on guidance from the battalion task force commander.
75. Update the company team on any changes or reports from higher headquarters.
76. Company improves the defensive position and conducts defensive priorities of work, as time permits.
77. Improve primary vehicle and infantry squad fighting positions; improve vehicle/infantry camouflage protection; conduct rehearsals based on time available; maintain security and surveillance of EA; clear fields of fire; conduct vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks; establish TRPs IAW unit SOP; establish wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP; emplace prestock ammunition and supplies; emplace decoys (if available) IAW deception plan; improve alternate, supplementary, and/or subsequent defensive positions; and conduct resupply as directed in the OPORD.
78. Company commander initiates the defense.
79. Adjust readiness condition (REDCON) level as necessary.
80. Direct platoon/element leaders to pull in OPs (if applicable).
81. Company engages the enemy on order, or when engagement criteria are met.
82. Platoon commanders employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability.
83. Company commander and platoon commanders shift, refocus, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements.
84. Company commander/FiST/platoon commanders employ indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan and/or OPORD/FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force.
85. Company commander/FiST/platoon commanders direct the lifting and shifting of indirect fires.
86. Shift indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements.
87. Lift indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when

desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
88. Company commander issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required using voice or digital communications.
89. Platoons/elements move to alternate or supplementary BPs as required, maintaining flexibility and/or survivability.
90. Create a reserve force, if possible, to conduct one of the following: counterattack to regain key positions in the built-up area, block enemy penetrations, protect the flanks of friendly forces, and provide a base of fire for disengaging elements.
91. Company elements send SPOTREPs/updated SITREPs and make recommendations to higher commander as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
92. Company displaces to subsequent defensive positions (if necessary).
93. Company commander issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the battalion task force commander's guidance and/or OPORD/FRAGO.
94. If covered by an overwatch element, moves as a unit to the next BP, with weapon systems oriented toward the enemy.
95. If not covered by an overwatch element, displaces by platoon, employing bounding overwatch.
96. Company commander sends a complete SITREP to the battalion task force commander when displacement is completed, using voice or digital communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6208 TANK-CBTS-6403 TANK-CBTS-6402
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5817 TANK-CBTS-5401 TANK-CMDC-5207
TANK-CMDC-5208

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
9. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6824: Conduct a Guard
SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A guard mission is a security operation in which a unit's primary task is to protect the main force by fighting to gain time, while also observing and reporting information to prevent enemy ground observation and direct fire against the main body by reconnoitering, attacking, defending, and delaying. A guard force normally operates within the range of the main body's indirect fire weapons.

CONDITION: While operating tactically in an area of operations (AO), the company receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a flank, rear, or advance guard for a unit that is either stationary or moving. Contact is expected. Enemy forces could include reconnaissance elements, security forces, disruption forces, fixing forces, assault forces, exploitation forces, or asymmetrical threat forces. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and the international media may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company provides the protected force with reaction time as well as continuous protection from enemy observation and direct fire engagement. The company destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance force elements; fixes and defeats enemy security units; disrupts, fixes, and assaults exploitation forces; and causes the enemy main body to deploy. The company maintains the guard until ordered to withdraw or displace. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander plans for guard operations.
2. Plan for indirect fires; determine fire control measures for the company team; develop combat service support (CSS) plan; and determine the attachments necessary to conduct the mission.
3. Company commander coordinates with the commander of the protected force.
4. Determine the general trace of the guard and the time the operation will begin.
5. Determine the area of responsibility (AOR) for the guard.
6. Determine current and subsequent locations of the protected force and determine the distance between the guard force and the protected force.
7. Identify reinforcements needed to accomplish the guard mission, to include ground maneuver, combat support (CS), and CSS assets.
8. Coordinate with additional ground maneuver, CS, and CSS assets and incorporate them into the guard mission as required.
9. Determine special requirements or constraints.
10. Coordinate necessary passage(s) of lines.
11. Coordinate battle handover (BHO) between the guard force and the protected force.
12. Company team moves to and occupies initial guard positions in a stationary guard.
13. Move to initial positions using one of the following techniques: based on enemy situation and time available, deploy to the initial guard positions by conducting a tactical road march to a release point (RP) behind the guarded area; and based on enemy situation and time available, deploy to initial guard positions by conducting a movement to contact from a line of departure (LD) to the guarded area.
14. Deploy surveillance elements.
15. Employ mounted and/or dismounted observation posts (OP) to ensure effective surveillance of designated named areas of interest (NAI) (covering all company-size and larger avenues of approach into the sector)

and infiltration routes (preventing enemy elements from moving through the sector undetected).

16. Report OP locations using the long form spot report (SPOTREP), if applicable, in order to maintain and update the COP.
17. Continue to update their locations to prevent them from fading from friendly COPs.
18. Establish a screen line, consisting of mounted and dismounted OPs that provides the protected force with adequate early warning to deploy against the enemy main body.
19. Establish mounted and/or dismounted patrols to cover gaps or critical areas not observed by stationary OPs.
20. Establish fire control measures IAW OPORD/FRAGO.
21. Deploy other maneuver elements as necessary.
22. Deploy elements to hide positions, attack by fire positions, and/or BPs to destroy enemy reconnaissance elements.
23. Deploy elements to defensive or delay positions to prepare for actions against enemy security, disruption, assault, fixing, or exploitation forces.
24. Company team conducts stationary guard to the front, flank, or rear.
25. Employ OPs to maintain continuous surveillance of all NAIs, company-size and larger avenues of approach, infiltration routes, and reconnaissance routes into and within the AO and updates the COP with their locations.
26. Detect enemy forces moving into the AO (surveillance elements).
27. Conduct actions against enemy reconnaissance forces.
28. Conduct actions against enemy security, disruption, assault, fixing, or exploitation forces.
29. Company team conducts moving advance guard.
30. Conduct tactical movement along the protected force's axis of advance.
31. Detect and destroy enemy reconnaissance elements along the protected force's axis of advance.
32. Detect, fix and/or destroy enemy security, fixing, disruption, assault, or exploitation forces along the protected force's axis of advance.
33. Detect enemy main body exploitation forces and either defend or delay, causing those elements to deploy and/or provide reaction time for the protected force to deploy against the enemy main body exploitation forces.
34. Company team conducts moving rear guard during retrograde operations.
35. Deploy to initial guard positions and prepares defensive or delay positions.
36. Maintain continuous surveillance of all company-size or larger avenues of approach, infiltration routes, and enemy reconnaissance force routes into the AO.
37. Conduct, as necessary, tactical movement, maintaining contact with the protected force and keying movement to the movement of the protected force and/or enemy action.
38. Detect enemy reconnaissance forces moving into the AO (surveillance elements).
39. Conduct actions against enemy reconnaissance forces.
40. Conduct actions against enemy security, disruption, fixing, assault, or exploitation forces.
41. Detect enemy security, disruption, fixing, assault, or exploitation forces, and either attack by fire or defend to fix or defeat enemy elements IAW the protected force commander's intent.
42. Detect enemy main body exploitation forces, and either defend or delay IAW the protected force commander's intent to cause the enemy main body to deploy and/or to provide reaction time for the protected force to maneuver

against the enemy main body exploitation forces.
43. Company team conducts moving rear guard during offensive operations.
44. Conduct tactical movement along the protected force's axis of advance.
45. Maintain contact with the protected force and keys movement based on the movement of the protected force and/or enemy action.
46. Detect and destroy enemy reconnaissance forces that can observe or bring direct fire on the rear of the protected force.
47. Detect, fix and/or destroy enemy security, disruption, fixing, assault, or exploitation forces that can observe or bring direct fire on the rear of the protected force.
48. Detect enemy main body exploitation forces and either defend or delay to cause the enemy main body to deploy and/or to provide reaction time for the protected force to deploy against the enemy main body exploitation forces.
49. Company team conducts moving flank guard.
50. Deploy to initial positions.
51. Maintain continuous surveillance of all company-size avenues of approach, infiltration routes, and reconnaissance disruption force routes into and within the AO.
52. Reconnoiter the route of the guard force and the area between the flank guard and the protected force.
53. Conduct tactical movement based on the movement of the protected force and/or enemy actions, employing one of following techniques: alternate bounds by platoon, successive bounds, and continuous marching.
54. Detect and destroy enemy reconnaissance elements along the protected force's flank or in the guarded AO.
55. Detect and fix and/or destroy enemy security, disruption, fixing, assault, or exploitation forces along the protected force's flank or in the guarded AO.
56. Detect enemy main body exploitation forces and either defend or delay to cause the enemy to deploy and/or to provide reaction time for the protected force to deploy against the enemy main body exploitation forces.
57. Company team completes guard actions.
58. Withdraw or displace as directed or IAW protected force commander's intent.
59. Conduct BHO with protected force and/or follow-on guard force.
60. Report completion to the battalion task force commander.
61. Update COP to edit/delete previously reported enemy icons to reflect the results of engagements.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6825	TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-TAC-6804	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6825: Conduct a Screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A screen mission is a security operation in which a unit's primary task is to observe, identify, and report information for the main force, and only engages the enemy in self-protection. Tasks include the ability to maintain surveillance, provide early warning to the main body, and/or impede, destroy, and harass enemy reconnaissance within its capability without becoming decisively engaged.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operation order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a screen. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The initial screen line, lateral boundaries, and rear boundary or phase lines (PL) are established and provided by higher headquarters. Contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts the screen IAW the SOP, the order, and commander's guidance. The company allows no enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The company maintains continuous surveillance, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO), provides early warning to the screened unit, maintains contact with the enemy, and reports any activity in the AO. The company maintains contact with the main body and any security forces operating on its flanks. The company destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols, and harasses the enemy using available systems and support. The company complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander coordinates with the protected force commander.
2. Confirm the general trace of the screen and the time the operation will begin.
3. Confirm the area of responsibility (AOR) for the screen.
4. Conduct an analysis of the terrain to identify potential threat reconnaissance avenues of approach/infiltration routes.
5. Maintain the common operational picture (COP) throughout the operation to determine current and subsequent locations of the protected force.
6. Determine the distance between the screening force and the protected force.
7. Identify and coordinate with reinforcements needed to accomplish the screen mission, to include ground maneuver, CS, and CSS assets.
8. Incorporate additional ground maneuver, CS, and CSS assets into the screen mission as required.

9. Confirm the purpose for the screen that may include one or more of the following: prevent enemy/threat ground elements from passing through the screen undetected or unreported; maintain continuous surveillance of all avenues of approach into sector under all visibility conditions; destroy or repel enemy reconnaissance elements within capability; locate the lead elements of each enemy force and determine their direction of movement; maintain contact with enemy/threat forces and report any activity in the AO; impede and harass the enemy/threat within capability while displacing; and maintain contact with the enemy main body and any enemy counter reconnaissance forces operating on the flanks of friendly forces.
10. Determine special requirements or constraints.
11. Coordinate necessary passage(s) of lines.
12. Coordinate battle handover (BHO) and/or reconnaissance handover (RHO) between the screening force and the protected force.
13. Company team moves to and occupies initial stationary screen line NLT designated start time IAW the order.
14. Moves to initial positions using one of the following techniques: deploy by conducting a tactical road march to a release point (RP) behind the screen line; if contact is expected and/or time is not critical, deploy by conducting tactical movement from a line of departure (LD) to the screen line; and orient platoons on named areas of interest (NAI), avenues of approach, and/or enemy reconnaissance infiltration routes.
15. Deploy reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) elements IAW order.
16. Employ mounted and/or dismounted observation posts (OP) to ensure effective surveillance of designated NAIs (covering company-size and larger avenues of approach, reconnaissance routes, and infiltration routes) to prevent enemy elements from moving through the screen AO undetected.
17. Establish a screen line consisting of mounted and dismounted OPs that provides the protected force with adequate early warning to deploy against the enemy main body.
18. Establish mounted and/or dismounted patrols to cover gaps or critical areas not observed by stationary OPs.
19. Obtain and forward all relevant information that answers the higher commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) and/or specific information requirements (SIR).
20. Company team conducts stationary screen to the front, flank, or rear.
21. Initiate patrols to cover unobservable areas between OPs, as necessary.
22. Prepare and mark subsequent positions and routes to them, as time allows.
23. Emplace ground sensors oriented on avenues of approach, outside of visual observation and/or along dismounted avenues through restricted terrain, if available.
24. Position fire support team (FiST) and/or available weapon systems to acquire and execute targets IAW fire support plan.
25. Deploy company team trains 1 to 2 kilometers or a terrain feature behind initial screen line to facilitate casualty/equipment collection and evacuation.
26. Prestock ammunition, fuel, and other supplies at subsequent positions, as required.
27. Executive officer (XO) positions where he can best communicate with both the company team and the battalion task force main CP.
28. Commander positions forward to best observe and command company team actions.
29. Company team conducts moving screen to the flanks or rear of the screened force, if applicable.

30. Except where noted, the company team uses similar techniques when establishing stationary screen.
31. Execute moving flank screen.
32. Company team commander establishes control measures that facilitate dual orientation of direction of movement and orientation of the screen.
33. Company team begins flank screen at the front of the main body's lead combat element and ends at the rear of the protected force.
34. Company team either occupies a series of temporary OPs along a designated screen line, or if the protected force is moving too fast, continue to move while maintaining surveillance and preparing to occupy a designated screen line.
35. Company commander controls movement along the screened flank using the following four basic methods: alternate bound by individual OP, alternate bound by unit, successive bounds, and continuous marching.
36. Execute moving rear screen.
37. Company team establishes the moving screen to the rear of the main body force conducting an offensive operation, or between the enemy and the rear of a force conducting a retrograde operation.
38. Conduct screen movement keyed to the movement of the main body or to the requirements of the enemy situation.
39. Company team acquires enemy reconnaissance elements and destroys them, if required and within capabilities, IAW order.
40. Coordinate with higher headquarters intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets to gain contact with the enemy reconnaissance forward of the screen line and/or in restrictive terrain.
41. Initially focus on reconnaissance infiltration lanes as required.
42. Deploy additional maneuver elements to hide positions, attack by fire (ABF) positions, or battle positions (BP) to destroy enemy reconnaissance elements.
43. Surveillance elements alert the attack elements.
44. Company team engages enemy with indirect fires IAW the fires support plan.
45. Move attack element into position (if required).
46. Company team gains contact with enemy/threat forces.
47. Coordinate with higher headquarters ISR assets to gain contact with enemy forces forward of the initial screen line, if possible.
48. Reorient platoons and ground sensors as required from reconnaissance infiltration lanes to focus on most likely avenues of approach and/or NAIs.
49. Gain contact with enemy patrols and/or OPs forward or along initial screen line.
50. Accept RHO from designated unit/element.
51. Company team maintains contact with enemy lead element providing early warning and reaction time to the protected force main body.
52. Acquire targets and executes indirect fires IAW the fire support plan to impede and harass enemy elements.
53. Maintain surveillance with higher headquarters tactical unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) while maneuver forces displace out of direct fire contact to alternate OPs, if available.
54. Company team displaces from screen line IAW order.
55. Commence displacement IAW directed event/criteria or on order.
56. Defend a BP to assist disengagement of other platoon/elements if necessary (designated platoon).
57. Maintain contact until BHO/RHO with protected force and/or follow-on screening force.
58. Company team maintains command and control (C2) of the screen.

59. Commander positions and moves to observe and influence operations while maintaining communications with subordinate units.
60. Maintain communications with higher headquarters.
61. Ensure supporting analog units receive related information and reports that were digitally transmitted.
62. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units by voice and/or digital reports.
63. Conduct BHO/RHO of enemy forces with designated units/elements IAW order and/or SOP.
64. Report information using the system that best allows timely decisions by the higher commander and his headquarters IAW order and/or SOP.
65. Update COP to edit/delete previously reported enemy icons to reflect the results of the engagement.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6806	TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6804		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5818
TANK-TAC-5804		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6826: Conduct Reserve Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A reserve is that portion of a force withheld from action or uncommitted to a specific course of action, so as to be available for commitment at the decisive moment. Its primary purpose is to retain flexibility through offensive action. A reserve force is not in contact with an enemy and is not already assigned a specific mission or course of action which would preclude its use elsewhere.

CONDITION: The company is a higher headquarters reserve. In offensive operations, it is trailing forward companies with a priority of commitment in two or more company zones. In defensive operations, it is given an assembly area or route(s) and tasks of preparing to perform three or more of the following type missions: counterattack, reinforce, counterattack by fire, or perform rear area security. Priorities are given for planning. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The company establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company is provided guidance on the

rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company acts as a reserve force in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit develops branch plans to meet all potential missions that incorporate them into the offensive or defensive plan of the higher headquarters. The unit coordinates with adjacent units and monitors the battle as it progresses. When committed by the higher headquarters, it takes immediate steps to execute the appropriate branch plan. The unit coordinates its actions with higher headquarters and units into which zones it moves. The unit acts at the decisive place and time. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander gains and maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Company commander and unit leaders plan the reserve mission using the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP).
3. Possible preparations include reconnaissance, preparation of routes, security of movement routes, firing positions before the movement of the company, and liaison with adjacent units.
4. Preparations for the branch plans are conducted as though the company is conducting the stated mission of the branch plan.
5. Company coordinates at the beginning of the planning cycle.
6. Company coordinates with companies/units in whose sector or zone the on-order mission is to be conducted
7. Routes, axis, boundaries, objectives, passage lanes, covering fires, fire support, identification procedures, frequencies, call signs, CSS, obstacles, and other items listed in the appropriate T/E and T/O for the on-order mission are coordinated.
8. Subordinate leaders and staff are informed of coordinated information early enough to disseminate, plan, and conduct reconnaissance.
9. Physical liaison is maintained with higher headquarters and companies with the highest priority for commitment.
10. The company is aware of any changes in plan/status within 30 minutes.
11. Company plans, coordinates, reconnoiters, rehearses, and prepares for the priority reserve missions as time allows.
12. A plan is prepared for each priority mission.
13. Leaders conduct reconnaissance and rehearsals, if possible.
14. The company war games all implied tasks and prepares to assume missions of all other companies within zone/sector.
15. Company maintains its distance behind the lead company/unit to avoid interference and decisive engagement, but it maintains contact and ability to quickly react.
16. When forward company/unit is moving slowly or stopped, the company goes into a defensive posture.
17. Company assumes movement within five minutes of direction to do so.
18. Company rapidly reacts to FRAGO to execute the mission.
19. Company coordinates movement with all organizations whose area it moves through to LD, LD/LC, or designated position.
20. Designated unit reaches the reinforced company/unit within specified time and at the specified location.

21. The company establishes communications with the company/unit being reinforced.
22. Company coordinates the linkup location, procedures, and tactical situation.
23. If conducting an attack or counterattack, the company executes at the specified time.
24. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE), mission instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-OTH-6702
TANK-TAC-6810		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5808	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6827: Conduct a Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Linkup operations are conducted to join two forces and may occur in a variety of circumstances. They are most often conducted: to join two forces regardless of where they are on the battlefield, to join an attacking force with a force inserted into the enemy's rear, to complete the encirclement of an enemy force, or to assist the breakout or come to the relief of an encircled force.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a battalion task force that requires it to linkup with a friendly force. The headquarters directing the linkup establishes minimum control measures and a common operational picture (COP) upon linkup. All planning has been performed. Indirect fire and intelligence assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Contact is possible. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company links up with the other unit at the time and place specified in the higher headquarters order and completes all necessary

coordination. It reports completion of linkup and the results of coordination to the higher commander. The company complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander issues a warning order (WARNO) by voice, digital, or tactical means to the unit.
2. Address the linkup operation using the following three critical phases: describe far recognition signals (phase 1), address coordination (phase 2), and address the movement to the linkup point and linkup (phase 3).
3. Address the type of linkup method (linkup of a moving force and stationary force, and/or linkup of two moving forces).
4. Company executive officer (XO) coordinates communications requirements, digital and voice, with the other unit before they reach direct fire range; coordinates with higher headquarters; confirms signal operating instructions (SOI) compatibility; if SOIs are different, confirms which unit will change SOI; confirm SOI recognition signals; update the COP if both forces are digitally equipped; and determine whether a digital net join is required between company and linkup unit.
5. Company commander contacts the other linkup commander on a secure net to exchange the following critical information, before moving to the linkup point: designate primary and alternate linkup points near the restrictive fire line (RFL)/limit of advance (LOA) to prevent fratricide; exchange enemy and friendly situations; exchange locations and types of obstacles; exchange fire support plans; exchange air defense plans, if applicable; and exchange recognition signals.
6. Company conducts tactical movement.
7. Company commander directs unit to move to the LOA.
8. Contact stationary unit (voice or digital).
9. Coordinate for linkup of company liaison teams at predetermined linkup points.
10. Dispatch liaison teams to contact other forces teams at designated linkup points.
11. Company verifies liaison team's linkup with each other at designated linkup points.
12. Conduct far recognition using FM radio and/or digital communications.
13. Conduct short-range (near) recognition using the designated signal.
14. Complete movement to the linkup point and establish security at that location.
15. Personnel manning linkup point report initial contact to the company commander.
16. Company commander directs the liaison teams to exchange and report critical information.
17. Identify the known enemy/threat situation.
18. Exchange type and number of friendly vehicles.
19. Identify disposition of stationary forces.
20. Coordinate routes to the linkup point and rally point (if used), fire control measures, CS and CSS responsibilities and procedures, and any special requests for medical support.
21. Exchange communication information.
22. Complete linkup with stationary unit.
23. Senior leader at the linkup point keeps commander informed throughout the linkup, using voice, and digital, or tactical means.
24. Send updated SITREPs (voice/digital) as necessary during the linkup.

25. Report information (voice/digital) obtained during coordination as previously specified by the commander.
26. Report completion of linkup/coordination.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5819 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6828: Conduct Passage of Lines as a Moving Unit

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A moving unit passage of lines is a tactical operation in which a unit moves forward or rearward through another force's combat positions with the intention of moving into or out of contact with the enemy.

CONDITION: During tactical operations in a contiguous or noncontiguous area of operation (AO), the company receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct either a forward or rearward passage of lines with a stationary unit. Contact is possible; enemy forces could include disruption, battle, support zone forces, or asymmetrical threat. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and the international media may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all required information, and reports results of the coordination to its higher headquarters. The passage is conducted at the time and place specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The company passes through the stationary unit with no compromise of security. The company completes battle handover (BHO) and/or reconnaissance handover (RHO) as specified. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company commander or his designated representative coordinates with the passing unit.

2. Establish and maintain the common operational picture (COP).
3. Exchange and/or coordinate the following information: update enemy/threat situation; impact of civilian considerations on passage; unit designations, BHO and/or RHO location and criteria; locations of passage points (PP), passage lanes, start points (SP), routes (RTE), and release points (RP); obstacle information, to include the locations of enemy and friendly obstacles, of existing lanes and/or bypasses, and of guides for the passage; fire support information to include assets available, fire control measures, critical friendly zones (CFZ), pre-planned targets and final; protective fires (FPF), and smoke missions; air defense coverage if air threat exists; and location/employment and purpose of ground sensors and tactical unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV), if applicable.
4. Exchange and/or coordinate the following information: company vehicle recognition markings and near and far recognition signals; estimated time of arrival of first company team element at the PP(s) and the number and type of vehicles expected at each PP/lane; actions on contact during passage; CSS requirements; collocation of command and control (C2) element, either the company commander or executive officer (XO), with a similar element from the stationary unit; and exchange internet protocol (IP) addresses, communications security (COMSEC), and/or signal operating instructions (SOI).
5. Receive the following information: update friendly situation and dispositions; impact of terrain on the passage; obstacle locations, friendly lanes, and lane closure criteria; location and link-up procedures with guides prior to passage; rally points, attack positions, and/or assembly areas (as applicable); locations of supporting CS and CSS assets; NBC threat conditions; communications information, to include frequencies, digital data, and near and far recognition signals.
6. Specify responsibilities and procedures for integrating analog units into the digital network.
7. Conduct linkup with stationary unit.
8. Complete linkup.
9. Move along designated route(s) and occupies attack positions as required (during a forward passage of lines).
10. Move to designated points to consolidate as required (during a rearward passage of lines).
11. Initiate movement to PPs IAW order.
12. Company moves tactically to the PP.
13. Maximize use of cover and concealment during movement.
14. Employ smoke to screen movement when terrain does not provide adequate cover and concealment.
15. Maintain weapon orientation based on last known enemy contact and/or requirements to provide 360-degree security IAW SOP.
16. Company conducts passage of lines.
17. Display designated recognition signals on all vehicles.
18. Move tactically through PPs and along passage lanes.
19. Pass through PP without halting.
20. Maintain weapon orientation based on security requirements IAW order and/or SOP.
21. Follow guides and directions and all control points.
22. Evacuate casualties as necessary using voice and/or digital reporting IAW order and/or SOP.
23. Update personnel status (PERSTAT)/logistics status (LOGSTAT) reports and submit to battalion task force.
24. Continue to move while coordinating recovery IAW order and/or SOP (in the

event of vehicle breakdown).
25. Clear passage lane without halting on or blocking it.
26. Company commander maintains command and control of the passage of lines.
27. Disseminate all pertinent information to company in an order.
28. Establish communications with the stationary force.
29. Collocate with similar stationary unit element IAW order (commander and/or XO).
30. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units if applicable.
31. Ensure analog units receive related information and reports that were digitally transmitted if applicable.
32. Move to best command the passage and position for the follow-on mission.
33. Report graphic control measures IAW order and/or SOP.
34. Send reports as necessary IAW order and/or SOP.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6827	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6829

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5821	TANK-TAC-5820	TANK-CMDC-5207
TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5819	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6829: Conduct a Passage of Lines as a Stationary Unit

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A passage of lines as a stationary unit is a tactical operation in which a stationary unit acts as a security force allowing the moving unit to move forward or rearward through its combat positions.

CONDITION: During tactical operations in a contiguous or noncontiguous area of operation (AO), the company receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to assist either a forward or rearward passage of lines of another unit. The unit has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and the international media may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company coordinates with the passing unit, exchanges all required information, and reports results of the coordination to its higher headquarters. The passage is conducted at the time and place specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The company coordinates combat support (CS) to obscure and assist movement during the passage. The company assists with the evacuation of wounded and recovery of equipment of the passing unit IAW the order, and/or standard operating procedures (SOP). The company maintains appropriate security measures to protect the passing unit based on the tactical situation. The company completes battle handover (BHO) and/or reconnaissance handover (RHO) as specified. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander or his designated representative coordinates with the passing unit.
2. Establish and maintains the common operational picture (COP).
3. Exchange and/or coordinate the following information: update enemy/threat situation; impact of civilian considerations on passage; unit designations, BHO and/or RHO location and criteria; locations of passage points (PP), passage lanes, start points (SP), routes (RTE), and release points (RP); obstacle information, to include the locations of enemy and friendly obstacles, of existing lanes and/or bypasses, and of guides for the passage; fire support information to include assets available, fire control measures, critical friendly zones (CFZ), pre-planned targets and final; protective fires (FPF), and smoke missions; air defense coverage if air threat exists; and location/employment and purpose of ground sensors and tactical unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV), if applicable.
4. Exchange and/or coordinate the following information: company vehicle recognition markings and near and far recognition signals; estimated time of arrival of first company team element at the PP(s) and the number and type of vehicles expected at each PP/lane; actions on contact during passage; CSS requirements; collocation of command and control (C2) element, either the company commander or executive officer (XO), with a similar element from the stationary unit; and exchange internet protocol (IP) addresses, communications security (COMSEC), and/or signal operating instructions (SOI).
5. Provide the following information by voice and/or digital means: update friendly situation and disposition; impact of terrain on the passage; obstacle locations, friendly lanes markings, in-stride breach plans, and criteria to close lanes; location and link-up procedures with guides and/or escorts prior to passage; rally points, attack positions, and/or assembly areas (as applicable); and locations of supporting CS and CSS assets.
6. Specify responsibilities and procedures for integrating analog units into the digital network.
7. Company prepares for passage of lines.
8. Ensure lanes through obstacles are clearly marked and physically controlled by guides IAW the order and/or SOP.
9. Ensure road march route(s), RP(s), attack position(s), and PP(s) are unobstructed and facilitate movement to the battle handover line (BHL) and/or reconnaissance handover line (RHL) (for a forward passage).
10. Ensure routes of withdrawal from the RHL, PP(s), assembly areas (AA), SPs, and road march routes are unobstructed and facilitate movement to clear the company team's positions (for a rearward passage).
11. Man contact points IAW order.

12. Conduct linkup with passing unit.
13. Provide escorts to assist movement, if required IAW the order.
14. Company assists movement to the passage point.
15. Guide and/or escorts assist movement of passing force IAW order.
16. Employ projected smoke either to screen movement or to support deception IAW the order.
17. Employ indirect fires IAW the attack guidance.
18. Engage enemy forces with direct fire as required protecting the withdrawal of the passing force (during a rearward passage).
19. Company assists passage of lines.
20. Confirm designated recognition signals are displayed by all vehicles.
21. Guide and/or escort assist movement of passing force IAW order.
22. Ensure passing unit clears PP(s), passage lanes, and SP(s) or RP(s) without halting on or blocking them.
23. Execute in-stride breaches to clear obstacles and allow movement of the passing force on lanes if necessary.
24. Ensure that all elements and vehicles belonging to the passing unit are accounted for.
25. Close lanes IAW order and/or SOP if necessary.
26. Provide CSS and Class III emergency resupply IAW the order.
27. Assist CASEVAC as necessary IAW order and/or SOP.
28. Update personnel status (PERSTAT)/logistics status (LOGSTAT) report and submit as necessary.
29. Provide maintenance support and assists vehicle recovery, as necessary IAW order and/or SOP.
30. Company commander maintains C2 of the passage of lines.
31. Disseminate all pertinent information to the company team in an order.
32. Establish voice communications and COP with the passing unit.
33. Ensure passing unit C2 element collocates with the company team XO or CP IAW order.
34. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units if applicable.
35. Ensure analog units receive related information and reports that were digitally transmitted if applicable.
36. Position himself to best observe and coordinate the passage based on the follow-on mission.
37. Report continuously the following to the passing unit as a minimum: current enemy/threat activity to include location, size, and composition; and friendly actions to include location; size; and activities of combat, CS, and CSS elements.
38. Report graphic control measures IAW order and/or SOP.
39. Send reports as necessary IAW order and/or SOP.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6827	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6828

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5820	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5819
TANK-TAC-5821		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6830: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A relief in place is a tactical operation in which, by direction of higher authority, all or part of a unit is replaced in an area by the incoming unit. The responsibilities of the replaced elements for the mission and the assigned zone of operations are transferred to the incoming unit. The incoming unit continues the operation as ordered.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. The order specifies the time for relief to be completed and describes the actions required for the if they are different or not addressed with the unit's standard operating procedure (SOP). Contact may or may not be likely. Indirect fire and air defense (AD) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the SOP. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company coordinates with the relieving or relieved unit and exchanges all required or specified information, and reports any discrepancies that result from the coordination to its higher headquarters. The relief operation is completed by the time specified in the order and does not expose the units to enemy detection. The company maintains security throughout the relief. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander or designated representative coordinates with relieved/relieving unit.
2. Move to the designated contact point.
3. Coordinate/exchange the following information with the relieved/relieving unit: update enemy/threat situation, if applicable; impact of civilian considerations on the relief; time the relief is to begin and estimated time for completion that takes best advantage of limited visibility; and time or event that triggers the change of responsibility for the area of operation (AO) to the relieving unit.
4. Coordinate/exchange the following information with the sequence of relief, using one of the following techniques: use sequential relief, relieving one subordinate unit at a time, when maximum security is required and/or sufficient time is available; use simultaneous relief, relieving all

subordinate units at the same time, when time is limited.

5. Coordinate/exchange the following information with the method of relief, using one of the following methods: relieving element occupies a position separate from that of the relieved element (by alternate element position); relieving element occupies vehicle or squad positions within the same BP as the relieved element (by alternate vehicle or squad position).
6. Discuss locations, link-up procedures, and responsibilities of guides.
7. The unit being relieved provides guides to the relieving unit.
8. Provide routes (with critical control measures) into and out of positions.
9. Provide graphics depicting alternate/supplementary battle and/or fighting positions.
10. Provide battle handover procedures for artillery and AD information to include assets available, fire control measures, critical friendly zones (CFZ), planned targets, final protective fires, and smoke missions.
11. Company shares digital COP with relieving element.
12. Fire support is normally provided by the relieved unit until the units transfer responsibility for the sector/zone.
13. Provide actions on contact during the relief.
14. Provide platoon and company fire plans and sector sketches covering all crew-served weapons and/or vehicle fighting positions.
15. Provide procedures for transfer of supplies (Classes III, IV, and V) and wire lines (if necessary).
16. Provide procedures for transfer of responsibility for obstacles in the AO.
17. Coordinate communications data to include the following: exchange tactical internet and digital database information, frequencies, communications security, and/or signal operating instructions (SOI); and transfer of wire lines, if necessary.
18. Company commander issues OPORD and/or FRAGO to platoon commanders, with emphasis on specifying the following information: time the relief is to begin and end, method for conducting the relief, critical control measures, criteria for battle handover, OPSEC considerations, locations of and transfer procedures for obstacles, contingency plans in case of enemy contact during the relief, responsibilities and requirements for transfer of supplies and equipment, and movement control information, including designated routes and graphic control measures.
19. Company conducts initial preparation for the relief as the relieving unit.
20. Maintain OPSEC, taking these actions: change frequencies on all company radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit; maintain radio listening silence (if specified in OPORD); and adhere to noise, light, and litter discipline.
21. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieved unit, if applicable.
22. Conduct reconnaissance, taking these actions: company representatives move to the predetermined contact point to meet representatives from the unit being relieved and company representatives reconnoiter AO and vehicle positions of the relieved unit.
23. Initiate movement, taking these actions: move to predetermined contact points and/or assembly area(s) (AA) and meet guides from the relieved unit; maintain FM radio listening silence; collocate command and control (C2) elements (such as XOs and/or commanders); and move into hide positions and coordinate any final information.
24. As necessary, occupy preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief, the following procedures apply: company maintains readiness condition (REDCON) one status; platoon occupy positions behind the unit to

be relieved as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD; platoon commanders report to the company commander when occupation is complete; and company commander reports to the battalion task force commander that the company is prepared to conduct the relief.

25. Company conducts initial preparation for the relief as the relieved unit.
26. Maintain communications (voice or digital) as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD.
27. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieving unit, if applicable.
28. Update and/or prepare necessary range cards, sector sketches, fire plans, obstacle/minefield records, and prestock supplies for transfer to the relieving unit.
29. Company completes preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit.
30. Update the enemy/threat situation.
31. Complete transfer of sector sketches and fire plans.
32. Complete transfer of obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
33. Report to the battalion task force commander that preparations for the relief are complete.
34. Company conducts the relief.
35. Conduct a relief by alternate vehicle or squad position, when the relieved unit occupies alternate vehicle or squad positions.
36. The relieved unit occupies alternate platoon or company BP(s) if conducting a relief by alternate element position.
37. Guides from the relieved unit meet the relieving unit at the designated contact points, using covered and concealed routes and maintaining 360 degree security.
38. Guides lead the relieving unit to specified positions in the determined sequence of relief, using covered and concealed routes and maintaining 360 degree security, as applicable.
39. Transfer unit equipment and supplies (as required).
40. The relieving unit remains OPCON to the relieved unit until the entire relieving unit is in place and prepared to assume the mission.
41. When all elements are in place, the company completes relief actions.
42. Complete the relief by the time specified in the OPORD and/or FRAGO.
43. Conduct battle handover, with relieving unit accepting responsibility.
44. Report completion of the relief in place to higher headquarters.
45. Move to a predetermined rally point for accountability and/or move to the assembly area designated by the commander, as the relieved unit.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5822

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations

6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6831: Conduct a Breakout from Encirclement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A breakout from encirclement is a tactical operation conducted by an encircled force to regain freedom of movement or contact with friendly units. It differs from other attacks only in that a simultaneous defense in other areas of the perimeter must be maintained.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and becomes cut off from friendly units and encircled (enemy to its fronts, flanks, and rear). The enemy is probing the company defenses and has the capability to attack by air, ground, and indirect fires. A gap between the enemy elements do exist. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and/or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company performs the breakout in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts necessary planning and coordination. The unit breaks through or disengages from the enemy and rejoins friendly forces in accordance with directions from higher headquarters. All encircled friendly elements are brought under company control. The unit complies with the ROE and or ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander gains and maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The company commander organizes the encircled force.
3. Assume control of all friendly forces in the encirclement and reestablish a chain of command.
4. The company establishes security, disposition of friendly forces is rearranged for all around defense, and each element coordinates and is tied-in with adjacent elements.
5. The company establishes a reserve.
6. Organize all available direct and indirect fire support and develop a fire plan.
7. Obtain status of units (personnel, weapons, equipment, ammunition, and other supplies) and reorganize logistics.
8. The company commander establishes communications with higher headquarters.
9. Report status of units and tactical situation.
10. Request authorization to conduct the breakout.
11. The company commander plans the breakout, once given authority from higher headquarters.

12. The company performs reconnaissance and determines the likely enemy locations and strengths based upon templating and reports to include: location and orientation of enemy forces, enemy counterattack objectives and location of enemy reserves, enemy obstacle systems, and likely enemy air avenues of approach.
13. Decide to execute an attack.
14. Prepare to destroy equipment that cannot be moved.
15. Make provisions for personnel who cannot accompany the company breakout.
16. Use deception to cover the breakout.
17. Rapidly execute attack before the enemy can organize his defenses.
18. The company executes the attack.
19. The attack is aimed at a gap or weakness in the enemy's defenses.
20. The company fixes the enemy in other areas of the perimeter.
21. The company continues to defend in other areas of the perimeter.
22. Deception activities are employed to surprise the enemy as to the time and location of the breakout attack.
23. The attack exploits limited visibility if possible.
24. The company concentrates maneuver units and fire support at the point of penetration to conduct the breakout.
25. The attack is coordinated with supporting attacks by friendly units outside the encirclement, if possible.
26. On order, the defending elements disengage and follow the breakout attack.
27. The defending elements blow charges and destroy equipment left behind.
28. Complete evacuation of all wounded personnel.
29. The company reports breakout status to higher headquarters.
30. The company moves to friendly location.
31. The company can maintain all around security, can successfully react to protect itself from any enemy attack, and all enemy attacks are defeated and do not stop the movement of the unit.
32. The company links up with friendly elements and executes a passage of lines.
33. The company continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5809	TANK-TAC-5808	TANK-CMDC-5207
TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-TAC-5811	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12.1 (FM 17-15) Tank Platoon
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6832: Conduct a Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A breach is tactical task where any means available are employed to break through or secure a passage through an enemy defense, obstacle, minefield, or fortification. Breaches are characterized by three forms: covert breach, deliberate breach, and in-stride breach.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and encounters an obstacle that must be breached to complete the mission. The obstacle cannot be bypassed. Engineer support may not be available. The obstacle is under enemy observation and within range of enemy fires. The company is equipped with its countermine equipment (mine plow and roller tanks) and may or may not be supported by fire by another company. Indirect fire and intelligence assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company suppresses and obscures the defending enemy force and establishes security at the breach site. The unit reduces the obstacle, proofs, and marks lane(s). The company establishes security on the far side of the obstacle, destroying or suppressing the enemy forces that threaten friendly elements moving through the breach site. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander plans the actions on the objective (breach).
2. Apply the five tenets of breaching: intelligence, breaching fundamentals, breaching organization, mass, and synchronization.
3. Obtain all pertinent obstacle intelligence (OBSINTEL) on the location, disposition, composition, and orientation of both the obstacle and the defending enemy.
4. Analyze the basic breaching fundamentals: suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA).
5. Determine type of breaching operation: deliberate breach, in-stride breach, assault breach, or covert breach.
6. Determine mobility assets available to the company team for breaching operations.
7. Specify mechanical or manual breach by engineer platoon (or squad) and an assault section.
8. Specify breach with mine plow and/or roller tanks.
9. Specify manual breach using breach kits and/or explosive breaches (with hand-emplaced charges) by a tank or mechanized infantry platoon, if other breaching assets are unavailable.
10. Identify lane requirements.
11. Identify location of enemy direct fire weapon systems.
12. Determine ability of enemy infantry to interfere with the breach.
13. Plan for indirect fires to suppress the defending enemy, and screening or obscuring smoke to prevent enemy acquiring friendly elements.
14. Designate platoons/elements as support, breach, and assault forces (breaching organization).

15. Support force selects and conducts tactical movement to support by fire (SBF) position.
16. Select covered and concealed routes to the SBF position.
17. Call for and adjust indirect fires to suppress and obscure the enemy, allowing the occupation of the SBF position.
18. Select SBF position that provides fields of fire and observation allowing the company to suppress enemy elements, and that provide adequate security.
19. Employ infantry squads to secure the SBF position prior to its occupation by the company team's vehicles, if mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) allows.
20. Position indirect fire observers in observation posts (OP) that can observe enemy forces and the obstacle.
21. Support force provides SBF for the breach force.
22. Suppress the enemy with direct and indirect fires to prevent him from placing effective fires against friendly forces.
23. Call for and adjust smoke to obscure the enemy and/or to screen the movement of friendly forces.
24. Prevent enemy forces from placing effective fires on breach or assault forces.
25. Maintain flank security and reposition to alternate SBF positions as necessary to maintain accurate fires on the enemy and/or to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires on support force.
26. Send updated situational reports (SITREP) to the company commander, breach force, and assault force, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
27. Breach force moves to and secures the breach site.
28. Conduct maneuver or fire and movement along covered and concealed routes to the breach site, preventing the enemy from placing effective fires on the breach force.
29. Search for bypasses.
30. Secure the near side of the obstacle against mounted or dismounted enemy elements.
31. Send updated SITREPs to the company team commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
32. Breach force reduces the obstacle with engineer support.
33. Move to breach site using covered and concealed routes.
34. Engineer platoon commander selects means of breaching the obstacle, using the mine clearing line charge (MICLIC), armored combat earthmover (ACE), armored vehicle launched bridge (AVLB), or engineer squad(s).
35. Reduce the obstacle and opens lane(s) for one-way vehicle traffic.
36. Proof and mark the lanes, to include entrance funnel markers, entrance markers, left handrail markers, and exit markers.
37. Establish breach site security on the far side of the obstacle against mounted and dismounted enemy elements to facilitate passage of the assault force.
38. Report the location of the entrance and exit points to the company team by voice and/or digital report.
39. Report method(s) of marking the lanes to the company.
40. Send updated SITREPs to the company commander on the friendly and enemy situations, using voice or digital communications.
41. Breach force reduces the obstacle with mine plows/rollers.
42. Establish near side security, suppressing enemy elements that could interfere with breaching operations.

43. Search for bypass of the obstacle or determine breach point.
44. Reduce and proof lane(s) with plow and roller tanks.
45. Mark the lane, to include entrance funnel markers, entrance markers, left hand rail markers, and exit markers.
46. Maneuver to the far side of the obstacle and establish base of fire for the assault force, suppressing enemy elements that could fire on elements moving through or exiting the lane.
47. Send updated SITREPs to the company commander on the friendly and enemy situation, using voice or digital communications.
48. Breach force reduces the obstacle using a manual breach. NOTE: This step applies when engineer support is not available, when other breaching efforts fail, and/or when the commander determines during the troop-leading process that the best method is a manual breach by a tank platoon, mechanized infantry platoon, or engineer platoon.
49. React to contact, repositioning and calling for supporting fires as necessary.
50. If necessary, conduct assault to secure the far side of the obstacle to prevent enemy elements from interfering with breaching operations.
51. Conduct manual breach using grappling hooks, wire cutters, and demolitions, improving the lane to allow vehicles to pass, and/or conducts explosive breaches with hand-emplaced charges.
52. Proof lane with available assets.
53. Mark the lane IAW unit SOP.
54. Send updated SITREPs to the company commander on the friendly and enemy situations, using voice or digital communications.
55. Move through the breach to establish a base of fire, preventing enemy forces from employing effective fires against the assault force.
56. Assault force executes the assault.
57. Assist the support force with suppression, as necessary, during the initial reduction of the obstacle.
58. Conduct an assault breach of protective obstacles, as necessary, and maneuver through the lane(s).
59. Assault to destroy enemy elements that threaten elements moving through the breach site.
60. Secure the far side of the obstacle (the area that can influence the breach site).
61. Conduct additional actions on the objective to destroy enemy elements on the far side of the obstacle, as necessary and as directed.
62. Send updated SITREPs to company commander, as necessary, to update him on the friendly and enemy situations, using voice and digital communications.
63. Company completes the breach and continues the mission.
64. Maneuver quickly through the cleared lane(s) and deploy IAW the OPORD/FRAGO.
65. Company commander sends updated SITREPs to the battalion task force commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
66. Continue the mission IAW OPORD/FRAGO.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6813	TANK-TAC-6811	TANK-TAC-6804
TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6207	TANK-CBTS-6404
TANK-CMDC-6202		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6813	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804
TANK-TAC-5809		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
5. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
8. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
9. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
13. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6833: Conduct Gap/Water Crossing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures a unit takes to protect itself while moving through or crossing a gap in order to continue tactical operations. A gap is a ravine, mountain pass, or river that presents an obstacle that must be bridged.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations and receives an operations order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a hasty water crossing as part of a battalion task force or conduct a hasty gap crossing independently, when supported by attached engineer assets in order to continue its mission. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. Contact is possible or expected. Initial reconnaissance reports indicate that the crossing site can be crossed with available assets. The company is augmented with an armored vehicle launched bridge (AVLB) and armored combat earthmover (ACE) section. Indirect fire, intelligence, and air defense (AD) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company suppresses and obscures the defending enemy force, establishes security at the crossing site, and emplaces the AVLB, or reduces the dry gap with ACEs. The company assault force seizes immediate objectives on the far side of the obstacle and the follow and support force suppresses or destroys enemy forces that threaten friendly elements moving through the crossing site. The unit complies with the ROE. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander plans for the hasty gap/water crossing.
2. Organize the unit into assault, support, and follow and support forces (if applicable) to accomplish a hasty water crossing operation.
3. Plan for indirect fires to obscure and/or suppress the enemy.
4. Evaluate potential crossing sites.
5. Evaluate key terrain which provides direct observation and/or fields of fire to influence the crossing operation.
6. Determine location of enemy direct fire weapon systems.
7. Determine the ability of enemy infantry to interfere with the crossing.
8. Follow and support force provides support by fire (SBF) for the assault force and the support force.
9. Suppress and/or destroy suspected and known enemy locations with direct fires.
10. Employ indirect fires to suppress enemy forces, and smoke to screen the crossing site from enemy observation.
11. Reposition as necessary to maintain accurate fires on the enemy or to maintain survivability.
12. Sends updated situation reports (SITREP) to the company commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
13. Update and maintain the common operational picture (COP).
14. Assault force maneuvers to and secures crossing site.
15. Maneuver using covered and concealed routes to the crossing site.
16. Employ smoke and obscurants to conceal their approach to the crossing site.
17. Secure crossing site for remaining company team and/or battalion task force elements.
18. Send updated SITREPs to the company commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
19. Assault force and support force prepares the crossing site and establishes far side security.
20. Engineers move AVLB to crossing site using covered and concealed routes.
21. AVLB crew sets up bridge across gap/water.
22. ACEs emplace dry gap crossing points or prepare crossing site embankments and/or trails.
23. Assault force leader reports to the company commander when the bridge is ready for crossing.
24. Assault force crosses and establishes far side security.
25. Assault force and/or follow and support force suppresses and/or destroys enemy elements that threaten the crossing site.
26. Assault to destroy enemy elements that threaten friendly elements moving through the crossing site.
27. Establish a base of fire to suppress and/or destroy any enemy elements to support the maneuver of the remainder of the company.
28. Establish local security on the exit bank with infantry elements, to permit development of the crossing site.
29. Breach obstacles and/or open or improve trails with engineers moving with the assault force.
30. Send updated SITREPs to the company commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.
31. Remaining company elements conduct gap/water crossing.
32. Move quickly across the bridge or gap.
33. Deploy on the far side of bridge/gap IAW the OPORD/FRAGO.
34. Company commander sends updated SITREPs to the battalion task force commander, as necessary, using voice or digital communications.

35. Maintain the COP.
36. AVLB crew recovers bridge as the company provides security, IAW the order or commander's guidance.
37. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
38. Comply with the ROE, secure enemy prisoners of war (EPW), and treat and evacuate casualties.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CBTS-6401	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6811		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5809	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
9. MCWP 3-17.1 River Crossing Operations
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6834: Conduct a Delay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A delay is conducted when the commander needs time to concentrate, preserve, or withdraw forces; to establish defenses in greater depth; to economize in an area; to cover a defending or withdrawing unit; to protect a friendly unit's flank; or to complete offensive actions elsewhere. In the delay, the destruction of the enemy force is secondary to slowing his advance to gain time.

CONDITION: During tactical retrograde operations the company receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a delay in an area of operations (AO), or delay forward of a specified line or position for a specified time. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Contact is imminent. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts the delay IAW the SOP, the order, and/or commander's guidance. The company occupies initial delay positions, forces the enemy to slow his advance, delays the enemy for a specified time, or until a specified event has occurred, complies with all control measures, and disengages from the enemy as directed. The company does not become decisively engaged. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander determines the type of delay and the delay technique.
2. Select the type of delay.
3. Select a delay in AO if specified in the OPORD or if the delay operation is focused on avoiding decisive engagement and preserving the combat power of the company.
4. Select delay forward of a specified line or position (normally during linear operations) for a specified time if the delay mission is linked to a specified time or to event-related objectives.
5. Select one of the following delay techniques: choose delay from successive positions or phase lines (PL) when the company team's AO is so wide that available force cannot occupy more than a single line of positions, or when terrain will not allow positioning of forces in depth; choose delay from alternating positions when the sector/AO is narrow enough to be covered by one or two platoons, and the company can occupy more than a single line of position.
6. Company prepares to conduct the delay.
7. The company commander factors into his scheme of maneuver, three key components of a successful delay: the ability to stop or slow the enemy's momentum while avoiding decisive engagement; the ability to degrade the enemy's combat power; and the ability to maintain a mobility advantage.
8. Develop direct fire plan to assist unit in massing direct fires during the delaying actions.
9. Designate high-speed avenues of withdrawal.
10. Prepare and mark routes to successive positions.
11. Prestock ammunition, fuel, and other supplies at successive positions as required.
12. Emplace obstacles through the depth of the sector to slow and/or impede the enemy and/or to facilitate the company's displacement to successive positions and submit applicable obstacle report as required.
13. Evacuate unneeded supplies and/or destroy unneeded supplies that cannot be evacuated.
14. Conduct a rehearsal of operations anticipated for the delay; these may include engagement of the enemy and maneuver through the delay area.
15. Company conducts delay from successive positions or PLs, degrading the enemy's momentum and combat power.
16. Occupy forward/initial delay positions.
17. Initiate the delay, with the company conducting a defense from its forward position with each platoon occupying a series of specific battle positions (BP).
18. Conduct displacement, on order or when the enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the OPORD, by platoon to successive positions as specified in OPORD, or as directed.
19. Employ stationary elements within the company to provide overwatch or base of fire as other elements displace to their successive positions.
20. Continue the delay, with the company conducting a defense from successive positions.

21. Company commander directs delay actions as required.
22. Focus direct fires to destroy enemy elements.
23. Direct platoons/elements to displace to alternate, supplementary, or successive positions as required.
24. Direct employment of and lifting and shifting of indirect fires as required to suppress, destroy, or obscure enemy elements or to screen or facilitate friendly displacement.
25. Ensure elements in forward positions defend until ordered to displace or until their displacement criteria are met.
26. Ensure as the forward elements displace, the elements in the successive positions engage the enemy, providing a base of fire that protects the displacing elements.
27. Displacing elements move through other company team elements to their own successive positions.
28. Issue FRAGOs and associated graphics to company team as required.
29. Send spot reports (SPOTREP) and makes recommendations to the battalion task force commander as required.
30. Maintain and updates the common operational picture (COP).
31. Delay the enemy for a specified time or until a specified event has occurred, avoiding decisive engagement with the enemy.
32. Employ a counterattack force if necessary to regain position of advantage over enemy elements.
33. Degrade the enemy's combat power IAW battalion task force commander's intent.
34. Company conducts delay from alternating positions.
35. Company commander arrays one or more subordinate elements in the initial delay positions.
36. Ensure forward element(s) in the initial delay positions engage the enemy while the rest of the company occupies and prepares second-echelon delay positions.
37. Alternate fighting the enemy with movement to new positions.
38. Ensure initial element displaces when ordered to displace or the displacement criteria was met, moving through the second-echelon delay positions to their own successive positions (which become the third echelon of the delay).
39. Ensure elements in the second echelon overwatch the displacing units' movement and assumes responsibility for engaging the enemy.
40. Ensure sequence continues until the delay operation is completed.
41. Update COP to edit/delete previously reported enemy icons to reflect the results of the engagement.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6820	TANK-CBTS-6402	TANK-CMDC-6202
TANK-TAC-6804		

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5824	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5804
TANK-TAC-5816		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations

6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6835: Conduct a Withdrawal Under Enemy Pressure

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A withdrawal is an operation in which a unit in contact disengages from an enemy force in order to prepare for a follow-on mission. It can also be conducted when the commander determines that he must reposition all or part of his force for a specific purpose; for example, he may need to separate from the enemy by a prescribed distance to allow employment of special-purpose munitions. A withdrawal can be executed at any time and during any type of operation. The company normally conducts a withdrawal as part of a task force operation. The conduct of the withdrawal may be assisted or unassisted. In an assisted withdrawal, a security force provided by the next higher headquarters assists the main body in breaking contact with the enemy. In an unassisted withdrawal, the controlling headquarters must provide its own security.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a withdrawal. The company is being engaged by enemy forces by direct fire or ground attack. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts the withdrawal in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit receives guidance form higher headquarters whether the company will be assisted in the withdrawal. The company executes the withdrawal and moves all equipment and personnel to the designated position . All supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated are destroyed and all EPWs and casualties are evacuated. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. During offensive/defensive planning, the company commander plans/prepares the withdrawal.
2. Plan and prepare routes to reduce congestion; plan overwatching fires to cover withdrawal; plan smoke/indirect fires to cover disengagement; all leaders conduct reconnaissance; plan/coordinate with overwatching elements; rehearse passage of line withdrawal if possible.
3. The company commander gives FRAGO for withdrawal.
4. The company commander receives the order to withdraw.
5. The company commander makes a rapid estimate of the situation.

6. Establish a sequence of withdrawal.
7. Order a subunit or element to disengage (normally the least heavily engaged disengages first).
8. Casualties and nonessential elements are evacuated with the element least engaged.
9. Coordinate with the battalion covering force.
10. Coordinate for a rearward passage of lines when necessary.
11. Plan occupation of the new position.
12. Designate a rear guard force to be used when the withdrawing unit is under extreme enemy pressure.
13. The company executes the withdrawal.
14. The company commander maneuvers platoons and controls fires to slow or stop the enemy.
15. Routes are reconnoitered to ensure rapid movement.
16. All elements disengage on order concealing their movements.
17. The disengaged element is directed to take up an overwatch position to aid the other elements to disengage.
18. Account for all personnel.
19. The next element(s) is ordered to disengage; the overwatch element assists by fire, if needed.
20. Indirect fires and obstacles are employed to slow the enemy and mask the movement of the elements.
21. The process is continued with elements changing roles to perform fire and movement of bounding overwatch to the rear until the entire unit has withdrawn.
22. The company conducts a rearward passage of lines when necessary.
23. The company reports its status when it has completed the withdrawal, and when it is ready to continue the defense or execute the next mission.
24. The company provides information regarding casualties, vehicle losses, and overall unit capability.
25. Battalion CP acknowledges receipt of company status report.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5825 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6836: Conduct a Withdrawal Not Under Enemy Pressure

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A withdrawal is an operation in which a unit in contact disengages from an enemy force in order to prepare for a follow-on mission.

It can also be conducted when the commander determines that he must reposition all or part of his force for a specific purpose; for example, he may need to separate from the enemy by a prescribed distance to allow employment of special-purpose munitions. A withdrawal can be executed at any time and during any type of operation. The company normally conducts a withdrawal as part of a task force operation. The conduct of the withdrawal may be assisted or unassisted. In an assisted withdrawal, a security force provided by the next higher headquarters assists the main body in breaking contact with the enemy. In an unassisted withdrawal, the controlling headquarters must provide its own security.

CONDITION: The company is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a withdrawal. The company is not in contact with an enemy force. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts the withdrawal in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit receives guidance form higher headquarters whether the company will be assisted in the withdrawal. The company executes the withdrawal and moves all equipment and personnel to the designated position without being detected by the enemy. The unit complies with the ROE and or ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander develops a plan for the withdrawal.
2. The company commander sets a time for the start of the withdrawal (makes maximum use of reduced visibility).
3. Identify the location of company assembly area and develop the actions of platoons in the assembly area.
4. The company commander develops the size, composition, tasks, and leader of the company quartering party.
5. Obtain future company and platoon missions from higher headquarters.
6. Develop deception activities.
7. Distribute specific tasks to subordinate units.
8. Plan fires (organic and supporting for indirect fires along the withdrawal route to aid in disengagement).
9. Develop contingency plans if the enemy should attack during the withdrawal.
10. Security forces to cover movement is established.
11. The quartering party establishes the assembly area.
12. The quartering party departs for the designated assembly area.
13. All unneeded supplies are transported with the quartering party.
14. The quartering party establishes security, chooses tentative platoon positions, and conducts the necessary chemical/radiological reconnaissance.
15. The quartering party reports when the assembly area is prepared.

16. The company initiates the withdrawal.
17. The company initiates indirect fire, smoke, decoys, and diversions to assist the withdrawal.
18. All supplies and equipment that are not needed are moved to the rear.
19. At the time specified in the order, the withdrawal starts.
20. Platoons account for all vehicles and squads, and then conduct the withdrawal to the company assembly area.
21. All elements use covered and concealed routes for movement and maintain operational security.
22. Units use bounding overwatch to provide movement security.
23. All material and equipment that must be left behind are destroyed or rendered inoperable.
24. The company moves to their new positions as ordered.
25. The company occupies the new assembly area located in the battalion rear area upon completion of the withdrawal.
26. The company reports the occupation of the assembly area to the battalion.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5825 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6837: Conduct a Retirement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Retirement is a retrograde operation in which a force not in contact with the enemy conducts organized movement to the rear. It is normally done during periods of limited visibility. The company conducts a retirement as part of a larger force.
CONDITION: During tactical operations as part of a battalion task force, the company receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to retire to a rear area. The unit is not in enemy contact. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts the retirement IAW the SOP, the order, and/or commander's guidance. The company moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe or engage it with direct fire. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander plans for the retirement.
2. Develop contingencies for the retirement.
3. Plan the following as necessary: develop a direct fire plan to assist the company during their retirement; plan to displace the company team main body rapidly, free of enemy interference; plan to safeguard the withdrawal routes; and plan to retain sufficient combat, CS, and CSS capabilities throughout the operation to support forces in contact with the enemy.
4. Plan the retirement in three following overlapping phases: preparation, displacement, and security.
5. Preparation phase: dispatch quartering parties, issue warning orders (WARNO), and nonessential vehicles are moved to the rear.
6. Displacement phase: designated elements begin movement to the rear and elements conduct tactical movement to a designated assembly area (AA) or battle position (BP).
7. Security phase: designate a security force to protect and assist the other elements as they move to their new positions, or coordinate with a security force provided by the higher headquarters.
8. Task-organize the company into a security force, a main body, and a reserve.
9. Plan for indirect fires.
10. Coordinate with adjacent units within its area of operation (AO), if necessary.
11. Determine when to start the retirement.
12. Determine the routes to be used during the retirement and post the overlays on graphics.
13. Company establishes security and/or base of fire for the retirement.
14. Coordinate with the security element (provided by another unit) to ensure adequate security and/or base of fire for the company during the retirement.
15. Disengage and retire by platoon, maintaining overwatch and/or providing base of fire.
16. Conduct movement using appropriate formation and movement technique, based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
17. Maintain weapons orientation toward the enemy and engage enemy elements as a contingency.
18. Use covered and concealed routes, if available.
19. Employ indirect fires to suppress or obscure enemy elements as a contingency.
20. Conduct a rearward passage of lines through the security force.
21. Conduct battle handover (BHO) to the security force.
22. Conduct movement to and occupation of the AA or BP, establishing local security IAW OPORD/FRAGO or METT-TC.
23. Conduct movement using appropriate formation and movement technique, based on METT-TC.
24. Maintain the common operational picture (COP) and updates it as necessary.
25. Company commander completes displacement actions.
26. Send situation report (SITREP) (voice or digital) to the battalion task

force commander as necessary.
27. Report completion of the retirement to the battalion task force commander.
28. Direct consolidation and reorganization activities or resupply operations as required preparing for future operations.
29. Terminate the retirement after the company successfully displaces and prepare for next mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202 TANK-TAC-6804

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5826 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804
TANK-TAC-5825

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6838: Conduct an Infiltration/Exfiltration

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An infiltration is the movement through or into an area or territory occupied by either friendly or enemy troops or organizations. The movement is made, either by small groups or by individuals, at extended or irregular intervals. When used in connection with the enemy it infers that contact is avoided. When used in conjunction with a tactical vehicular march, vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups at irregular intervals to reduce density and prevent undue massing of vehicles. An exfiltration is the removal of personnel or units from areas under enemy control.

CONDITION: During tactical operations the company, as part of a battalion task force, receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an infiltration and/or exfiltration. The purpose of the infiltration and/or exfiltration (gather information, conduct operations in the enemy's rear area, conduct an attack to seize key terrain, conduct an ambush, covert breaching, or reconnaissance) is identified by higher headquarters. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. The commander determines that avoiding enemy/threat detection is essential to accomplishing the mission. Additional combat support (CS) and/or combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company upon request. Contact is expected. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces

and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company infiltrates through the threat area, avoiding decisive engagement, and conducts linkup at the designated location(s) IAW the SOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. If required, the company exfiltrates to friendly controlled areas for further operations. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLP) to plan the infiltration/exfiltration.
2. Monitor the common operational picture (COP) to obtain all current information and intelligence concerning the area of operations (AO).
3. Coordinate with the battalion task force S-2 for intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets that may include Joint Surveillance Target Attack Radar System (JSTARS)/U2 (imagery), tactical unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV), and signal intelligence (SIGINT) to locate weaknesses in threat dispositions.
4. Assess infiltration/exfiltration lanes/routes using maps, urban operations sketch, aerial photography, and any additional intelligence.
5. Ensure lanes/routes avoid obstacles, populated areas, and areas occupied or covered by threat elements; ensure lanes/routes provide cover and concealment by placing ridge lines, rivers, and other restrictive terrain between friendly and threat forces; and ensure lanes/routes provide sufficient maneuver space to allow units/elements to avoid threat contact.
6. Employ initial reconnaissance patrols to find or confirm gaps and routes through enemy/threat positions.
7. Determine most appropriate method for infiltration/exfiltration based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
8. Task-organize to facilitate control of the infiltration/exfiltration, employing the largest elements that can move undetected.
9. Identify how the company team will move based on mission time constraints.
10. Coordinate with maneuver forces tasked to assist or support the infiltration.
11. Coordinate forward and rearward passage of lines as necessary.
12. Company commander issues order addressing the following: address threat situation to include likely enemy/threat positions, obstacles, weapon systems, night observation devices (NOD) electronic warfare (EW), and their capabilities; address civilian situation to include populated areas and heavily traveled routes and trails; address terrain to include effect on threat weapon systems; address weather to include effect on NVGs; address location, disposition, and missions of friendly forces that may impact mission; and address task organization.
13. Address concept of the operation that describes as a minimum: scheme for infiltration/exfiltration; scheme of fires to support the movement, to include critical friendly zones (CFZ); integration of additional higher headquarters assets (if attached) to support infiltration, if available; engagement criteria and actions on contact; criteria for aborting the infiltration and/or exfiltration; criteria for postponing or canceling infiltration and/or exfiltration; and rehearsals.
14. Address scheme of support to include the following: medical evacuation (MEDEVAC); administration of killed in action (KIA); vehicle recovery (if

necessary); emergency resupply procedures and locations; and criteria for destroying equipment and supplies.

15. Address location of commander and executive officer (XO).
16. Address designated visual and digital communications methods and procedures for command and control (C2), to include recognition signals.
17. Company prior to departure, informs all units in area and on flanks of organization, time(s) and location(s) for infiltration/exfiltration, and time of return (if applicable).
18. Company coordinates a passage of lines, if required.
19. Company conducts infiltration.
20. Conduct a passage of lines if required; separate into dismounted infiltrating elements at designated point, and initiate fires for suppression and deception.
21. Move along concealed primary or alternate routes that avoid silhouetting moving units/personnel, obstacles, enemy/threat positions, populated areas, main avenues of approach, and heavily traveled routes and trails.
22. Maintain dispersion and noise, light, and camouflage discipline.
23. Avoid detection by halting and hiding.
24. Use battlefield noise (including artillery) to mask movement.
25. Confirm routes and critical points are clear and transmits information to follow-on units (lead element).
26. Avoid enemy/threat contact whenever possible.
27. Avoid decisive engagement if contact is made; unit/element breaks contact, and seeks alternate route(s) as necessary to reach designated locations; and unit/element aborts infiltration IAW order.
28. Engage the enemy as necessary, using support by fire and/or indirect fires.
29. Conduct linkup at designated location(s).
30. Reconnoiter and secure designated location (lead element).
31. Conduct long-range recognition (following elements).
32. Establish communications before entering direct fire weapons range.
33. Respond to challenges and authenticate correctly IAW signal operating instructions (SOI).
34. Confirm short-range recognition signals if necessary.
35. Complete the linkup (following elements).
36. Exchange short-range recognition signals IAW order or SOP.
37. Complete movement and occupy positions IAW order or SOP.
38. Prepare for follow-on mission.
39. Report completion of linkup to higher headquarters.
40. Reorganize and cross-level as required to prepare for follow-on mission.
41. Company exfiltrates (if required). NOTE: Performance measures for exfiltration generally mirror those for infiltration previously discussed with the following additional considerations.
42. Separate into exfiltrating elements at designated rally points as required.
43. Conduct tactical movement to pickup or reentry rally points.
44. Conduct linkup with extraction unit at pickup point if necessary.
45. Establish voice communication and conduct digital net join, if required, before entering direct fire weapons range.
46. Respond to challenges and authenticate correctly IAW SOI.
47. Exchange short-range recognition signals IAW order or SOP.
48. Conduct passage of lines.
49. Conduct movement to designated area following rearward passage of lines.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-6804 TANK-CMDC-6207 TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6839: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A tactical road march is a rapid movement used to relocate units within a combat zone in order to prepare for combat operations. Although contact with enemy ground forces is not anticipated, security against air attack, enemy Special Forces, and sympathizers is maintained and the unit is prepared to take immediate action against an enemy threat.

CONDITION: The company receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct a tactical roadmarch as part of a battalion task force or as a separate unit. The order specifies the arrival time at the SP as well as the march speed, interval, and order of march. All planning and preparation are complete, including reconnaissance to determine time/distance factor to the SP and any staging required for the roadmarch. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company moves through and reports the SP, checkpoints, and RP at times specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. It maintains security throughout the march and completes movement to the location designated in the order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Company commander initiates road march and controls company movement toward the SP.
2. Direct company to begin movement using the designated formation, movement technique, and vehicle interval and speed.
3. Company commander positions himself where he can best control the movement of the company.
4. Use visual signals, FM radio, and/or digital system to communicate with platoons IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP.
5. Company moves along the road march route.
6. Cross the SP at the designated time, using the proper formation, movement technique, interval, and speed as prescribed in the OPORD/FRAGO.
7. Maintain march speed and reaches checkpoints at times specified in the order.

8. Company commander/XO report control measures IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP (voice or digital).
9. Maintain 360-degree observation, including aerial observation.
10. Maintain proper weapons orientation to provide 360-degree security throughout the road march as prescribed in the OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
11. Maintain security through active scanning of assigned sectors.
12. XO/Tank Leader ensure that vehicles that drop out of the march column rejoin the column at the rear or continue along the route of march as directed.
13. Company conducts scheduled halts as directed in the OPORD/FRAGO.
14. Establish local security: vehicles disperse and secure terrain that provides fields of fire covering the route; employ infantry squads to clear danger areas or possible ambush or OP positions.
15. Post guides to direct traffic as necessary.
16. Perform during-operation maintenance.
17. Refuel, if scheduled.
18. Update POSNAV systems (if applicable).
19. Report company status to the task force commander by messenger, FM, or digital system or IAW SOP.
20. Company conducts unscheduled halts as necessary.
21. Clear route of march.
22. Establish local security: vehicles disperse and secure terrain that provides fields of fire covering the route; employ infantry squads to clear danger areas or possible ambush or OP positions.
23. Determine the cause of the halt.
24. Report unscheduled halt to the task force commander with as much information as possible about the reason for the halt.
25. Eliminate the cause of the halt, if possible.
26. Continue the march when directed by the task force commander or as soon as possible.
27. Company takes appropriate actions when a vehicle becomes disabled.
28. If possible, move the disabled vehicle off the road so it does not block traffic.
29. Post guides to direct traffic around the vehicle, if necessary.
30. Establish local security and radio watch IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
31. Commander/XO report status of the disabled vehicle to the UMCP.
32. Vehicle crew conducts repairs within capability and rejoins the rear of the column.
33. If the crew is unable to repair the vehicle, request maintenance support through the chain of command, assist maintenance personnel, and rejoin the rear of the column once the vehicle is repaired or is recovered by maintenance personnel.
34. Company arrives at and clears the RP.
35. Do not stop or block traffic at the RP.
36. Report arrival at and clearance of the RP to the task force commander (voice or digital).
37. Follow guides and move to the designated company location.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-6804	TANK-CMDC-6202	TANK-TAC-6806

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5827
TANK-TAC-5804		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-6840: Conduct Rear Area Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The rear area is that area extending forward from a command's rear boundary to the rear of the operational area of the command's subordinate units. This area is provided primarily for the performance of CSS functions. Rear area operations include those functions of security and sustainment required to maintain continuity of operations by the whole force. Rear area operations protect the sustainment effort as well as deny use of the rear area to the enemy. The rear area may not always be continuous with the main battle area.

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct security within its higher headquarters assigned area of operation (AO), or around the location of a high-value asset. The situation may require occupation and defense of an area from the enemy/threat, civilians on the battlefield (COB), or taking actions to destroy or detain forces already present. High-value assets may have no organic defense or security capability. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. Contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the company team upon request. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and COBs are present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company denies the enemy/threat from influencing friendly actions within the area or using it for their own purposes, and/or protects the designated high-value asset(s). The company maintains continuous surveillance to provide early warning of enemy/threat approach and reaction time to the protected asset. The company destroys or detains enemy/threat forces before they can impede/interdict operations or damage/destroy high-value asset(s). All operations adhere to the ROE and ROI without injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures to prepare the order.
2. Company commander issues order by voice, digital, and/or tactical means addressing the following: location, disposition, and mission of friendly forces in area of interest (AI) and of high-value assets in AO, if applicable; and task organization, to include a quick-reaction force (QRF) if necessary, of assigned and attached elements to best accomplish the commander's intent.
3. Address scheme of maneuver that describes as a minimum: movement to the area and/or point(s)/location(s); engagement criteria, and tasks during movement and occupation of the area and/or location(s); and sectors and orientation for platoons with primary observation posts, if necessary.
4. Develop direct fire plan to mass the company team weapons systems.
5. OPs are either mounted (maximizes optics, protection, and displacement) or dismounted (maximizes stealth and concealment).
6. OPs are categorized as short (less than 12 hours) or long (more than 12 hours) duration.
7. Criteria for commitment, movement, and actions of the QRF if applicable.
8. Priorities and use of fire support: designate priorities of fires; describe fire control measures; describe clearance of fires in the AO outside of the secured area's perimeter; priority of effort for engineers to include survivability positions for dismounted infantry and obstacle emplacement; ROE/ROI; patrol requirements; passage of lines if necessary; and coordination tasks with flank units and other forces.
9. Address priorities for combat service support (CSS) operations.
10. Address movement and positioning of commander, and locations of other company team key individuals within AO(s).
11. Specify responsibilities and procedures for integrating supporting analog units into the digital network.
12. Company team occupies AO or locations of designated high-value asset(s).
13. Deploy to area or locations not later than designated start time.
14. Establish security.
15. Deploy into a company team designated sector or establish 360-degree perimeter around a designated high-value asset.
16. Clear assigned sectors or locations of enemy/threat.
17. Occupy vehicle and two-man fighting positions oriented onto named areas of interest (NAI), avenues of approach, and/or enemy/threat infiltration routes.
18. Integrate dismounted automatic weapons with crew-served weapons to create an analog and digital fire plan.
19. Update the common operational pictures (COP) by submitting the fire plan to higher headquarters and adjacent unit(s).
20. Deploy infantry anti-armor ambushes.
21. Occupy designated battle positions (BP).
22. Search, safeguard, and evacuate enemy prisoners of war (EPW) and/or detained threat/civilians to company team collection points.
23. Prepare and mark routes to subsequent positions as time allows.
24. Human intelligence (HUMINT) personnel, if available, or designated teams process EPWs and/or detained civilians, as necessary.
25. Position fire support team (FiST) to acquire and execute targets IAW the fire support plan.
26. Direct engineers to assist with survivability operations, if available.
27. Emplace hasty protective minefields and wire obstacles to support defense and submit appropriate obstacle report using digital and/or analog reporting formats.

28. Deploy company team trains within perimeter to best facilitate casualty collection and evacuation.
29. Position the company team executive officer (XO)/command post (CP) within the perimeter to allow continuous control, reporting, and maintenance of the COP.
30. Commander positions himself to best observe and command company team actions.
31. Company team conducts area security IAW order and SOP.
32. Conduct reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) as necessary.
33. Maintain surveillance of all assigned NAIs, designated avenues of approach, and infiltration lanes.
34. If attached, assign HUMINT teams with ambushes or patrols to best obtain information.
35. Coordinate with higher headquarters for additional enemy/threat relevant information.
36. Based on current situation, reorient platoons and attached assets, as required.
37. Obtain and forward information that answers the higher CCIR and/or specific information requirements (SIR).
38. Conduct security and reconnaissance patrols both inside and outside of the perimeter as necessary.
39. Acquire, repel, and/or defeat infiltrating enemy/threat elements IAW the order and ROE.
40. Coordinate with higher headquarters for ISR assets to gain contact with enemy/threat forward of the perimeter and/or in restrictive terrain.
41. Maintain observation of the enemy/threat until handover to the designated combat force IAW the order or SOP (OPs or dismounted infantry).
42. Company team defeats enemy/threat force.
43. Follow graduated response using nonlethal methods to halt and/or disperse threatening civilians outside of perimeter, if applicable.
44. Employ deadly force when required to prevent penetration of the perimeter and/or protect high-value asset(s) if applicable.
45. Employ indirect fire IAW OPORD/FRAGO to harass/impede the threat.
46. Conduct tactical movement to maintain security or disengage based on threat actions, or commander's guidance.
47. Search captured enemy/threat members and vehicles for intelligence documents, as necessary.
48. Company team defends against attack, if necessary.
49. Initiate defense.
50. Change readiness condition (REDCON) level as directed or necessary.
51. Confirm locations and status of patrols.
52. Occupy primary fighting positions as necessary, and scans sectors of fire.
53. Withdraw OPs into the perimeter defense, as necessary.
54. Direct and/or control fires IAW the order and enemy/threat activities.
55. Reposition elements not in contact to defeat enemy/threat activities.
56. Commander and XO ensure platoons maintain contact with adjacent units on the perimeter during movement and/or displacement.
57. Engage enemy/threat IAW engagement criteria or on order.
58. Company team clears and employs indirect fires IAW the attack guidance and ROE to support the stated purpose and achieve the desired effects against the enemy/threat.
59. Company team employs direct fires, repositioning as necessary, to destroy enemy/threat forces while maintaining survivability.
60. Counterattack with QRF to eliminate penetrations of the perimeter.
61. Clear withdrawing enemy/threat from perimeter to specified limit of

advance (LOA) if necessary.
62. Company team commander designates force if not addressed in order and/or SOP.
63. Disseminate control measures to include as a minimum: point(s) of departure (PD); no fire area (NFA), no fire line (NFL) and/or restrictive fire line (RFL); boundaries and/or patrol route(s); contact and linkup points; and LOA.
64. First Sergeant directs medical evacuation procedures using analog and digital MEDEVAC reporting formats.
65. Commander designates signals to include as a minimum: near and far recognition, lifting fires, immediate cease fire, and designated force clears from perimeter to LOA.
66. Exit base camp perimeter at designated PD(s); perimeter defenses adhere to fire control measures; force clears designated area IAW order and/or SOP; EPWs are searched, safeguarded, and evacuated to collection point as soon as possible; and conduct linkup and reenter base camp IAW order and/or SOP.
67. Company commander command and controls the area security, positions himself to best observe security operations, and maintains communications (voice or digital) with subordinate units.
68. Ensure supporting analog units receive related information and reports that were digitally transmitted, if applicable.
69. Position XO or CP to maintain communications (voice or digital) with higher headquarters.
70. Update and maintain the COP.
71. Maintain communications with the protected asset informing it of changes in enemy/threat situation, changes in REDCON status, movement and/or displacement of perimeter defenses, and commitment of the QRF.
72. Track and disseminate positions and status of supporting analog units if applicable.
73. Crosstalk to coordinate with adjacent and/or other units working within the company team AI on higher command net, using digital or voice communications.
74. Report information IAW order or SOP.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-6202

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK PLATOON

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	5001	5-2
EVENT CODING	5002	5-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	5003	5-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	5004	5-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA	5005	5-4
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	5006	5-6

CHAPTER 5

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TANK PLATOON

5001. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level tank unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to companies and platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Company level are:

CMDC - Command and Control	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	EXPD - Expeditionary Operations
OTH - Other Operations	TAC - Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5004. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, and participates in operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Conducts a passage of lines as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.

4. Prepares for and conducts roadblock/checkpoint operations.

5. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.

6. Conducts a relief in place.

7. Conducts overwatch and support another unit by fire.

8. Participates and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

9. Participates in and conducts operations in urban environments.

10. Constructs and breaches obstacles.

11. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

12. Prepares for and conducts platoon level offensive, defensive, and security operations.

13. Defends against air attack.

14. Processes enemy prisoners of war.

15. Executes platoon formations.

16. Executes platoon fire and movement.

17. Conducts route reconnaissance and participates in zone reconnaissance operations.

18. Prepares for, plans, and executes platoon level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, raid, defend, displace, infiltrate, exfiltrate, screen, ambush, disengage, and consolidate.

19. Prepares and submits platoon fire plan sketches.

20. Conducts precombat inspections.

21. Conducts battle tracking and reporting.

22. Participates in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW).

5005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TANK-CMDC-5201		Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	5-6
TANK-CMDC-5202		Conduct Risk Management	5-9
TANK-CMDC-5203		Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	5-10
TANK-CMDC-5204		Conduct a Rehearsal	5-13
TANK-CMDC-5205		Conduct a Precombat Inspection	5-15
TANK-CMDC-5206		Produce a Platoon Fire Plan	5-16
TANK-CMDC-5207		Conduct Battle Tracking and Reporting	5-17
TANK-CMDC-5208		Establish an Observation Post	5-19
TANK-CBTS-5401		Emplace a Hasty Obstacle	5-21
TANK-CBTS-5402		Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack	5-23
TANK-CBTS-5403		React to a Chemical/Biological Attack	5-25
TANK-CBTS-5404		Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	5-26
TANK-CBTS-5405		React to a Nuclear Attack	5-27
TANK-CBTS-5406		Conduct Operational Decontamination	5-28
TANK-CBTS-5407		React to Enemy Indirect Fire	5-30
TANK-CBTS-5408		Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack	5-31
TANK-CBTS-5409		React to Enemy Air Attack	5-32
TANK-CBTS-5410		Cross an NBC Contaminated Area	5-34
TANK-CSS-5501		Conduct Resupply Operations	5-35
TANK-CSS-5502		Conduct Maintenance Operations	5-38
TANK-CSS-5503		Prepare and Evacuate Casualties	5-40
TANK-CSS-5504		Conduct Field Sanitation Operations	5-41
TANK-CSS-5505		Process Enemy Prisoners of War	5-42
TANK-EXPD-5601		Prepare for Deployment/Redeployment	5-43
TANK-OTH-5701		Conduct Convoy Security	5-45
TANK-OTH-5702		Respond to a Civil Disturbance	5-47
TANK-OTH-5703		Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations	5-50
TANK-TAC-5801		Occupy an Assembly Area	5-51
TANK-TAC-5802		Conduct Consolidation	5-54
TANK-TAC-5803		Conduct Reorganization	5-55
TANK-TAC-5804		Conduct Tactical Movement	5-56
TANK-TAC-5805		Conduct Actions on Contact	5-61
TANK-TAC-5806		Destroy an Inferior Force	5-63
TANK-TAC-5807		Follow and Support	5-64
TANK-TAC-5808		Conduct an Attack by Fire	5-66
TANK-TAC-5809		Conduct an Overwatch/Support by Fire	5-68
TANK-TAC-5810		Conduct a Bypass	5-69
TANK-TAC-5811		Conduct an Assault	5-71
TANK-TAC-5812		Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire	5-73
TANK-TAC-5813		Conduct Operations in an Urban Area	5-74
TANK-TAC-5814		Conduct a Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position	5-76
TANK-TAC-5815		Conduct a Hasty Occupation of a Battle Position	5-80
TANK-TAC-5816		Defend a Battle Position	5-81
TANK-TAC-5817		Establish a Perimeter Defense	5-83
TANK-TAC-5818		Conduct a Screen	5-85
TANK-TAC-5819		Conduct a Linkup	5-87
TANK-TAC-5820		Conduct a Passage of Lines	5-89

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TANK-TAC-5821		Assist in a Passage of Lines	5-91
TANK-TAC-5822		Conduct a Relief in Place	5-93
TANK-TAC-5823		Conduct a Breach	5-95
TANK-TAC-5824		Conduct a Delay	5-97
TANK-TAC-5825		Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy	5-98
TANK-TAC-5826		Conduct a Displacement	5-100
TANK-TAC-5827		Conduct a Tactical Road March	5-102

5006. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

TANK-CMDC-5201: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Troop-leading is a dynamic process that begins when the platoon receives a new mission or is notified by warning order that a new mission is imminent. Most tactical decisions are made by the company commander, who then announces them in the form of orders that include his intent and concept of the operation. Based on these orders, the platoon commander uses troop-leading procedures to organize his time during planning and preparation and to translate the operation into instructions his Marines can understand. He can then lead the platoon more effectively in the execution of the mission.

CONDITION: The tank platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO or WARNO from the company commander while preparing for tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The order specifies the time of movement and describes the enemy situation. The platoon has conducted linkup with any attachments. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves by the time specified in the order with operational weapons, equipment, and basic load of supplies as specified by the order/platoon commander. The platoon commander verifies all personnel can explain the CO/TM mission, intent, the platoon mission, and their specific tasks and duties to support the mission. The platoon commander briefs and inspects all attachments. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant receive and analyze the mission.
2. Obtain clarification on all aspects of the mission from the commander.
3. Coordinate with CO/TM, adjacent units, and CS elements (as necessary), using digital or FM communications.
4. Disseminate all pertinent information as quickly as possible, using digital or FM communications.
5. Perform initial METT-TC analysis, focusing on mission and time requirements.
6. Develop reverse planning schedule to accomplish all tasks.
7. Platoon commander uses 1/3 of available time for planning, to include issuing the OPORD; allocate the remaining 2/3 to the vehicle commanders to plan and prepare for the upcoming mission.
8. Platoon commander issues the WARNO, using digital communications or FM communications.
9. The platoon commander issues the initial WARNO as soon as possible after receiving the mission so TCs can start their planning and preparation; issue subsequent WARNOs as more information becomes available or as the situation changes.
10. Provide task organization of the platoon; give the situation; provide

operational graphics; give the time and nature of the operation; give the earliest time of movement; give the time and place the OPORD will be issued; delegate/assign preparatory tasks to the platoon sergeant and TCs.

11. Tasks include but not limited to graphics production, development of terrain model, coordination requirements, CSS requirements, PCIs, and rehearsals.
12. Platoon commander makes a tentative plan, when the commander's OPORD specifies the platoon plan.
13. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon commander throughout METT-TC analysis and development of the plan; the scope of the platoon commander's activities in this troop-leading step is directly affected by the amount of detail and instruction in the commander's OPORD; the OPORD normally will specify the platoon plan and maneuver requirements; the platoon commander is responsible for analyzing the CO/TM scheme of maneuver and adapting them to the platoon level; the platoon commander must be prepared to develop his own plan with a minimum of information and direction from the commander; this involves a detailed METT-TC analysis and development of platoon tasks and COAs.
14. Review the platoon's role in the scheme of maneuver in relation to the factors of METT-TC.
15. Identify critical METT-TC considerations that affect the platoon plan (these considerations may or may not have been addressed in the OPORD).
16. Identify deficiencies and/or issues in the plan and report them to the commander.
17. Adjust reverse planning schedule as required.
18. Platoon commander makes a tentative plan when the commander's OPORD does not provide a detailed platoon plan.
19. Perform mission analysis: the platoon commander identifies the mission and the intent of the commander two levels up, and specified, implied, and essential tasks.
20. Perform enemy analysis: the platoon commander identifies current and/or probable enemy locations, composition and capabilities, and most probable COA).
21. Perform terrain and weather analysis: the platoon commander identifies locations of all existing and reinforcing obstacles, and determines how they will affect maneuver and how the platoon can use them to its advantage; most likely locations for enemy emplaced obstacles and how the platoon can bypass or breach them; most advantageous avenues of approach for both the enemy and the platoon; key terrain and how it can be used by the platoon to support the mission; positions from which the enemy can observe and engage the platoon; positions from which the platoon can effectively observe and engage the enemy; routes and natural firing positions that offer cover and concealment; effects of current and expected weather on smoke or NBC operations; effects of recent weather on the AO; and effects of weather and light conditions on future operations.
22. Perform troop analysis: the platoon commander identifies the platoon's supply status; present condition of vehicles, equipment, and personnel; present state of training and morale; amount of sleep personnel have had, or will be able to get prior to the mission; and attachments the platoon has and/or needs to accomplish the mission.
23. Performs the time analysis: the platoon commander identifies movement times and other milestones specified in the order, including likely times the enemy may conduct operations; effects of the weather and NBC operations on movement times; priorities of work the platoon can

accomplish in the time available prior to the start of the mission; and a revised timeline that will enable the platoon to accomplish all necessary tasks; the platoon commander uses backward planning to refine tentative timeline.

24. Incorporate products developed in the IPB process into the METT-TC analysis.
25. Develop one or more COAs that address all specified, implied, and essential tasks, using results of the METT-TC analysis and IPB process.
26. Identify reconnaissance requirements.
27. Identify other coordination requirements.
28. Evaluate advantages and disadvantages of each COA and make a tentative selection of the most favorable COA.
29. Adjust reverse planning schedule as required to incorporate the selected COA.
30. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant initiate movement.
31. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles prior to movement.
32. Direct platoon to assume the appropriate REDCON level.
33. Dispatch quartering party, as necessary.
34. Direct platoon to begin priorities of work.
35. Designate a leader to perform a time-distance check of the route to the SP, as necessary.
36. Position the platoon in an advantageous location to prepare for the upcoming mission.
37. Platoon performs reconnaissance.
38. Perform ground or map reconnaissance; confirm the initial march route to the LD, SP, or initial positions, and check some of the area beyond the LD; adjust the tentative plan based on the reconnaissance.
39. Platoon commander completes the plan.
40. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon commander through out the process of finalizing and updating the plan.
41. Select the best available COA based on METT-TC analysis and reconnaissance.
42. Complete the details of how the platoon will accomplish each task.
43. Annotate digital communications overlays to further define his area of responsibility and to aid in command and control of the platoon, as necessary.
44. Integrate the fire support plan into platoon operations to support the scheme of maneuver.
45. Develop a communication plan.
46. Integrate CS and CSS elements into the plan.
47. Continue to update the plan and verify plan complies with commander's original OPORD/FRAGO based on information from the commander and subsequent reconnaissance.
48. Platoon commander issues the order.
49. Use the five-paragraph OPORD format.
50. Direct platoon sergeant to verify that vehicle commanders are in receipt of digital communications overlays (if applicable), have posted conventional overlays on their maps as backups, and that all overlays match the platoon commander's overlay.
51. Verify vehicle commanders understand the enemy and friendly situations as well as all tasks for which they are responsible.
52. Use confirmation briefing to verify TCs understand the order.
53. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/TCs supervise and refine platoon preparations.

54. Brief crews on the platoon mission based on the platoon commander's OPORD.
55. Perform back-briefs and rehearsals.
56. Direct and supervise resupply operations.
57. Supervise precombat checks.
58. Perform precombat inspections (PCI): the platoon sergeant identifies key inspection areas/items (based on METT-TC) and develop PCI plan; platoon commander or platoon sergeant assigns area of responsibilities for the PCI and determines time line for PCI requirements; the platoon commander/sergeant or designated representatives inspect required areas/items to verify they are present, functional, clean, and/or complete; the platoon commander tests individual knowledge of the mission.
59. Continue to supervise and refine throughout execution of the operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CMDC-5202: Conduct Risk Management

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The primary objective of risk management is to help units protect their combat power through accident prevention, enabling them to win the battle quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. The tank platoon commander, his NCOs, and all other Marines must know how to use risk management, coupled with fratricide reduction measures, to ensure that the mission is executed in the safest possible environment within mission constraints.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. Fratricide prevention is addressed. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries,

situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards.
3. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, and or ROE; identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks; integrate safety into every phase of planning process; identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards; conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
4. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
5. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions; identify unwarranted risks; compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives; calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records; describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental) and the following categories.
6. Compute overall risk factor.
7. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.
8. Include failures in direct fire control plan, land navigation failures, failures in combat identification, inadequate control measures, failures in reporting and communications, weapons errors, and battlefield hazards.
9. Platoon commander and leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
10. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk; develop procedures that reduce risk; provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation; prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.
11. Platoon personnel implement risk control procedures.
12. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations; correct unsafe acts on the spot; report all risk and safety violations to commander and unit safety officer.
13. Platoon commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.
14. Enforce standards and controls; evaluate effectiveness of controls and adjust and or update as necessary; comply with orders, SOP, commander's guidance, ROE.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CMDC-5203: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The maintenance of operations security (OPSEC) is a process of identifying critical information and subsequently analyzing friendly actions attendant to military operations and other activities to: identify those actions that are observed by adversary intelligence systems; determine indicators hostile intelligence systems might obtain that are interpreted or pieced together to derive critical information in time to be useful to adversaries; and select and execute measures that eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level the vulnerabilities of friendly actions to adversary exploitation. All measures taken to maintain security and achieve tactical surprise. It includes countersurveillance, physical security, signal security, and information security. It also involves the identification and elimination or control of indicators that are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. OPSEC is a component of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) and observation posts (OPs) are operational and information is being passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs OPSEC measures in accordance with the standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon identifies and eliminates or controls indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The platoon practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.
2. Identify indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.
3. Develop a deception plan when planning missions.
4. Platoon prepares for OPSEC; brief subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success; conduct extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
5. Unit executes the OPSEC plan.
6. Enforce measures that protects friendly information: prohibit fraternization with local civilians; make sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle; conduct inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials; ensure all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas.
7. Man and perform surveillance from observation posts (OPs).
8. Conduct counter reconnaissance patrols if possible.

9. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.
10. Conduct stand-to procedures.
11. Establish local security.
12. Establish specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
13. Use camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions: cover all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick; use terrain and vegetation for concealment.
14. Avoid footpaths, trails, and roads where possible.
15. Erase tracks leading into positions.
16. Control movement.
17. Use the proper movement formation and movement technique: move as fast as the situation permits and along covered and concealed routes.
18. Enforce radio discipline.
19. Enforce the use of proper radio procedures.
20. Ensure subordinate elements: change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and SOP; use varied transmission schedules and lengths; use established formats to expedite transmissions; use encoded messages or use secure voice; use brevity codes when possible; use the lowest power settings possible; avoid transmission patterns; use and maintain radio silence as directed.
21. Ensure subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected: continue to operate, disconnect the antenna, switch to the highest power, relocate the radio, use directional antennas, turn the squelch off, use messenger and wire whenever possible, and use the radio in the quiet/message mode.
22. Enforce litter discipline: collect and back-haul trash during logistics runs during stationary periods and carry trash until it can be disposed of securely.
23. Enforce light discipline: ensure subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map; ensure all flashlights have filters; ensure subordinate elements remove or tape personal items that may reflect light; ensure subordinate elements prohibit use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke and or fire may be observed by the enemy; ensure subordinate elements use only passive night observation equipment if possible.
24. Enforce noise discipline: identify shortcomings in noise discipline during inspections; ensure subordinate elements tape down or remove items that make noise; ensure subordinate elements use normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible; ensure subordinate elements prohibit talking except as required to conduct or plan operations; ensure subordinate elements use hand and arm signals to the fullest extent possible during daylight hours or with night vision devices.
25. Enforce information assurance.
26. Unit leaders assess OPSEC measures.
27. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
28. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
29. Direct adjustments as necessary.

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-CMDC-1233 1812-CMDC-2232

REFERENCES:

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TANK-CMDC-5204: Conduct a Rehearsal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A rehearsal is a practice session conducted to prepare units for an upcoming operation or event. The platoon commander should never underestimate the value of a rehearsal. They are his most valuable tools in preparing the platoon for the upcoming operation. Effective rehearsals require crewmen to perform required tasks, ideally under conditions that are as close as possible to those expected for the actual operation. Participants maneuver their actual vehicles or use vehicle models or simulations while interactively verbalizing their elements' actions. The primary types of rehearsals available to the tank platoon are the following: confirmation brief, backbrief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal, and battle drill or SOP. The techniques of rehearsal listed in descending order of preparation time and resources are the following: full dress rehearsal, reduced force rehearsal, terrain model rehearsal, sketch map rehearsal, map rehearsal, and radio/digital rehearsal.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is preparing for a mission. Mission planning and coordination are accomplished. The unit operations order (OPORD) is developed and briefed. The platoon commander directs the platoon to conduct a rehearsal. All vehicle commanders and leaders are present. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon plans, prepares, and executes the rehearsal in accordance with the appropriate reference, standard operating procedures (SOP), and commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key and or critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate leaders and attachments to execute their mission. The platoon commander develops a rehearsal script. The platoon commander identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed. The platoon commander coordinates and allocates time for the key events requiring rehearsal. The platoon commander briefs rehearsal participants and directs adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The platoon commander reinforces the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander gains and or maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.
3. Select rehearsal criteria.
4. Select one of the following rehearsal techniques: full dress, reduced force, terrain model, sketch map, map, or radio/digital.
5. Select one of the following rehearsal types: confirmation brief, backbrief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal, and battle drill or standing operating procedures (SOP) rehearsal.
6. Select place of rehearsal, attendees, and enemy course of action (COA) to be portrayed during the rehearsal.
7. Develop a rehearsal script that includes the following: an agenda, a response sequence, an actions checklist, and a sequence of events.
8. Perform the following tasks: ensure rehearsal time and location are published in the unit operations order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO); complete any rehearsals with the staff; determine rehearsal products.
9. Platoon commander prepares for rehearsal: identify and prioritize key events to be rehearsed, allocate time, ensure completeness of task organization, ensure readiness of personnel and material, and ensure unit level of preparation for the assigned mission.
10. Platoon sergeant prepares for rehearsal: coordinate and allocate time for the key events requiring rehearsal, establish rehearsal time limits according to the platoon commander's guidance and factors of METT-TC, verify rehearsal site preparation, and determine the method for controlling the rehearsal and ensuring its logical flow.
11. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal: complete their planning process, identify issues derived from the unit order, and conduct personal preparation similar to that of the unit commander.
12. Platoon/leaders move to rehearsal site.
13. Platoon/leaders executes rehearsal.
14. Platoon commander briefs participants: orient participants to the training aid and the terrain, define the standard, visualize and synchronize the concept of operations, focus on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy, and address any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur.
15. Direct the rehearsal: conduct a formal roll call and ensure that necessary equipment is on hand; validate task organization for the mission; rehearse synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units; synchronize the timing and contribution of each operating system; use the OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix to accomplish disciplined leader movements, enforce brevity, ensure completeness; keep the rehearsal within established time constraints; ensure selected events receive appropriate attention; ensure absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.
16. Assist the commander in the fight forward: portray his actions during the fight; ensure compliance with the plan.
17. Base execution actions on the enemy COA the commander has selected during the planning process: portray best assessment of the enemy COA; communicate the enemy commander's presumed concept of operation, desired effects, and intended end state.
18. Use an established format: articulate their unit's actions and responsibilities effectively; record changes on their copies of the

graphics or OPORD.
19. Unit leaders assess the rehearsal.
20. Monitor continuously the situation and progress.
21. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
22. Rehearse again, if the standard is not met and time is available.
23. Recorder accomplishes the following, after the rehearsal is complete.
24. Restate any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander.
25. Estimate the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.
26. Unit provides staff updates.
27. Issue OPORD.
28. Platoon commander assembles participants to conduct an after action review (AAR).

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-CMDC-1217 1812-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

TANK-CMDC-5205: Conduct a Precombat Inspection

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Precombat inspections (PCI) allow the platoon commander to check the platoon's operational readiness. The key goal is to ensure that Marines and vehicles are fully prepared to execute the upcoming mission. Inspections also contribute to improved morale. It is essential that the entire platoon chain of command know how to conduct precombat checks (PCC) and PCIs in accordance with applicable SOPs.

CONDITION: The platoon receives a warning order for an upcoming mission. The warning order specifies the earliest time for movement and the location of the operations order. The platoon has sufficient time for thorough preparation. Enemy contact is not expected.

STANDARD: The platoon's equipment and personnel are checked for serviceabilty and accountability before specified movement time, and deficiencies are corrected.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon implements detailed procedures to prepare for a comprehensive inspection.
2. Perform before-operation maintenance checks, and report or repair deficiencies, if necessary.

3. Perform prepare-to-fire checks for all weapons, and report or repair deficiencies, if necessary.
4. Weapons are boresighted, and all sights are referred.
5. Machine guns are test-fired, if possible.
6. Perform communications checks of voice and digital systems.
7. Ensure that crews understand the plan and are in the correct uniform and mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level.
8. Upload vehicles in accordance with the platoon SOP.
9. The standardization of load plans allows the platoon commander and platoon sergeant to quickly check accountability of equipment.
10. Ensure standard locations of equipment in each vehicle; this can be an important advantage if the platoon commander is forced to switch to a different vehicle during an operation.
11. Review the supply status of rations, water, fuel, oil, all types of ammunition, pyrotechnics, first aid kits, and batteries (for such items as flashlights, night-vision devices, and NBC alarms).
12. Direct resupply operations as necessary.
13. Ensure vehicles are correctly camouflaged so they match the area of operations.
14. The platoon commander and/or platoon sergeant should observe each crew during preparation for combat.
15. Platoon commander conducts the inspection once the TCs report that their crews and vehicles are prepared.

RELATED EVENTS:
1812-CSS-2502 1812-VOPS-2326 1802-VOPS-2303
1802-CSS-1502

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

TANK-CMDC-5206: Produce a Platoon Fire Plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The process of develop a fire plan sketch begins with the platoon commander designating the primary and supplementary positions for his tanks and each TC selecting his alternate fighting position. After the positions have been designated and reconnoitered (time permitting), the platoon commander will designate the sector limits of fire for each tank and the TRPs within the sector. The platoon commander must give the TC the number designators for the TRPs. As the positions are prepared, the TC and gunner will prepare the sketch cards for each position. When the cards are completed (normally within 20 minutes), one copy will be sent to the platoon leader and the other copy will be kept with the tank. When the tank is moved into position, and before engineer assets are released from the position, the crew will make sure the target areas and obstacles within the sector can be

fired upon, and determine if assigned TRPs can be engaged. A TRP that could be engaged before the position was prepared may be masked when the tank is dug in. The platoon commander must be informed of any inability to engage assigned TRPs and may direct a change in position. If time permits, the TC will make physical contact with his wing or flanking elements to determine overlapping fire within the sectors and the position of friendly OPs.

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting defensive operations in a platoon battle position or assembly area. The platoon commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO from the company commander, issue the platoon OPORD or FRAGO, and points out to each tank commander the engagement areas, TRPs, overlapping sectors of fire, alternate and supplementary firing positions, and indirect fire targets. The platoon coordinates with adjacent platoons and finalizes the defensive plan. Tank commanders occupy hull-down positions in their primary fighting positions. The threat is expected to conduct an attack in the platoon's sector at any time after the NLT-time specified in the OPORD.

STANDARD: The platoon produces complete sector sketches for each tank's primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions. The platoon produces a platoon fire plan containing all essential information for each occupied and prepared battle position within one hour of establishing the BP.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Each tank crew produces complete sector sketches for each primary, alternate, and supplementary firing position within each occupied and prepared battle position.
2. Each tank's bumper number, ammunition, and firing position are identified in the upper right corner of the sketch.
3. The tank's sector of fire is bounded by double lines indicating its left and right limits.
4. Each target is indicated by word description, a standard map symbol, a military graphic symbol, a military abbreviation, or combination of the aforementioned.
5. A range to each target is indicated.
6. Range bands are indicated.
7. A legend is included.
8. The platoon commander or another individual he designates collects copies of each tank's sector sketch, checks them for completeness and accuracy, and develops a platoon fire plan for each occupied or prepared battle position.
9. The platoon fire plan includes: the platoon's sector of fire, individual tank positions, OP locations, TRPs and engagement areas, obstacle locations, indirect fire targets, final protective fires, and range lines.
10. A legend/matrix is included listing targets in the platoon's sector and the tanks that can fire on each target, explains direct fire and indirect fire graphics in the sketch, and explains obstacles and barriers present in the platoon's sector.
11. The platoon commander checks the completed fire plan and distributes it.
12. Check the plan for accuracy and completeness.
13. Distribute one copy to each TC and the company commander.
14. The platoon repeats the process for other battle positions.

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CMDC-2224	1812-CMDC-2226	1802-CMDC-1228
1802-CMDC-1227	1802-CMDC-1229	1812-CMDC-2225

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

TANK-CMDC-5207: Conduct Battle Tracking and Reporting

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: The company staff, receives, analyzes, posts, and distributes information on the friendly and enemy situations. The company commander updates the platoon commander on the current situation and provides higher, adjacent and subordinate units with a common operational picture of the battlefield.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The platoon command post (CP) is operational and can send and receive reports and overlays. Analog or digital systems are operational and are passing information in accordance with standard operating instructions (SOP). The platoon commander gives his guidance, specifies his intent, and issues higher commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs). The decision support template (DST) and synchronization matrix are developed and disseminated. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon tracks the tactical situation and operations in accordance with the SOP, order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon commander receives, analyzes, posts, and distributes information and makes recommendations. The platoon commander updates the platoon on the current situation as required and provides higher, subordinate, and adjacent units with a common operational picture of the battlefield. The platoon commander maintains current situation map (SITMAP) and journals. The platoon commander monitors and tracks information coming in and going out of the unit. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon commander gains and maintains situational understanding using OPORD, FRAGO, WARNO, available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The platoon commander tracks at a minimum the following:
3. Subordinate unit locations and movement.
4. Adjacent and supporting unit locations and movement.
5. Enemy size, location, movement, and activity.
6. Friendly minefields (defense).

7. Friendly and enemy obstacles.
8. NBC contamination in the AO.
9. Fire support coordination measures.
10. Track friendly and enemy contacts.
11. Supply and personnel status.
12. Critical equipment status.
13. Status of current order execution.
14. Report to higher headquarters.
15. Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIRs).
16. Current OPORD/FRAGOs issued by the higher headquarters.

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-CMDC-2206	1812-CMDC-2228	1802-CMDC-2207
1802-CMDC-2208	1812-CMDC-2227	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

TANK-CMDC-5208: Establish an Observation Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A position from which military observations are made, fires are directed and adjusted, and which possesses appropriate communications.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) receives an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to establish observation post (OPs), or the platoon commander, as a result of his METT-TC analysis, has determined that the platoon must establish OPs to provide early warning of enemy activity. The OPs can be occupied by dismounted personnel or by a tank section or vehicle (mounted OP). Enemy contact is possible or expected during emplacement of the OPs. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon commander positions the OPs to observe likely enemy avenues of approach. Platoon OP personnel provide early warning to the platoon commander in the event of enemy activity. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander selects OP sites.
2. Determine how many OPs are needed based on avenues of approach/NAIs the

platoon must cover.
3. Determine whether OPs will be mounted or dismounted.
4. Select sites that provide unobstructed observation of the desired area.
5. Select sites that provide cover and concealment.
6. Verify covered and concealed routes into and out of the sites.
7. Verify positions do not skyline the observers.
8. Dismounted OPs should be emplaced within effective machine gun range of the unit and a minimum of two personnel should man a dismounted OP.
9. Review the CO/TM's mission.
10. Orient OPs by relating mission graphics to the terrain (TRPs, trigger point, break point).
11. Specify primary/secondary avenues of approach, means of communications (visual, wire, radio), covered/concealed routes to and from the OPs, and displacement criteria for the OPs.
12. Platoon OP personnel assemble required equipment for dismounted OPs.
13. Verify all required personnel equipment (kevlar helmet, weapons, MOPP gear) is on hand/serviceable.
14. Verify proper communications equipment (visual, wire, radio, digital) is on hand/serviceable.
15. Verify digital communications settings and defaults with graphics are correct or map with graphics is on hand.
16. Verify binoculars are on hand/serviceable.
17. Verify night vision goggles are on hand/serviceable.
18. Platoon OP personnel occupy dismounted site.
19. Move to OPs using covered and concealed routes.
20. Verify positions provide adequate cover and concealment until they can be improved.
21. Perform hasty occupation of the OPs.
22. Report to platoon commander when set.
23. Run hot loop (wire) to tank section.
24. Platoon tank section occupies mounted OP site.
25. Dismount and move forward to verify routes to the sites provide adequate cover and concealment (platoon commander and TCs/loaders of OP tanks).
26. Verify OP sites afford cover and concealment and unobstructed observation of mounted avenues of approach in platoon area.
27. Brief TCs of OP tanks on avenues of approach, dead space, and routes into and out of OPs.
28. Direct loaders to establish local security of OP sites and return to tanks with platoon commander.
29. Brief gunners/drivers and move tanks forward into OP positions (TCs of OP tanks).
30. Develop range cards/sector sketches in hard copy or in digital communications and send copy to platoon commander using digital communications.
31. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant inspect dismounted/mounted OPs.
32. Verify OPs are camouflaged and afford adequate cover and concealment (including overhead cover for dismounted OPs), OP personnel are alert, and required equipment is on hand/serviceable.
33. Check OPs means of communication with tank section.
34. Check range cards/sector sketches for accuracy.
35. Platoon OP personnel observe the sector.
36. Maintain constant surveillance of the sector and/or NAI.
37. Maintain local security as necessary.
38. Send updated SITREPs to the platoon using digital communications or FM communications.

39. Identify enemy forces entering sector along designated avenues of approach.
40. Report enemy activity to platoon commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
41. Platoon OP personnel improve positions as time permits.
42. Develop a complete sector sketch or map with mission graphics, using digital communications or in hard copy.
43. Dig in to enhance cover and concealment.
44. Camouflage the site.
45. Establish wire communications.

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CMDC-2243 1802-CMDC-1241 1802-CMDC-1242
1812-CMDC-2242

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CBTS-5401: Emplace a Hasty Obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: In general, obstacles are used to disrupt, turn, fix, and block the enemy based on the factors of METT-TC. If the company commander does not specify an intent for obstacles, the platoon commander should analyze the situation and plan hasty or engineer emplaced obstacles to meet these purposes: to block the final assault of an enemy force to the front of the platoon, to block the seams between vehicles or between adjacent platoons, to disrupt enemy forces that are assaulting on the flanks of the platoon, to shape the engagement area by forcing enemy elements to turn, slow down, stop, or flank themselves at known ranges in the engagement area.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is stationary and conducting defensive or assembly area operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The company commander has directed construction of a hasty obstacle across or along a probable enemy avenue of approach, or the platoon commander has identified the need for (and the commander has authorized) construction of such an obstacle. Sufficient time, manpower, and materials are available. Engineer support is not available. Enemy contact is not expected until after the "defend NLT" time specified in the order. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon constructs a hasty obstacle that can be observed and covered by fire at all times and ties it in with existing, man-made, or natural obstacles. The platoon emplaces the obstacle by the specified

"defend NLT" time that is effective against the type of enemy expected along the avenue it blocks. The platoon emplaces the obstacle to canalize, delay, restrict, or divert movement as planned. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander plans the emplacement of a hasty obstacle.
2. Verify/determine time, equipment, and materials needed by the platoon (including the resources on hand).
3. Confirm/perform reconnaissance to determine possible obstacle types and locations.
4. Determine work sequence.
5. Determine required coordination.
6. Request additional resources as needed/available.
7. Platoon commander organizes the platoon for construction of the obstacle.
8. Designate and position the overwatch/security element.
9. Designate personnel to construct the obstacle.
10. Platoon commander reports initiation of obstacle construction to the commander.
11. Use secure means (FM/wire/digital).
12. Prepare an initial hard copy obstacle overlay, or a digital one, using digital communications.
13. Transmit the initial overlay file to the company commander.
14. Platoon emplaces a hasty protective minefield.
15. Determine how many mines are available, how large of an area the minefield must cover, and how many rows are needed.
16. Identify landmark and reference point for use in emplacing the minefield.
17. Determine azimuth and distance from landmark to reference point.
18. Move to the reference point and mark it so that it can be easily identified.
19. Determine location of each row of the minefield and selects row marker locations.
20. Determine the location of individual mines.
21. Collect and store safety pins, clips and shipping plugs pending recovery of the mines.
22. Pull in the security element.
23. Send completion report to the company commander using secure means (FM/wire/digital).
24. Platoon retrieves a hasty protective minefield.
25. Use Marines who emplaced the minefield to locate and recover mines, if possible.
26. Recover safety pins, clips, and shipping plugs for use in the retrieval.
27. Establish near-side and far-side security at the minefield.
28. The retrieval team starts with the row nearest the friendly positions, and disarms and stores mines for future use.
29. Send a report of change to the company commander.
30. Platoon emplaces a wire obstacle.
31. Tank platoons may be required to emplace wire obstacles as part of a security mission or as a roadblock during SASO.
32. Assemble materials and equipment needed to emplace the obstacle.
33. A 300-meter section of wire requires 160 long pickets, 4 short pickets, 4 reels of barbed wire, 56 coils of razor wire, and picket pounders.

34. Emplace the wire obstacle.
35. The emplacement team positions and spaces long pickets 5 paces apart, short pickets 2 paces from the end of each row of long pickets, using them to anchor the wire, and spaces rows of long pickets 3 feet apart; wire is installed by laying 2 coils of razor wire side-by-side on the ground, with a 3rd coil placed on top; barbed wire is uses to reinforce the rows of pickets and/or to secure the razor wire in place.
36. Send completion report to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
37. Finalize hard copy obstacle overlay and sends copy to company commander using digital communications graphic control measures.
38. Platoon emplaces a roadblock obstacle.
39. Assemble materials and equipment needed to emplace the obstacle (one large roadblock section requires 33 long pickets, 22 short pickets, 275 meters of barbed wire, and 11 coils of razor wire).
40. Emplace the roadblock.
41. The emplacement team positions and spaces three long pickets per coil 5 paces apart and uses short pickets to anchor horizontal wire; wire is installed by laying eleven rows of wire (per section) parallel to the ground 10 meters apart; barbed wire is placed horizontally on top of each row.
42. Send report of completion to company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
43. Finalize hard copy obstacle overlay and sends copy to the company commander using digital communications graphic control measures.
44. Platoon emplaces an abatis.
45. Construct the obstacle.
46. The emplacement team constructs the obstacle at least 75 meters in depth, using trees at least 24 inches in diameter; trees are felled 3 to 4 meters apart at a 45-degree angle toward the direction of enemy approach.
47. Emplace wire or mines to reinforce the abatis.
48. Send report of completion to company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
49. Finalize hard copy obstacle and sends copy to the company commander using digital communications graphic control measures.
50. Platoon commander inspects the obstacle to verify it will achieve his or the commander's intent.
51. Verify obstacle meets specifications for type, construction quality, and effect on enemy maneuver.
52. Direct adjustments in obstacle construction and/or in plans for overwatch by the platoon.
53. Platoon continuously overwatches the obstacle.
54. Establish covered/concealed hull-down positions.
55. Scan assigned sectors.
56. Prevent the enemy from booby-trapping or breaching the obstacle.
57. Platoon commander organizes the platoon for retrieval, if directed to remove the obstacle.
58. Designate and position overwatch/security element.
59. Designate personnel to remove the obstacle.
60. Platoon retrieves the obstacle in the reverse order it was installed.
61. Adhere to guidance from the platoon or company commander.
62. Work from near to far side relative to platoon position.
63. Maintain local security during retrieval.
64. Platoon commander submits a report of change to the company commander.
65. Use secure means (wire/digital).

66. Destroy hard copy of obstacle overlay.

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1404 1812-CBTS-2417

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations

TANK-CBTS-5402: Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect itself against chemical or biological attack based on the enemy's capabilities.

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a chemical attack in its area of operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit constructs or reinforces positions, briefs or inspects personnel, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon commander orders Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask, and gloves (MOPP 4).
2. Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
3. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expandable or readily decontaminated.
4. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
5. Vehicle crews prepare their vehicles.
6. Store water, rations, and unused equipment inside vehicles.
7. The platoon commander ensures that designated personnel conduct periodic monitoring with a chemical-agent detector.
8. conduct continuous monitoring with a chemical alarm.

9. Report results to company commander.
10. Platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for a chemical/biological attack
11. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
12. Platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
13. The platoon is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for 6 hours.

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CBTS-2413	1812-CBTS-2402	1802-CBTS-1403
1802-CBTS-2412	1802-CBTS-2405	1812-CBTS-2416

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
11. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
15. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
16. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
17. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-5403: React to a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect it and respond to a chemical or biological attack based on the enemies capabilities.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Chemical/Biological weapons are being used in the area of operations. The platoon must respond immediately to a chemical or biological attack, when the unit's automatic chemical agent alarm system(s) sounds, detector paper changes color, and/or a Marine displays symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Platoon members react to the chemical or biological attack within time standards and give the appropriate alarm. All unmasked Marines put on their protective masks and other MOPP gear. They assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes and put the vehicle overpressurization system into operation. The

platoon initiates use of the M256/M256A1 chemical agent detector kits to determine the type of agent. As soon as mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) permits, the platoon conducts unmasking procedures. The platoon suffers no casualties as a result of heat injury or improper preparation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack.
2. Crewmen recognize and react to a chemical/biological hazard.
3. Put on protective mask within 15 seconds.
4. Alert the remainder of the platoon and company.
5. Within 8 minutes, assume MOPP 4, then button up and/or activate the tank overpressurization system.
6. Administer self-aid and buddy-aid to crewmen with symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning.
7. Ensure individual crewmen decontaminate their skin.
8. Conduct operator's spraydown and decontamination of equipment as necessary.
9. Initiate continuous monitoring with M256/M256A1 detection kits, and submit NBC-1 and follow-up reports as needed.
10. Continue the mission.
11. Monitor for chemical/biological agents; as the situation warrants, initiate actions to reduce MOPP levels and discontinue agent monitoring.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-5402	TANK-TAC-5805

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2813	1802-CBTS-1402	1812-CBTS-2415
1812-CBTS-2414	1812-CBTS-2412	1812-CBTS-2411
1812-CBTS-2410	1812-CBTS-2409	1812-CBTS-2408
1812-CBTS-1402	1812-CBTS-1401	1802-CBTS-2418
1802-CBTS-2417	1802-CBTS-2416	1802-CBTS-2415
1802-CBTS-2414	1802-CBTS-2413	1802-CBTS-2412
1802-CBTS-2411	1802-TAC-1814	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
8. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
10. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
11. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
15. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
16. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
17. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-5404: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes to protect itself and harden equipment against a nuclear attack and to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred, and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud or the platoon is alerted to a nuclear attack. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes immediate actions to minimize the initial effects of a nuclear detonation within its area of operations and then continues its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack.
2. The platoon commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
3. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
4. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicles.
5. Make sure the vehicles are dug in.
6. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
7. Wet down sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
8. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas (one radio is left on in the offense).
9. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicle.
10. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles.
11. Marines position themselves as low as possible within the fighting positions.
12. Marines wear helmets with chin strap secured and brace for the blast.
13. The platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for nuclear attack.
14. Vehicles are ready, equipment is secured, and Marines are prepared.

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-2405 1812-CBTS-2402

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents

10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
13. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
14. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
15. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-5405: React to a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and mushroom cloud from a nuclear explosion. The platoon has taken actions to prepare for the explosion, but has sustained some casualties from the blast. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the company commander is reached and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Take immediate protective actions.
2. If mounted, button up and close the breech and ballistic doors
3. If time permits, position the vehicle behind a protective terrain feature, and turn off the master power until the effects of the blast have passed.
4. Dismounted crewmen drop to the ground and cover exposed skin until blast effects have passed.
5. Implement SOPs and accomplish related actions.
6. Reestablish communications.
7. Prepare and forward an NBC-1 report.
8. Implement continuous monitoring.
9. Submit a SITREP to the company commander.
10. Reorganize the platoon.
11. Evacuate casualties and fatalities.
12. Redistribute personnel as needed.
13. Conduct essential maintenance.
14. Continue the mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-CBTS-5404

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2813	1802-TAC-1814	1812-CBTS-2407
1812-CBTS-2406	1812-CBTS-2405	1812-CBTS-2404
1802-CBTS-2404	1812-CBTS-2401	1802-CBTS-2410

1802-CBTS-2409 1802-CBTS-2408 1802-CBTS-2407
1802-CBTS-2406 1812-CBTS-2403

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
13. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
14. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-5406: Conduct Operational Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A decontamination operation consists of two techniques, the mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange and the vehicle/equipment wash-down. Decontamination is carried out by an individual and/or a unit, restricted to specific parts of operationally essential equipment, material and/or working areas, in order to minimize contact and transfer hazards and to sustain operations. This may include decontamination of the individual beyond the scope of immediate decontamination, as well as decontamination of mission-essential spares and limited terrain decontamination.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and is contaminated. The platoon is directed to conduct an operational decontamination. Decontaminants and new overgarments are available and a decontamination site is selected. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon completes operational decontamination within 1 hour from start of decontamination. The platoon decontaminates without sustaining additional casualties to personnel or damage to equipment and without spreading contamination. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon occupies the decontamination site.
2. Form a coil upwind of the actual decontamination location.
3. Locate in a forward position, so that vehicles can move to and from the decontamination site in a minimum amount of time.
4. Establish all around security.
5. Determine order in which vehicles are to be decontaminated.

6. Platoon performs MOPP gear exchange.
7. Decontaminate gear.
8. Remove old overgarments and put on new overgarments.
9. Secure gear.
10. Move to the decontamination location.
11. Close all vehicle hatches.
12. Move through decontamination site and wash vehicles and equipment for two to three minutes with hot soapy water.
13. Return to the coil/defensive position immediately after decontamination.
14. Decontaminate individuals to reading level consistent with surrounding area.
15. Monitor decontaminated personnel with AN/PDR 27 for level of contamination decontaminate if required.
16. Report decontamination status to company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CBTS-5403

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CBTS-2415	1802-CBTS-1402	1812-CBTS-2413
1812-CBTS-2412	1812-CBTS-2411	1812-CBTS-2410
1812-CBTS-2409	1812-CBTS-2408	1812-CBTS-2407
1812-CBTS-2406	1812-CBTS-2405	1812-CBTS-2404
1812-CBTS-2403	1812-CBTS-2402	1812-CBTS-2401
1812-CBTS-2416	1812-CBTS-1402	1812-CBTS-1401
1802-CBTS-2418	1802-CBTS-2417	1802-CBTS-2416
1802-CBTS-2415	1802-CBTS-2414	1802-CBTS-2413
1802-CBTS-2412	1802-CBTS-2411	1802-CBTS-2410
1802-CBTS-2409	1802-CBTS-2408	1802-CBTS-2407
1802-CBTS-2406	1802-CBTS-2405	1802-CBTS-2404
1802-CBTS-1403	1812-CBTS-2414	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
12. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
13. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
14. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
15. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
16. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
17. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
18. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CBTS-5407: React to Enemy Indirect Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures and steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of enemy indirect fires on combat power. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to an indirect fire attack. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon reacts to an indirect fire attack in accordance with standing operating procedures and appropriate field manual. If moving, the unit continues movement until at least 300 meters from the impact area. If stationary, the unit takes cover within 10 seconds or move out of the impact area within 3 minutes of the impact of the first round. The unit takes no more than 10 percent casualties. The unit reports attack to higher headquarters.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The unit reacts to indirect fire while moving.
3. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("incoming" or appropriate code word).
4. Alert is pasted to all elements over the radio.
5. All personnel close hatches and doors of vehicles with in 5 seconds.
6. All elements continue direction of movement and movement, unless redirected by unit commander.
7. Platoon commander reports attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
8. The unit reacts to indirect fire while stationary.
9. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("incoming" or appropriate code word).
10. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
11. All Marines are under cover within 10 seconds.
12. If directed Marines mount vehicles within 3 minutes and move out to a rally point.
13. All vehicles move to a designated rally point at distance and direction given by the unit commander.
14. Platoon commander reports attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
15. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
16. Casualties are less than 10 percent.
17. Marines or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within 5 minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
18. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the situation dictates.

19. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
20. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
21. Unit continues operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
1812-TAC-2814 1802-TAC-1814 1812-TAC-2813
1802-TAC-1815

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

TANK-CBTS-5408: Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The passive defensive measures or steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of an enemy air attack.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Hostile aircraft are observed or the platoon receives a report that hostile aircraft are operating in the area. The platoon is directed to take passive air defense measures. Weapons control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon uses attack avoidance and damage-limiting measures (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, and concealment) to avoid detection and/or engagement by hostile aircraft. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon uses attack avoidance measures and available resources (camouflage, cover, and concealment) to hide from hostile aircraft and limit vulnerability while stationary or moving.
2. Erect/install camouflage nets.
3. Use vegetation to camouflage vehicles.
4. Cover vehicle tracks.
5. Avoid silhouetting or positioning vehicles against contrasting terrain.
6. Cover shiny objects with mud, tape, burlap, sacks, or other materials and close ballistic shield doors.
7. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures if occupying a tactical position.
8. Disperse in an assembly area.

9. Occupy OPs (day and night) to provide early warning of approaching aircraft.
10. Establish and rehearse air attack alarms and procedures.
11. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and report to CO/TM commander using digital communications or FM communications.
12. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures while moving.
13. Maintain prescribed march speed and interval during road marches.
14. Stagger vehicles as necessary to avoid creating a linear target.
15. Use terrain driving techniques to prevent detection.
16. Use air guards to provide all around observation, maintaining coverage until movement is completed.
17. Use appropriate air attack alarms, drills, and procedures, as necessary.
18. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and report to CO/TM commander using FM communications.

RELATED EVENTS:
1812-TAC-2813 1802-CMDC-1204 1812-CMDC-1201
1802-TAC-1814

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

TANK-CBTS-5409: React to Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: When the platoon observes high-performance aircraft, helicopters, or unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) that could influence its mission, it initially takes passive air defense measures then active measures to engage enemy aircraft in order to destroy it or reduce the effectiveness of its attack.

CONDITION: The tank platoon receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs) in the area. Platoon personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The unit is in a tactical position. Weapons control status is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The tank platoon destroys the attacking aerial platforms or forces them away from friendly positions. Time required to perform this task in MOPP 4 or blackout conditions is increased.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. While stationary, tank platoon (or element identifying hostile aerial platforms) takes combined arms air defense measures against non-attacking

aerial platforms.
2. Alert the platoon with a contact report.
3. Deploy or take the appropriate actions.
4. If the platoon is not in the direct path of an attacking aircraft, the platoon commander orders tanks to seek cover and concealment and halt with at least a 100-meter interval between vehicles; the platoon also may be ordered to continue moving as part of the company.
5. Prepare to engage.
6. TCs and loaders get ready to engage the aircraft with machine-gun and/or main-gun fire on order of the platoon leader.
7. If the platoon commander determines that the platoon is in the direct path of an attacking aircraft, he initiates the active react to air attack drill.
8. The primary intent is to force aircraft to take self-defense measures that alter their attack profile and reduce their effectiveness.
9. The platoon initiates fire.
10. The platoon commander may use a burst of tracers to designate an aim point for platoon machine gun antiaircraft fires.
11. Volume is the key to effectiveness of these fires tanks throw up a "wall of steel" through which aircraft must fly.
12. The main gun is effective against hovering attack helicopters.
13. The platoon commander may also direct some vehicles to engage high-performance aircraft with MPAT main gun rounds.
14. Tanks create a nonlinear target by moving as fast as possible at a 45-degree angle away from the path of flight and toward attacking aircraft.
15. The platoon maintains an interval of at least 100 meters between tanks, forcing aircraft to make several passes to engage the entire platoon.
16. Tanks move quickly to covered and concealed positions and freeze their movement for at least 60 seconds after the last flight of aircraft has passed.
17. The platoon commander sends a SPOTREP to update the company commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-CBTS-5408

RELATED EVENTS:
1812-TAC-2813 1802-CMDC-1204 1812-CMDC-1201
1802-TAC-1814

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

TANK-CBTS-5410: Cross an NBC Contaminated Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The protective measures a unit takes to move through an area where the presence of chemical or biological agents or radioactive material is identified.

CONDITION: While conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM), the platoon has digital connectivity, if equipped, with the company and is directed by the commander to cross an NBC contaminated area. The type of agent is not known (chemical/biological), or the operational exposure guidance (OEG) is specified by the commander. The commander designates routes, waypoints, and entrance/exit points for the movement. The platoon commander determines and/or develops other tactical information as a result of his METT-TC analysis during troop-leading procedures. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes appropriate measures in preparation for movement. It enters, moves through, and exits the contaminated area along the specified route and at the specified times. The platoon monitors and reports dosage rates and radiac equipment readings as directed in the OEG. It reports the presence of any type of NBC contamination to the commander. No friendly units suffer personnel or equipment loss due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. If directed to cross a radiologically contaminated area, platoon prepares for movement.
2. Take actions to provide extra shielding (such as using wet sandbags on the vehicle floor).
3. Stow externally carried equipment inside vehicles or cover it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.
4. Check radiac equipment and ensure it is zeroed.
5. Assume MOPP level 4.
6. Attach M9 paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of chemical contamination.
7. Close and secure vehicle hatches if METT-TC permits.
8. Activate NBC overpressurization systems if in the closed hatch configuration.
9. Platoon commander disseminates commander's designated route to TCs via overlay/strip map or using digital means, as applicable.
10. Platoon crosses the contaminated area.
11. Conduct movement along the most direct route or designated by the commander.
12. Avoid stirring up dust or brushing against tree branches, if possible.
13. Increase interval and lateral dispersion between vehicles, if terrain permits.
14. If applicable, monitor radiac equipment for radiation exposure and report OEG information to the commander IAW SOP.
15. If applicable, monitor chemical alarms and M9 paper.
16. Platoon commander reports exit of the contaminated area to the commander.
17. Platoon exits the contaminated area.
18. Submit NBC-4 report (FM or digital) containing radiation and/or chemical/biological data.
19. If NBC monitoring readings are negative, request permission from commander to initiate unmasking procedures or initiate unmasking IAW OPOR/FRAGO/SOP.
20. Zero radiac equipment, if applicable.
21. Conduct coordination for operational decontamination with commander/XO/Tank Leader

22. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant direct immediate decontamination of equipment and personnel, if required.
23. Continue mission as directed by the commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CBTS-5403	TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CBTS-5405

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2812	1812-TAC-2804	1802-TAC-1813
1802-CBTS-2407	1812-CBTS-2415	1812-CBTS-2404
1802-CBTS-2414	1802-TAC-1805	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
11. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
15. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
16. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
17. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

TANK-CSS-5501: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Resupply is the act of replenishing stocks of all classes of supply in order to maintain the combat power of the unit. The HQ section is responsible for and organized to process supply requests and to receive, issue, and temporarily store supplies. Distribution priorities for items in short supply are determined by the platoon commander based on recommendations by the platoon sergeant and operational requirements of the unit.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is directed to receive supplies or determines that resupply operations are necessary while conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO and has a unit SOP detailing all required communications report formats. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon successfully completes resupply operations to replenish its basic load of critical supplies and maintains security at a

level consistent with METT-TC factors. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon sergeant monitors supply and reports status as required by SOP.
2. Status reports cover Class I (rations), Class II (supplies and equipment), Class III (POL), class IV (construction materials), Class V (ammunition), Class VI (personal demand items), Class VII (major end items), Class VIII (medical supplies focusing on critical times such as first aid dressings, refills for first aid kits, and combat lifesaver bags), and Class IX (repair parts).
3. The platoon should cross-level supplies before submitting resupply reports/requests.
4. Compile status reports from all TCs and send consolidated status reports to the company commander and/or Tank Leader.
5. Platoon reports personnel status, requests replacements using proper formats, and processes reassignments/replacements as required.
6. Report personnel strength and losses to the platoon commander/platoon sergeant.
7. Compile vehicle reports and send consolidated reports to company commander and/or Tank Leader per SOP.
8. Reassign remaining personnel to fill key positions and man critical weapons.
9. Assign replacements using same criteria as above.
10. Platoon reports vehicle, equipment, fuel, and ammunition status and requests resupply or other support as necessary.
11. Report vehicle and equipment status.
12. Report maintenance, recovery and evacuation support requirements.
13. Compile vehicle reports/requests and submit consolidated reports/requests to company commander and/or Tank Leader.
14. Platoon sergeant coordinates LOGPAC support/activities with Tank Leader.
15. Verify platoon's personnel, vehicle, equipment fuel and ammunition status.
16. Submit specific resupply requests.
17. Coordinate for linkup at designated contact point if tailgate resupply is appropriate.
18. Coordinate LOGPAC location and other resupply details if service station resupply is appropriate.
19. Platoon performs tailgate resupply.
20. Select accessible routes affording adequate cover and concealment into and out of vehicle positions.
21. Establish and maintain local security to provide early warning of enemy activity, if necessary.
22. Meet LOGPAC at designated linkup point and lead it to the first vehicle to be resupplied.
23. Replenish basic load critical supplies as available.
24. Based on supply availability and the unit's logistical capability, the LOGPAC should carry all requested resupply items and maintenance support assets.
25. Maintain control over the LOGPAC and guides it to the next location when resupply of each vehicle is completed.
26. Monitor progress of resupply operations.
27. Lead the LOGPAC to the linkup point or another point as designated by the Tank Leader when all vehicles have completed resupply.

28. Coordinate with the Tank Leader for additional requirements.
29. Keep company commander informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.
30. The tailgate method is the slowest resupply technique; however, it is useful during defensive and security missions because stealth and security can be more easily maintained (depending on METT-TC factors) than with the service station method.
31. Platoon performs service station resupply.
32. Move to the resupply location.
33. Establish local security for LOGPAC activities.
34. Determine which section will be resupplied first and when each section will move if platoon does not move together.
35. Determine order of movement to the resupply location if platoon moves together.
36. Rotate to different supply points as directed to replenish basic load of supplies (as available).
37. Coordinate with the Tank Leader for additional requirements.
38. Keep company commander informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Platoon performs refuel on the move (ROM).
40. Move to the ROM site.
41. Refuel IAW OPORD/FRAGO (OPORD/FRAGO should designate location, time and amount of fuel per vehicle).
42. Maintain local security and dispersion.
43. Keep the company commander informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CSS-2525	1802-CSS-1511	1812-CSS-2520
1812-CSS-2519	1812-CSS-2518	1812-CSS-2517
1812-CSS-2516	1812-CSS-2515	1812-CSS-2513
1812-CSS-2512	1802-CSS-2511	1802-CSS-2508
1802-CSS-2507	1802-CSS-2506	1802-CSS-1508
1802-CSS-2505	1802-CSS-2504	1802-CSS-1513
1802-CSS-1509	1812-CSS-2521	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
7. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
11. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

TANK-CSS-5502: Conduct Maintenance Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Proper maintenance keeps equipment and materiel in serviceable condition. It includes PMCS, as well as the functions of inspecting, testing, servicing, repairing, requisitioning, recovering, and evacuating equipment and materiel whenever necessary. The platoon commander is primarily concerned with supervising operator level maintenance. He must ensure that scheduled services are performed as part of organizational maintenance and that support is provided for DS maintenance elements when equipment is evacuated.

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and has sustained sufficient vehicle damage to require on-site repair in order to continue the mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts maintenance and supply operations in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and the company commander's guidance. The company commander establishes the company trains, controlled by the Tank Leader, consisting of maintenance, supply, communications, and medical support personnel. The platoon sergeant coordinates with the Tank Leader for maintenance support. The company trains provide limited, immediate organic support and coordinate all maintenance and supply requirements accordingly. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant update the logistics estimate based on maintenance/recovery operations, identifies and analyzes current and future problems, and advises the company commander/tank leader.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon reports equipment deficiencies.
2. Vehicle commanders update platoon sergeant on equipment status.
3. Platoon sergeant reports status to platoon commander.
4. Platoon sergeant reports status to company Tank Leader.
5. The platoon conducts operator level maintenance.
6. Perform operator maintenance and emergency repairs on assigned vehicles, weapons, and equipment, whenever the tactical situation permits.
7. Effect emergency repairs as far forward as possible.
8. Platoon sergeant informs organizational maintenance personnel of deficiencies as soon as possible.
9. Platoon sergeant coordinates for technical or higher echelon maintenance support.
10. The platoon recovers a tank.
11. Restore vehicle to state of mobility.
12. Ensure no further damage is caused to vehicle as a result of the recovery process.
13. Provide security by dismounted crew personnel and remaining platoon vehicles.
14. Tow vehicle to maintenance collection point or designated location.
15. Take all safety precautions to prevent injury to crews as a result of the recovery process.
16. Platoon destroys vehicles and equipment, with commander's permission, that it cannot recover or update.
17. Upon receiving permission to destroy, crew off-loads operational ammunition, weapons, personnel gear, classified materials, and critical

components to operable vehicles.
18. Change frequencies on radios, as needed.
19. Destroy the vehicle or equipment IAW the appropriate TM.
20. The platoon performs scheduled maintenance.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-5501

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CSS-2520	1802-CSS-1501	1812-CSS-2518
1812-CSS-2517	1812-CSS-2516	1812-CSS-2510
1812-CSS-2509	1812-CSS-2508	1812-CSS-2507
1812-CSS-2506	1812-CSS-2505	1812-CSS-2504
1812-CSS-2503	1812-CSS-2501	1802-CSS-2508
1802-CSS-2507	1802-CSS-2506	1802-CSS-2505
1802-CSS-2504	1802-CSS-2503	1802-CSS-2502
1802-CSS-1509	1802-CSS-1508	1802-CSS-1507
1802-CSS-1506	1802-CSS-1505	1802-CSS-1504
1802-CSS-1503	1812-CSS-2519	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
10. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
11. MCWP 4-24 Commander's Guide to Maintenance
12. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
13. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
14. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams
15. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank

---

TANK-CSS-5503: Prepare and Evacuate Casualties

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: It is the tank commander's responsibility to make sure that wounded in action (WIA) crewmen receive first aid and that the platoon commander or platoon sergeant is notified of all casualties. The use of crewmen who are trained as combat lifesavers is absolutely critical. As a minimum, one crew member of each tank crew should be a trained combat lifesaver.

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting continuous operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and sustains casualties during combat. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize casualties and evacuates casualties to the higher headquarters casualty collection point.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon identifies casualties requiring evacuation.
2. Crewmen administer combat lifesaving techniques.
3. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant report casualties to the company commander/1stSgt.
4. The platoon assists in the evacuation of casualties.
5. Prepare casualties for evacuation by air or ground transportation to aid station or clearing station.
6. Request helicopter or ground evacuation of casualties.
7. Select and mark the best available covered and concealed landing zone (air evac only).
8. Extract casualties from vehicles or dangerous situation without causing further injury.
9. Move casualties by best available means to LZ or ground pickup point and continue treatment.
10. Assist the flight or ambulance crew with casualty loading.
11. Retain classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays) previously controlled by casualty.
12. Maintain security of landing site or pickup point including coordinating any suppressive fires required.
13. Platoon evacuates contaminated casualties.
14. Decontamination is initiated prior to loading.
15. If decontamination is impossible, the hazards en route are minimized by covering casualties.
16. Platoon evacuates EPW casualties by the same standard as U.S. casualties.
17. Security of EPWs is continuously maintained.

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-VOPS-1325 1812-VOPS-1321

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
5. FM 4-02.7 Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-02G First Aid
8. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
9. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
10. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties

11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

TANK-CSS-5504: Conduct Field Sanitation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Leaders must emphasize high standards of health and hygiene. Marines must shave daily so their protective mask will seal; bathing and changing clothes regularly are essential in preventing disease. Each crewman should carry shaving equipment, soap, a towel, and a change of clothing in a waterproof bag inside his pack.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and may be either stationary or mobile. The platoon forms a field sanitation team from within its ranks and has adequate supplies on hand to perform its mission. Enemy contact is not expected.

STANDARD: The platoon and field sanitation team take all steps necessary to ensure sanitation standards are established, maintained, and enforced. No platoon members are lost to illness or disease as a direct result of failure to maintain adequate field sanitation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. During combat operations, the platoon ensures potable water is available and utilized.
2. Platoon personnel consume only potable water as designated by the field sanitation team.
3. The platoon maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW unit SOP.
4. As necessary, platoon personnel purify non-potable water.
5. When stationary, the platoon establishes heads and hand washing facilities.
6. Heads and urinals are constructed at least 35 meters from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas.
7. Hand washing facilities are provided at heads.
8. A soakage pit is provided under the hand washing facility to prevent accumulation of standing water.
9. During mobile operations, the platoon uses cat holes when time is not available to construct heads.
10. When consuming prepared rations, the platoon takes adequate measures to avoid food spoilage, ensures cleanliness of utensils, and controls pests.
11. Food is protected from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests, and is consumed promptly after delivery.
12. Garbage and waste are buried, incinerated, or evacuated from the platoon area in sealed bags or containers promptly.
13. Feeding locations are selected to minimize insect and rodent hazards.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 4-11.1D Field Hygiene and Sanitation
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-CSS-5505: Process Enemy Prisoners of War

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: If enemy prisoners want to surrender, it is the tank platoon's responsibility to take them into custody and control them until they can be evacuated. EPWs are excellent sources of combat intelligence; however, this information will be of tactical value only if the prisoners are processed and evacuated to the rear quickly. The unit SOP or company/team OPORD should designate specific EPW handling procedures, such as collection points, responsibilities for safeguarding prisoners, and procedures for movement of prisoners.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. During the conduct of operations enemy soldiers are captured. The platoon is responsible for processing EPWs in accordance with (IAW) the company commander's intent, OPORD, and unit standard operating procedure (SOP). The platoon is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in accordance with the "five-S's and T", at a minimum, EPWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according their rights under international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon commander establishes an EPW holding area.
2. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant reports the capture of EPWs to the company XO or Tank Leader.
3. Report the number of personnel captured, date and time of capture, place of capture by grid coordinates, and circumstances of capture.
4. The platoon searches each prisoner.
5. Remove all weapons and documents and process captured materials and equipment.
6. Examine ID cards, protective masks, and other protective equipment, and return them to the EPWs.
7. Give each prisoner from whom personal property is taken a written receipt for the property.
8. The platoon segregates EPWs within the holding area.
9. Segregate EPWs by nationality, sex, rank (field grade officers, company grade officers, NCOs, enlisted, civilians), deserters, and ideology.

10. Turn wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
11. The platoon silences prisoners.
12. Prevent EPW leaders from giving orders.
13. Prevent EPWs from planning escape.
14. Record everything EPWs say, if possible.
15. Do not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
16. The platoon speeds the evacuation of prisoners to the company or battalion EPW collection point or holding area, as given in the OPORD or SOP.
17. The platoon rapidly moves the EPWs to the rear.
18. The platoon commander requests special instructions for EPW disposition from the company commander.
19. The platoon safeguards the EPWs.
20. Remove EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.
21. Prevent abuse to the EPWs.
22. Do not allow civilians to give the EPWs food or water.
23. Treat EPWs humanely and IAW the law of war.
24. The platoon continues its mission.
25. Before evacuating the EPW, attach a tag to him listing all pertinent information and procedures.

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-CMDC-1208

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
7. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-EXPD-5601: Prepare for Deployment/Redeployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Deployment is the physical relocation of forces and material to the designated area of operations. Redeployment is the physical relocation of forces and material deployed in one area to another area for the purposes of further employment.

CONDITION: The platoon receives an OPORD to move to a railhead or aerial port of embarkation (APOE) for deployment/redeployment. Routes, scheduled halts, and logistics and administrative support are available IAW the OPORD. Higher headquarters has an advance party at the railhead or APOE, and the advance party conducts a route reconnaissance. The convoy, serial, and march commanders are designated as appropriate. Security for the move is

coordinated. Vehicles are prepared and marshaled for movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon completes preparatory tasks and reports that it is ready to cross the start point (SP) no later than (NLT) the time prescribed in OPORD.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct troop-leading procedures.
2. Ensure all personnel are present with necessary equipment.
3. Platoon prepares vehicles and equipment for movement to railhead or APOE.
4. Perform before-operations preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles and equipment.
5. Correct maintenance discrepancies within the operator's capabilities IAW applicable technical manual (TM).
6. Report all maintenance deficiencies beyond operator's capability to immediate supervisor.
7. Correct loading deficiencies IAW loading plan and/or unit movement officer's (UMO) instructions, if necessary.
8. Mark vehicles for movement to railhead or APOE IAW OPORD and/or UMO's instructions.
9. Place military shipping labels on vehicles and equipment IAW OPORD and/or UMO's instructions.
10. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant conduct premovement inspections.
11. Inspect personnel and their equipment for compliance with OPORD and commander's instructions.
12. Inspect organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability.
13. Inspect vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security.
14. Forward personnel and equipment status to XO/Tank Leader.
15. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant briefs commander on preparations for movement.
16. Platoon prepares to move by convoy to railhead or APOE.
17. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant provide vehicle position listing (with location of all vehicles) to the trail party leader (hard copy or digital).
18. TCs perform FM and digital checks (as applicable) to ensure communications with Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant.
19. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant employ and enforce safety procedures.
20. Platoon prepares to cross SP.
21. Stage vehicles for convoy IAW convoy commander's instructions.
22. Notify convoy commander that vehicles are ready to cross SP for convoy to railhead or APOE.

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-EXPD-2613	1812-EXPD-2612	1812-EXPD-2611
1812-EXPD-2610	1812-EXPD-2609	1812-EXPD-2608
1802-EXPD-2609	1802-EXPD-2615	1802-EXPD-2614
1802-EXPD-2613	1802-EXPD-2612	1802-EXPD-2611
1802-EXPD-2610	1812-EXPD-2607	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

TANK-OTH-5701: Conduct Convoy Security

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This mission requires the tank platoon to provide the convoy with security and close-in protection from direct fire while on the move. The platoon is well suited for this role because of its vehicles' mobility, firepower, and armor protection against mines and direct and indirect fires. Depending on a variety of factors such as the size of the convoy, escort assets available, METT-TC factors, the platoon may perform convoy escort either independently or as part of a larger unit's convoy security mission.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is performing tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO and supporting overlays to conduct a convoy escort operation as the lead element, flank element, trail element, or integrated within the body of the convoy. The platoon completes coordination in person or via digital communications with the convoy commander. The enemy situation is vague, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon positions its vehicles as directed and provides effective protection to the front, flanks, and/or rear of the convoy. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander performs troop-leading procedures.
2. Verify command relationships with escorted unit and security force commander, as applicable.
3. Exchange frequencies and call signs of the escorted element.
4. Verify composition (number and type of vehicles) of the convoy and the order of march.
5. Determine primary and alternate route of march.
6. Verify all TCs have a strip map/graphic control measure of the primary and alternate route.
7. Verify location of the platoon in relation to the convoy (lead, flank, or trail element, or integrated in the convoy body).
8. Verify fire coordination measures.
9. Verify actions at halts.
10. Verify actions on contact.
11. As necessary, platoon commander directs rehearsals covering contact situations such as obstacles, ambushes, artillery, snipers, roadblocks, and civilian elements.
12. Verify actions for vehicle breakdown.
13. Establish time and location of linkup with the escorted unit (if appropriate).

14. Verify visual signals (far and near recognition signals for linkup, if appropriate).
15. Verify ROE for area of operations.
16. Platoon conducts linkup with the convoy.
17. Use far and near recognition signals, as appropriate.
18. Occupy covered and concealed position at the linkup site.
19. Coordinate to verify platoon tasks, convoy actions, and other details of escort mission.
20. Brief convoy leaders as necessary on platoon capabilities and maneuver/fire plans.
21. Platoon escorts the convoy.
22. Use most advantageous formation and movement technique, and covered and concealed routes.
23. Perform tactical movement to platoon's position in the convoy and begins movement as part of the convoy.
24. Maintain proper weapons orientation to provide security.
25. Platoon performs actions at halts.
26. Move off route, at least 100 meters beyond the convoy element.
27. Execute a herringbone formation and establishes all around security.
28. Report "SET" to the security force commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
29. Verify PLGR is correctly oriented and tracking properly.
30. Receive further guidance from security force commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
31. Platoon executes actions on contact in response to an enemy ambush.
32. Initiate actions on contact quickly and decisively as directed by the OPORD.
33. Execute action drill (platoon orients toward the enemy and places a high volume of fire on the enemy force) and sends a contact report to the convoy commander).
34. Send SPOTREP to convoy commander.
35. Use any additional reaction forces to engage the enemy.
36. Request indirect fires to suppress/destroy the enemy (lifting and shifting the fires when the platoon assaults) and smoke between the enemy and the convoy to obscure the enemy's line of sight.
37. Maintain contact to support a hasty attack by reaction force.
38. Destroy an inferior force.
39. Platoon performs actions on contact at obstacles and/or restrictions.
40. Send a contact report to convoy commander using FM communications.
41. Reconnoiter the obstacle, look for a bypass, and clear surrounding areas.
42. The platoon assumes responsibility for overwatching the obstacle; however, it is still responsible for maintaining security for the convoy.
43. Send follow-up SPOTREP to the convoy commander and recommend a COA.
44. The platoon commander recommends bypass, breach obstacle with assets on-hand, or breach obstacles using reinforcing assets; if engineers are attached to the platoon, the platoon commander's recommendations to the commander must take into account the engineers' reconnaissance and recommendations; the platoon also provides security and assistance to the engineers, as necessary.
45. Recommend, as necessary, use of indirect fires and alerts the reaction force through the convoy commander.
46. Execute the COA directed by the convoy commander.
47. Platoon completes convoy escort activities.
48. Move through the RP.

49. Move to the designated position as directed by the security force commander or the OPORD/FRAGO.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-TAC-5805

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2819 1802-TAC-1820

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
9. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-5702: Respond to a Civil Disturbance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The processes of integrating various tactics, techniques, and procedures necessary to quell riots and restore public order.

CONDITION: While operating as part of a company/team (CO/TM), the platoon has digital connectivity, if equipped, with the company or and is augmented with dismounted infantry. The platoon is directed to respond to announced or anticipated demonstrations at a military installation or in support of civil authorities as part of stability operations, support operations, or tactical operations. Civilians and representatives of governmental organizations, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and international media may be present. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon disperses or contains the crowd or blocks the crowd from penetrating an area. The platoon acts in accordance with the rules of engagement (ROE)/rules of interaction (ROI), the guidelines for the use of force, and other special orders. Law violators are apprehended/detained as the situation dictates. The platoon commander reports to higher headquarters. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant conduct troop-leading procedures.
2. Receive guidance from higher headquarters, including the following: mission and threat; ROE and use of force; ROI and civilians on the battlefield; legal guidance, such as the Posse Comitatus Act, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), or coalition considerations; special personnel and equipment requirements, such as VIP presence and critical facilities; nonlethal methods and capabilities; and ROI/graduated response rehearsals.

3. Develop communications plan with higher headquarters and within platoon for use of FM, digital, wire, pyrotechnics, and/or flags as required.
4. Review SOP concerning authorization for riot control agents and pepper spray.
5. Conduct thorough leader's reconnaissance of area.
6. If applicable, check digital common operational picture (COP) for locations of friendly and enemy forces.
7. Develop and refine contingency plans.
8. Identify mission personnel requirements and unit task organization (UTO) and establish liaison.
9. Issue warning order to platoon (FM or digital).
10. Platoon Sergeant requests equipment to support the operation to include: kevlar with face shield, body armor and/or flak vest, shield, work gloves, baton, protective mask, shin guards, elbow pads, weapons, bayonets, CS, CR, pepper spray, smoke grenades, load bearing equipment (LBE), water, and nonlethal weapons and munitions.
11. Request the following restraint materials and equipment: hand/leg irons, flex cuffs, duct tape, and mouth restraints.
12. Request the following support requirements: medical assistance, supplies in Classes I-IX, and medical evacuation for Marines and rioters/demonstrators.
13. Request other equipment, as necessary: breaching ramps, scaling ladders, portable radios, bullhorns, digital video cameras (to identify individuals in the crowd), transport vehicles (for transportation to detention cells or areas), night vision devices, and portable lighting.
14. Platoon Commander makes tentative plan.
15. Coordinate with other military units as necessary, including the following: reaction team and hostage negotiations for special threat situations, psychological operations (PSYOP) and civil affairs, public affairs (regarding media and press relations), explosive ordinance detachment (EOD), staff judge advocate (SJA) (regarding legal issues), unit S-2, S-3, and S-4, and installation personnel.
16. Coordinate with local/host nation (HN) law enforcement personnel.
17. Coordinate for conduct of the operation concerning the following: transportation from civil disturbance locations to detention facility, medical assistance and support, field booking teams with local and HN law enforcement and legal teams, public affairs support, interpreters for local languages as needed, and deployment of human intelligence (HUMINT) specialist(s) to gather situational information.
18. Direct platoon to move.
19. Platoon Commander completes the plan: select a COA, conduct map rehearsal, finalize the plan, and prepare the platoon operation order (OPORD).
20. Platoon Commander issues platoon OPORD.
21. Provide guidance on ROE/ROI and use of force, including the following: use only the minimum force required to control a situation (such as verbal persuasion, unarmed self-defense, chemical irritants, batons, or military working dogs); available nonlethal methods and capabilities authorized for use in the operation; under what conditions deadly force is authorized.
22. Provide information on what to expect when dealing with crowds, including the following: dynamics, crowd behavior, composition/demographics, and crowd-control tactics.
23. Send SITREP to higher headquarters (FM or digital).
24. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant conducts inspections and rehearsals.
25. Inspect appropriate Marine equipment: civil disturbance gear, protective

masks, water and rations, appropriate weapons for possible situations, and combat lifesaver bags.
26. Conduct rehearsals to meet and counter threat.
27. Include employment and use of nonlethal munitions.
28. Use sample scenarios to cover situations for which ROE and use of force guidelines are applied.
29. Use M36 riot dispenser.
30. Use voice commands and hand-and-arm signals.
31. Use line, wedge, and echelon formations.
32. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant deploys personnel and equipment on mission, threat, and commander's guidance.
33. Use appropriate crowd control formations as situation dictates: line formation (to confront skirmishers), wedge formation (to break up skirmishers), echelon formation (to move skirmishers in a desired direction), and circle or diamond formation (to move through a crowd or move a VIP).
34. Employ special teams as required: selected marksmen, personnel armed with shotguns, personnel armed with nonlethal weapons, riot control dispenser operators, snatch teams, and aid teams.
35. Oversee emplacement of barriers.
36. Coordinate with public affairs, PSYOP, and interpreters during the operation.
37. Employ HUMINT specialist(s) to verify suspected situations.
38. Send SITREP to higher headquarters (FM or digital).
39. Platoon executes crowd-control measures.
40. Maintain discipline among all deployed elements.
41. Platoon Commander directs use of marksmen, shotguns, and riot control agents or pepper spray in strict adherence to ROE/ROI.
42. React to special threats such as bombings, snipers, and hostage situations.
43. Platoon Commander requests support from higher headquarters as required.
44. Platoon Commander updates higher headquarters with SITREPs (FM or digital), as necessary.
45. Platoon disperses, contains, or blocks the crowd IAW OPORD.
46. Use only the minimum level of force necessary to control the situation.
47. Maintain discipline at all times.
48. Apprehend/detain law violators as a situation dictates.
49. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant directs consolidation activities.
50. Platoon Commander/Platoon Sergeant reports to higher headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CSS-5505

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Operations
7. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
10. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
11. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance

12. MCWP 3-33.3 Marine Corps Public Affairs
13. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-OTH-5703: Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Establishment of checkpoints is a high-frequency task for subordinate elements involved in stability operations. Roadblocks/checkpoints can be either deliberate or hasty.

CONDITION: While conducting stability operations or support operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM), the platoon has digital connectivity, if equipped, with the company and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to support a roadblock/checkpoint in conjunction with infantry elements. The platoon has translator support, and the local police may assist in the operation of the roadblock/checkpoint. Required construction materials, tools, and transportation assets are available. The platoon has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE), status of forces agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, governmental agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and local and international media may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The roadblock/checkpoint is supported at the established location and time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon is prepared to use incremental force proportionate to the threat to support the roadblock/checkpoint. The platoon complies with the ROE/ROI, higher headquarters order, and any other applicable special orders.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct troop-leading procedures.
2. Review and brief entire platoon on current situation, including: political/social climate among the local populace, behavior toward civilians, and applicable ROE/ROI.
3. Determine location, duration, and purpose of the roadblock/checkpoint.
4. Request civil police to conduct female searches with MP oversight, if possible.
5. Request additional assets required to establish and operate the roadblock/checkpoint.
6. Organize the platoon to support the roadblock/checkpoint, to include: vehicle search area, female search area, obstacle barriers, overwatch areas, reaction force, and detention areas.
7. Establish communication signals to alert the platoon to civil disturbance or other hostile actions.
8. Establish communications priorities for nondigital units.
9. Select most advantageous tactical site to support the roadblock/checkpoint.
10. Position roadblock/checkpoint support elements in depth.
11. Position support elements to channel traffic into the checkpoint (if applicable).
12. Cover roadblock with observation and direct fire weapons.
13. Platoon conducts rehearsals IAW SOP.

14. Employ specific limitations on use of lethal force to stop a charging vehicle or fleeing pedestrian.
15. Perform vehicle and personnel searches using approved methods.
16. Conduct questioning and/or appropriate search.
17. Conduct apprehension and detention of civilian personnel.
18. Platoon maintains security for the roadblock/checkpoint.
19. Position an element in concealed location at an appropriate distance from the roadblock/checkpoint to prevent escape of any vehicle or person attempting to turn back upon sighting the roadblock/checkpoint.
20. Establish rest area for platoon personnel near the search area so platoon personnel can be assembled quickly as a reaction force.
21. Develop measures for protecting platoon personnel from possible explosives.
22. Ensure fields of fire of the close-in security element are not masked.
23. Use sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambushes.
24. Establish OPs as required to maintain observation of areas that could influence the roadblock/checkpoint.
25. Ensure personnel do not deploy beyond the range of the platoon's quick reaction force (QRF) capability.
26. Platoon reacts to hostile elements and/or actions IAW ROE/ROI/SOFA/SOP requirements.
27. Fire warning shots to deter personnel or vehicles attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
28. Control fleeing civilians using minimum force as required.
29. Use necessary force to disarm evading military or paramilitary forces.
30. Attack to disable all vehicles attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
31. Destroy vehicles that return or initiate fires.
32. Destroy vehicles that persist in attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
33. Administer first aid to casualties.
34. Send SPOTREPs and SITREPs to higher headquarters as needed (FM or digital).

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-OTH-1701 1812-OTH-2702

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
7. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5801: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Abbreviated "AA" on overlays, this is a location at which the platoon gathers (usually as part of the company) to conduct maintenance and resupply activities and to make other preparations for future operations. The platoon must be able to defend from the assembly area.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team and receives an OPORD to occupy an assembly area. The OPORD specifies required assembly area activities, REDCON levels, and priorities of work. Time is available to complete assembly area procedures. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon enters the assembly area without stopping or blocking the route of march, establishes local security, and maintains appropriate REDCON levels. The platoon performs all specified assembly area procedures and executes priorities of work as outlined in the OPORD. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays (if applicable) and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant designate quartering party.
2. Assign personnel (such as one or two individual crewmen or full crew with vehicle) to quartering party IAW unit SOP and/or tactical requirements.
3. Brief personnel on platoon or company/team requirements for quartering party.
4. Platoon quartering party prepares the assembly area (AA).
5. Assist in reconnaissance of the proposed AA.
6. Assist in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes.
7. Assist in making obstacles and mines.
8. Select platoon position and mark tentative vehicle positions IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
9. Maintain surveillance and provide security of the area.
10. Platoon clears the release point (RP) and moves into the AA.
11. Follow directions from the guide stationed at the RP (if guides are used).
12. Move off the route of march and clears the RP without stopping or blocking traffic.
13. Orient weapon systems to cover sectors of responsibility.
14. Platoon performs initial occupation of the AA.
15. Follow directions from guides and move into marked vehicle positions (using ground guides as necessary).
16. Orient weapons systems to cover sectors of responsibility.
17. Following proper cool-down procedures, shut down engines simultaneously.
18. Platoon commander initiates AA activities.
19. Review organization of the AA with quartering party personnel.
20. Designate TRPs, trigger lines and disengagement criteria and plan.
21. Direct TCs to prepare range cards and/or sector sketches.
22. Keep the commander informed of the status of the operation, using digital communications or FM communications.
23. The platoon commander reports platoon arrival at AA and completion of initial occupation.
24. As necessary, the platoon sergeant compiles SITREPs sent by vehicle commanders, using digital or FM communications and transmits the consolidated report to the platoon commander.
25. Platoon commander establishes security procedures, REDCON level, and

priorities of work.
26. Establish local security as specified in the OPORD.
27. The platoon commander designates OP locations, as necessary; establishes sectors of fire that provide overlapping fields of fire; reduces dead space to minimum by employing hasty obstacles and indirect fires; verifies radio listening silence is maintained; directs platoon to camouflage vehicles and equipment; directs establishment of wire communications IAW unit SOP; and enforces noise, light and litter discipline.
28. Designate REDCON level.
29. REDCON-1 (full alert): A period of maximum preparedness; all crewmen are alert and prepared for action immediately; vehicles are loaded and secured, and weapons are manned; digital link-up is completed; vehicles are ready to move immediately, with engines running and OPs pulled in.
30. REDCON-2 (full alert): Equipment is stowed except for wire and telephone gear; digital link-up is complete; vehicles and weapons are manned; OPs and M8 alarms are still deployed; engines are off, all vehicles are ready to move within 15 minutes of notification.
31. REDCON-3 (reduced alert): Fifty percent of each crew stands down for feeding, rest, and maintenance; remaining personnel man vehicles, weapons, and OPs; monitor radios; and continue with assembly area procedures; digital link-up is maintained; vehicles are ready to move within 30 minutes of notification.
32. REDCON-4 (minimum alert): Seventy-five percent of each crew stands down for feeding, rest, and maintenance; remaining personnel man vehicles, weapons, and OPs; monitor radios; and continue with assembly area procedures; digital link-up (connectivity and monitoring) is maintained; vehicles are ready to move within 1 hour of notification.
33. Establish priorities of work.
34. Platoon commander prepares platoon fire plan.
35. Coordinate with adjacent units, using digital communications or face to face.
36. Develop fire plan using individual tank range cards/sector sketches.
37. Verify that the fire plan affords overlapping sectors of observation and fire (including supporting fires) within the platoon and with adjacent units.
38. Platoon performs priorities of work, including OPSEC, maintenance, resupply and rest activities.
39. Establish/maintain OPSEC IAW platoon commander's guidance, OPORD/FRAGO, and/or unit SOP.
40. Perform necessary vehicle and equipment maintenance.
41. The platoon reports equipment deficiencies to the platoon sergeant.
42. Within capabilities, the platoon recovers or evacuates vehicles and equipment, and perform emergency repairs and operator maintenance as necessary.
43. The platoon performs and/or assists scheduled maintenance.
44. On order of the commander, (or in some cases, the platoon commander), destroy vehicles and equipment it cannot recover or evacuate.
45. Coordinate and perform resupply, including refueling and rearmament.
46. The platoon sergeant consolidates reports and reviews ammunition, fuel, personnel and vehicle status, then forwards the platoon report to the Tank Leader, using digital or FM communications.
47. Critical supply and equipment or personnel shortages are reported by exception using standard voice report formats.
48. Develop and implement sleep plan.
49. Platoon performs field sanitation operations.

50. Maintain adequate supply of potable water.
51. Establish heads and hand-washing facilities.
52. Perform personal hygiene activities.
53. Platoon commander continues with troop-leading procedures until ordered to move for the next mission.
54. Perform thorough METT-TC analysis.
55. Maintain contact with the commander and adjacent/supporting units, using digital communications or FM communications.
56. Keep platoon informed of any changes in the mission or situation.
57. Continue to supervise and refine mission-related plans and preparations.
58. Platoon prepares to depart the AA.
59. Reconnoiter route and/or calculate time-distance factors from the platoon position to the SP, as directed.
60. Perform police call to verify no equipment, supplies, or other items of tactical or intelligence value are left behind.
61. Increase REDCON level as required based on commander's/platoon commander's guidance or unit SOP.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:
1812-CSS-2522 1802-CSS-1510 1802-CSS-2509
1812-CSS-2514

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5802: Conduct Consolidation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The procedures of organizing and strengthening of a newly captured position so that it can be used against the enemy; the occupying force prepares for succeeding operations.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of the company/team (CO/TM) and either gains an objective or repels an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated, but is still capable of some disorganized resistance. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon destroys, captures, or forces all enemy to withdraw and completes consolidation within one hour and sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM

communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon clears area of the enemy.
2. Reports and updates on enemy status are made in digital communications or FM communications.
3. Destroy or capture all enemy combat vehicles and personnel.
4. Drive enemy from the objective/defensive sector and surrounding key terrain.
5. Platoon establishes security.
6. Position tanks to cover armor avenues of approach.
7. Emplace OPs.
8. Position vehicles so they have overlapping fields of fire.
9. Annotate graphic control measures in digital communications overlays.
10. Platoon establishes a hasty defense.
11. Report to company/team commander when consolidation is complete.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5803: Conduct Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Reorganization is the shifting of internal resources within a degraded unit to increase its level of combat effectiveness.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and has either gained an objective or repelled an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated and the platoon has completed consolidation. The platoon has sustained casualties and damaged/destroyed equipment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon removes all EPWs, WIAs, and KIAs from the platoon area within 1 hour and conducts immediate resupply and cross-leveling of Class V items and reestablishes a chain of a command. The platoon accomplishes reorganization of elements below 50 percent strength within 1 hour and verifies that all Marines and leaders are aware of the new chain of command. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander reports status to company commander/executive officer (XO) using digital communications or FM communications.
2. Report casualties and personnel status.
3. Report Class III and V status.
4. Report vehicle status.
5. Report communications equipment status.
6. Request items for resupply.
7. Platoon commander establishes or reestablishes command and control.
8. Reestablish communications with the company/team and adjacent units, using digital communications and FM communications.
9. Develop a COA for the unit.
10. Coordinate with adjacent units.
11. Platoon accounts for personnel.
12. Determine WIAs, MIAs, and KIAs.
13. Report personnel status to company commander/XO/1stSgt using digital communications or FM communications.
14. Platoon commander replaces key losses.
15. Utilize personnel from disabled vehicles.
16. Fill leader positions first.
17. Verify all tanks have at least a three-man crew.
18. Redesignate wingmen.
19. Submit requests for replacement personnel, using digital communications or FM communications.
20. Platoon initiates evacuation procedures.
21. Submit requests in digital communications or FM communications.
22. Evacuate the seriously wounded and KIAs.
23. Recover and evacuate disabled vehicles.
24. Evacuate intelligence information and EPWs.
25. Platoon cross-levels and resupplies ammunition.
26. Inventory and cross-level remaining ammunition.
27. Redistribute ammunition from damaged vehicles.
28. Reload ready storage area and machine gun bins to capacity.
29. Request resupply from company commander/XO/Tank Leader after consolidating vehicle SITREPs and determining ammunition, fuel, personnel and vehicle status.
30. Critical supply and equipment and personnel shortages are reported by exception to the company commander/XO/Tank Leader using standard FM communications report formats.
31. Platoon prepares for tactical operations.
32. Restore communications, both FM and digital.
33. Perform maintenance checks and emergency repairs.
34. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles prior to movement.
35. Refuel and rearm.
36. Continue to implement SOP.
37. Issue FRAGO, as necessary, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CSS-5501 TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-CSS-5505
TANK-CSS-5503

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5804: Conduct Tactical Movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: Moving tactically dictates that elements of a unit are organized to facilitate combat. Movement techniques are used to traverse terrain such as traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch which is determined by the likelihood of enemy contact. Movement formations are the arrangement of troops and/or vehicles for a specific purpose related to terrain and the likelihood of enemy contact. Formations include box, column, diamond, line, vee, wedge, echelon (right or left), coil, and herringbone.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. It may or may not specify the route or axis of advance, the technique of movement, and/or the formation to be used. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves on the route or axis of advance specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon uses formations and techniques of movement as specified in the order, the commander's guidance and/or unit SOP. The platoon adjusts the route/axis, formation and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and changes in the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander performs troop-leading procedures.
2. Perform reconnaissance and develop a movement plan, using digital communications to identify and designate control points as time permits.
3. Initiate movement to designated route or axis of advance as required supporting the plan.
4. Platoon commander determines appropriate route, technique and formation based on mission analysis and reconnaissance.
5. Annotate graphic control measures on map overlay or digital communications; disseminate overlay to platoon.
6. Select a route that provides adequate cover and concealment (unless the

route is designated in the OPORD/FRAGO).

7. Select technique of movement based on METT-TC (unless the movement technique is specified in the company/team OPORD/FRAGO).
8. The platoon commander selects traveling when speed is necessary and contact with the enemy is not likely; or traveling overwatch when speed is necessary, but contact with the enemy is possible; or bounding overwatch when contact with the enemy is expected or when crossing an open area in which the enemy may have unobstructed fields of observation and fire (danger area).
9. The platoon commander selects alternate bounds when a secure but more rapid advance is required; or successive bounds when maximum security and ease of control are required.
10. Select movement formation based on METT-TC (unless the formation was specified in the OPORD/FRAGO or by the unit SOP).
11. The platoon commander selects a column when speed is critical, when moving through restrictive terrain on a specified route, and/or when enemy contact is not likely; or a staggered column when speed is critical, when there is limited area for lateral dispersion, and/or when enemy contact is not likely; or a wedge when provided with overwatch by another element and moving in open rolling terrain; or a Vee when terrain restricts movement or when overwatch within the formation is required; or an echelon when required to provide a screen on an exposed flank of a larger moving force; or a line when required to cross a danger area and is overwatched by another element or when assaulting enemy positions.
12. Platoon commander briefs platoon and directs movement on the selected route using the selected technique of movement and formation.
13. Brief TCs on route, movement technique, and formation (and specify use of way points to assist in navigation).
14. Use the correct visual signal and/or voice command on FM communications to initiate movement technique and/or formation.
15. Use graphic control measures in digital communications or other visual or voice cues to initiate the technique of movement and/or formation.
16. Platoon performs traveling technique of movement.
17. Assume correct order of march as directed by the platoon commander.
18. Move continuously as one unit, with one element trailing the other.
19. Maintain interval and dispersion between vehicles as terrain and weather permit.
20. Use terrain driving techniques by individual vehicles to reduce exposure.
21. Maintain visual contact between lead and trail element.
22. Maintain section integrity and organize the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.
23. Maintain areas of responsibility for observation and fire to provide all around security.
24. Platoon performs traveling overwatch technique of movement.
25. Assume positions as lead and trail elements as designated by platoon commander.
26. Move with element continuously as the trail element halts periodically at good vantage points to provide overwatch/support by fire for the lead element.
27. Use terrain driving techniques by individual vehicles to reduce exposure.
28. Maintain all around security for all vehicles.
29. Platoon performs bounding overwatch technique of movement.
30. The platoon will use the alternate or successive bounding method, either as designated by the platoon commander or as specified in the OPORD.
31. The platoon commander designates the bounding and overwatch elements.

32. Assume positions as lead (bounding) and trail (overwatch) elements as designated by platoon commander.
33. Execute alternate bounds.
34. The designated overwatch element (Section A in this example) occupies firing positions that afford optimum fields of observation and fire and provides overwatch/support by fire for the bounding element (Section B in this example); once Section A reports "SET," Section B begins its bound past Section A, taking care not to obstruct the overwatch element's (Section A) fields of observation and fire (IAW METT-TC); the two elements repeat this sequence of alternate bounds until the platoon comes to a halt or the technique of movement is changed.
35. Execute successive bounds.
36. The designated overwatch element (Section A in this example) occupies firing positions that afford optimum fields of observation and fire, and provides overwatch/support by fire for the bounding element (Section B in this example); once Section A reports "SET," Section B begins its bound in the direction of Section A, taking up a position abreast of (to the left or right of) Section A, taking care not to obstruct the overwatch element's fields of observation and fire; the two elements repeat the sequence of bounding until the platoon comes to a halt, or the technique of movement is changed.
37. Platoon commander directs movement using a column formation.
38. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
39. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation.
40. Verify vehicles maintain correct interval and speed, by monitoring the digital communications display.
41. Direct TCs to orient weapon systems to provide all around security (last vehicle orients its weapon systems to the rear if the platoon is the last element in a company/team column or is operating independently).
42. Platoon commander directs movement using a staggered column formation.
43. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
44. Direct vehicles to move into the designated positions within the formation with vehicles staggered on alternate sides of the prescribed route and the trail section positioned to provide overwatch for the lead section, as necessary.
45. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed by monitoring the digital communications display.
46. Direct TCs to orient weapons systems to provide all around security (last vehicle orients its weapons to the rear if the platoon is the last element in a company/team staggered column, or if the platoon is operating independently).
47. Platoon commander directs movement using a wedge formation.
48. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
49. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation with the platoon sergeant abreast of the platoon commander and wingmen behind and to the outside of their respective section leaders.
50. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed, by monitoring the digital communications displays.
51. Direct TCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front and flanks.
52. Platoon commander directs movement using a Vee formation.
53. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively

execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.

54. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation, with the platoon commander's wingman opposite of the platoon commander, and the platoon sergeant and his wingman opposite each other, behind and to the inside of the lead section.
55. Direct lead section to orient weapons systems in a cross fire configuration to increase standoff if factors of METT-TC permit.
56. Verify vehicles maintain positions, so that the trail section can monitor the lead section's movement (if lead section masks trail section's fire, or move out of range of its weapons systems, trail section adjusts its positions or informs lead section to adjust its position or to slow movement).
57. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed, by monitoring the digital communications display.
58. Direct TCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front and flanks.
59. Platoon commander directs movement using an echelon formation.
60. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
61. Direct vehicles to move into the designated positions within the formation using the wingman concept, forming an echelon left or right behind the lead vehicle.
62. Verify vehicles maintain proper echelon position, lateral dispersion, interval, and speed by monitoring the digital communications display.
63. Direct TCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front and in the direction of the echelon (left or right).
64. Platoon commander directs movement using a line formation.
65. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can control the platoon.
66. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation using the wingman concept, with vehicles forming a line abreast of each other (wingman tanks maintain outside positions of the formation).
67. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed, by monitoring the digital communications display.
68. Direct TCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front.
69. Platoon commander directs platoon to execute a herringbone formation.
70. The platoon executes a herringbone formation when a scheduled or unscheduled halt occurs and the platoon must assume a hasty defense with all around security, while remaining postured to resume movement in the direction of travel.
71. Use graphic control measures in digital communications, or a cue to initiate the formation change.
72. Use FM communications command or visual signal.
73. Platoon commander position himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
74. Direct vehicles to move into covered and concealed positions on alternate sides of the route.
75. Platoon commander directs platoon to execute a coil formation during convoy operations.
76. During convoy operations, platoon vehicles move off the route and away from the escorted vehicles to provide early warning and protection for the convoy based on factors of METT-TC or the convoy commander's guidance.
77. Direct TCs to orient vehicle outward and maintain proper dispersion.
78. Directs TCs to orient weapons systems outward to maintain all around security (if the platoon is operating independently, the trail vehicle

orients weapons systems to the rear to provide rear security).
79. Direct platoon to establish/maintain local security.
80. Take actions for a scheduled halt.
81. The platoon commander determines cause of the halt, informs commander of the halt and its cause (voice), develops COA, and resumes movement as soon as possible.
82. Take required actions for a scheduled halt.
83. The platoon commander directs/request maintenance and resupply operations, as necessary.
84. Platoon commander directs the platoon to execute a coil formation when the platoon is operating independently and must establish perimeter defense during extended halts or lulls in combat.
85. Use graphic control measures in digital communications, or a cue to initiate the formation change.
86. Use voice command or visual signal.
87. Position himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
88. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation.
89. The lead vehicle occupies a covered and concealed position in the direction of travel (12 o'clock); second vehicle occupies a covered and concealed position at either the 3 o'clock or the 9 o'clock position based on unit SOP; third vehicle occupies a covered and concealed position opposite of the second vehicle (3 o'clock or 9 o'clock); and the trail vehicle occupies a covered and concealed position opposite the lead vehicle (6 o'clock).
90. Direct TCs to orient vehicles outward and maintain proper dispersion.
91. Direct TCs to orient weapons systems outward to maintain all-round security.
92. Direct platoon to establish/maintain local security.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2811	1802-TAC-1801	1812-TAC-2809
1812-TAC-2808	1812-TAC-2807	1812-TAC-2806
1812-TAC-2805	1812-TAC-2804	1812-TAC-2803
1812-TAC-2802	1812-TAC-2801	1812-TAC-1801
1802-TAC-1812	1802-TAC-1811	1802-TAC-1810
1802-TAC-1809	1802-TAC-1808	1802-TAC-1807
1802-TAC-1806	1802-TAC-1805	1802-TAC-1804
1802-TAC-1803	1802-TAC-1802	1812-TAC-2810

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5805: Conduct Actions on Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Standardized actions made by a unit when contact with the enemy is gained. The contact can be near or far. Contact requires immediate actions: deploy, report, and develop the situation.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). It makes contact with an enemy force by receipt of direct/indirect fires, by direct observation, or from reports sent to, or coming from the CO/TM. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon identifies and reports the enemy unit or position before the enemy fires on the CO/TM or main body. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of squad-sized or smaller elements and fixes enemy forces larger than squad-size. The platoon sustains no more than 25 percent casualties. The platoon makes contact with a tank section or less. The platoon reports the enemy and friendly situation and avoids decisive engagement and sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon reacts to enemy antitank fire.
2. Return fire immediately to destroy or suppress the enemy.
3. Alert remainder of the platoon with a contact report.
4. The contact report should be transmitted to CO/TM by FM communications.
5. Activate smoke salvo launches if appropriate.
6. Take evasive actions and seek cover and concealment.
7. Platoon reacts to visual contact and/or contact reported by another element.
8. Alert the remainder of the platoon with a contact report.
9. Send initial SPOTREP to the company commander within 1 minute, using FM communications.
10. Platoon commander deploys the platoon as appropriate based on the situation.
11. Initiate one of the seven battle drills (this is usually a contact or action drill, with the platoon attempting to acquire and engage the enemy).
12. Direct the platoon to seek the best available covered and concealed position (position should afford flank security and unobstructed observation and fields of fire).
13. Platoon commander evaluates the situation.
14. Determine or confirm the size (inferior or superior), composition, activity, and orientation of the enemy force and/or type, size, and location of obstacle.
15. Use SPOTREPs and SITREPs as available to evaluate the situation.
16. Platoon commander develops the situation as required using a combination of techniques.
17. Choose fire and maneuver, indirect fire, reconnaissance by fire, or

surveillance.
18. Select actions that provide for survivability and mission accomplishment.
19. Send updated SPOTREP to the company commander, using FM communications.
20. Platoon commander selects an appropriate COA.
21. Direct the platoon to execute the original plan specified by the company commander in the OPORD.
22. Issue FRAGO to refine the plan, verifying it supports the commander's intent, based upon the situation.
23. Direct the platoon to execute tactical movement (employing bounding overwatch and support by fire within the platoon) and reconnaissance by fire to further develop the situation.
24. Platoon commander determines if CO/TM support is required (if situation dictates a change to the original plan).
25. Send recommendation to the company commander, using FM communications.
26. Receive orders to execute the COA selected by the company commander.
27. Use cross-talk with other platoons to obtain support, as necessary.
28. Platoon executes the COA.
29. Destroy an inferior force.
30. Perform overwatch/support by fire.
31. Perform an attack by fire.
32. Assault the enemy position.
33. Bypass the enemy.
34. Perform reconnaissance by fire.
35. Establish a hasty defense.
36. Perform a breaching operation.
37. Platoon completes operations based on the situation and OPORD/FRAGO/commander's intent.
38. Continue to execute the selected or refined COA until the original mission is accomplished.
39. Receive a FRAGO from the company commander.
40. Alter COA, as necessary, during execution if the situation changes.
41. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant keeps the company commander informed.
42. Send updated SITREPs and/or SPOTREPs, as necessary, using digital communications or FM communications.
43. Report completion of the operation, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1814 1812-TAC-2813

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5806: Destroy an Inferior Force

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: To maintain the tempo of an attack, the company commander may order the platoon to destroy an inferior force, based either on his original plan or on recommendation of the platoon commander. The platoon commander usually employs maneuver techniques (fire and tactical movement) in executing this task or COA.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). During the operation the platoon has a meeting engagement with an inferior enemy force and is ordered to destroy the enemy unit. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon identifies and reports the enemy unit or position before the enemy fires on the CO/TM or main body. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of enemy force. The platoon sustains no more than 25 percent casualties. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon has a meeting engagement with an inferior enemy force.
2. The platoon executes appropriate action drill and returns fire.
3. The platoon commander reports contact to the company commander.
4. The platoon commander designates one section to overwatch or support by fire to suppress and/or destroy the enemy while the other section moves.
5. The moving element uses appropriate movement techniques as well as covered and concealed routes to move to a position of advantage over the enemy.
6. This position may offer dominating terrain that allows the platoon to attack enemy positions by direct fire, or it may provide covered routes that enable the section to close with and assault the enemy.
7. After the platoon commander designates the route to the next possible overwatch position, the overwatch leader identifies graphic control measures and assigns responsibility for suppression of identified enemy positions.
8. Cross-talk among sections and vehicles is important in ensuring mutual support while the overwatch is providing supporting fires during the other section's movement to the position of advantage.
9. After successfully destroying the inferior enemy force, the platoon positions itself where it can most effectively prepare for subsequent actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2842	1802-TAC-1829	1812-TAC-2836
1812-TAC-2835	1812-TAC-2833	1812-TAC-2832
1812-TAC-2831	1812-TAC-2828	1812-TAC-2827
1802-TAC-1861	1802-TAC-1844	1802-TAC-1843

1802-TAC-1833	1802-TAC-1838	1802-TAC-1837
1802-TAC-1835	1802-TAC-1834	1802-TAC-1830
1812-TAC-2841		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5807: Follow and Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The tank platoon conducts follow and support missions when the enemy situation is extremely fluid or unknown. Normally, it executes the mission in support of dismounted infantry or scout platoons. On rare occasions, the platoon will follow and support other tank platoons or mechanized forces. When the lead element makes contact with an enemy force it cannot destroy or bypass, it requests the support of the tank platoon to destroy or suppress the enemy. Based on the request, the platoon conducts linkup and coordination, then executes an offensive COA.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM), or light infantry unit. Elements consisting of dismounted infantry or scouts are leading. The platoon is conducting tactical movement, or it is stationary to the rear and not in the battlespace of the lead element. The platoon commander receives a FRAGO and supporting overlays, if required, to conduct linkup and to destroy an enemy position that has halted the forward progress of the lead element. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon positions itself so that it does not interfere with the lead element's battle space or tactical movement. The platoon performs linkup and destroys the enemy position or vehicle(s), enabling the lead element to continue its original mission. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander prepares and issues a FRAGO.
2. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles.
3. Uses digital or FM communications.
4. Designate location of linkup point.
5. Specify route and formation for the movement.

6. Designate far and near recognition signals.
7. Specify time of movement.
8. Platoon performs tactical movement to the linkup point.
9. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
10. Use the most advantageous formation and movement technique based on METT-TC.
11. Maintain SA to guide platoon to linkup point.
12. Maintains weapons orientation to provide all-round security.
13. Enter BP from the rear and occupies position using modified line formation.
14. Move into turret-down positions and orients weapons systems toward the center of the avenue of approach or EA.
15. Platoon commander links up with the lead element, if physical linkup is required.
16. Perform tactical movement to the designated contact point.
17. Check for supporting units distance and awareness.
18. Use far and near recognition signals to reduce fratricide risk.
19. Platoon commander coordinates with lead element.
20. Exchange information face-to-face, or by FM communications and/or digital communications, based on the tactical situation.
21. The platoon commander leader confirms or determines enemy disposition, friendly disposition, tentative maneuver plan, requirements for use of guides, control procedures for direct and indirect fires, close-in protection measures for direct and indirect fires, communications procedures (visual, wire, hand-held radios, FM radio).
22. Perform a digital and/or ground reconnaissance, as time permits.
23. The platoon commander determines primary and alternate routes, locates firing positions, designates danger areas along the route, identifies dominating structures and terrain along the route, and determines the use of and location for ground guides.
24. Platoon commander updates the platoon.
25. Outline results of information exchange.
26. Brief the plan to destroy the target, including tactical information from the reconnaissance.
27. Specify time of movement.
28. Platoon performs tactical movement to the firing position.
29. Use indirect fires or CAS, and directs fires to suppress enemy anti-armor and crew-served weapons and obscure the movement of the platoon.
30. Use dismounted personnel to guide vehicles to their positions and provide close-in security, as required.
31. Platoon executes actions on contact.
32. Destroy an inferior force.
33. Attack by fire against the enemy position
34. Execute a hasty attack or assault against the enemy position.
35. Platoon commander informs the commander of the situation.
36. Send SITREP using FM communications and/or digital communications.
37. Direct the platoon to continue the follow and support mission until change in mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5819

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5808: Conduct an Attack by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The purpose of the attack by fire is to destroy the enemy using long-range fires from dominating terrain or using standoff of the main gun. The platoon can use an attack by fire to destroy inferior forces when the platoon commander does not desire to close with the enemy or when the platoon is part of a company-level effort. In addition, the platoon may occupy an attack by fire position as part of a company-level hasty defense with the goal of destroying a superior force. A successful attack by fire destroys the enemy force.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company/team (CO/TM) that has made contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The commander has directed the platoon to conduct an attack by fire from a designated position. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies the designated ABF position and places effective direct and indirect fire (if applicable) on the enemy element and destroys or suppresses the unit. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander receives/analyzes OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Determine location of enemy element.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to ABF position (if not specified in the order) and, if applicable, use way points to assist in navigation.
4. Confirm commander's direct fire and indirect fire (if applicable) scheme of maneuver (who has indirect fire control; when to lift and shift fires).
5. Coordinate with supporting elements as required.
6. Issue FRAGO to the platoon using digital communications or FM communications.
7. Platoon performs tactical movement to ABF position.
8. Use appropriate speed, formation, and movement technique to the ABF position.
9. In many situations, bounding overwatch will be the most advantageous technique.
10. Orient weapon systems to provide all around security during movement.
11. Engage enemy forces, if necessary.
12. Platoon occupies the ABF position.
13. Confirm that the position provides for placement of effective fires on the

enemy, and facilitates weapons standoff.
14. Confirm the position affords cover and concealment for hull-down or turret-down positions.
15. Perform a hasty occupation of the ABF position.
16. Designate or identify CO/TM TRPs.
17. Brief platoon on sector of fire and adjust positions as needed.
18. Platoon attacks by fire.
19. Scan for enemy elements.
20. Use digital communications to locate other friendly elements, and ensure all tanks know friendly situation.
21. Use main gun fire to suppress and destroy large targets.
22. The platoon commander issues a platoon fire command specifying the method of fire, firing pattern and rate of fire the platoon must sustain to accomplish the task.
23. Use machine gun fire to suppress dismounted troops and suspected enemy positions.
24. Use indirect fires on enemy elements.
25. Platoon continues the attack by fire until all enemy elements are destroyed, suppressed or the order to lift fires is received.
26. Sustain a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy position.
27. Shift, start, or cease direct and/or indirect fires, as necessary.
28. Move to alternate ABF positions as necessary to avoid becoming decisively engaged and/or to maintain effective fires on the enemy.
29. Cease fire once the enemy is destroyed, or on order from the company commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1867 1812-TAC-2864

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5809: Conduct an Overwatch/Support by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company commander may order the platoon to provide overwatch or support by fire during the movement of a friendly force. The purpose is to suppress the enemy using long-range direct and indirect fires from a dominating piece of terrain or using the standoff of the main gun. This support sets the conditions that allow moving (supported) friendly elements to engage and destroy the enemy. The techniques involved in occupying an overwatch or support-by-fire position and in focusing and

controlling fires are similar to those for an attack by fire. Some specific considerations exist, however. As noted, the overwatch/support-by-fire task is always tied directly to the movement and/or tactical execution of other friendly forces. In executing overwatch or support by fire, the platoon must maintain a high level of situational understanding relative to the supported force so it can lift and shift direct and indirect fires as required to prevent fratricide. A successful overwatch/support-by-fire operation suppresses the enemy, permitting the moving (supported) force to conduct tactical movement, breaching operations, or an assault.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The platoon is designated by the company commander to provide overwatch and/or support by fire for moving friendly elements from moving or stationary positions. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies a position from which it can provide overwatch/support by fire for the supported element. The platoon suppresses or destroys enemy elements that could affect accomplishment of the supported element's mission. The platoon maintains communications with the supported unit and warns it of lapses in overwatch coverage. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify/designate tentative overwatch/SBF positions, TRPs, sectors of fire, CO/TM objective, moving element routes, and/or orientation on likely enemy positions.
2. Platoon commander alerts and issues the FRAGO/OPORD for the overwatch/support by fire mission.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to be used during movement to overwatch/SBF position.
4. Verify signal to lift and shift fires.
5. Annotate essential graphic control measures in digital communications overlays and sends to the platoon.
6. Platoon performs tactical movement to and occupies overwatch/SBF position.
7. Maintain orientation on and overwatch of the supported element's battle space during movement.
8. Adjust movement to maintain correct interval from the supported element based on the terrain and the ability of the platoon's weapon systems to cover the supported element's battle space.
9. Observe moving element in digital communications to slow/alter movement so it does not exceed the platoon's ability to provide direct/indirect fire.
10. Make a short halt on key terrain that affords more effective overwatch for the supported element, if necessary.
11. Perform hasty occupation of overwatch/SBF position that provides effective weapon standoff, cover and concealment for hull-down or turret-down positions, and/or cover and concealment on likely enemy positions, if appropriate.
12. Platoon performs overwatch from stationary position, as the situation dictates.
13. Scan sectors of fire, as designated by the platoon commander or SOP.

14. Observe supported unit in digital communications to assist movement and control supporting fire.
15. Keep supported element informed of the enemy situation.
16. Platoon initiates suppressive fires, if support by fire becomes necessary.
17. Suppressive fires are initiated when the platoon commander issues a platoon fire command or when individual vehicles fire, after observing an enemy element.
18. Use main gun and machine gun fire to destroy targets and suppress dismounted troops and suspected enemy locations.
19. Call for and adjust indirect fires, through CO/TM FiST.
20. Adjust fires, based on the supported unit's movement/signals, to prevent fratricide, as necessary.
21. Move to alternate positions to avoid becoming decisively engaged and/or to maintain effective fires on the enemy, as necessary.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1868 1812-TAC-2865

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5810: Conduct a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: As part of his original plan or on recommendation of the platoon commander, the company commander may order the platoon to bypass the enemy to maintain the tempo of the attack. This COA can be taken against either an inferior or superior force. The company commander may designate one platoon to suppress the enemy, allowing the other platoons to use covered and concealed routes, weapon standoff, and obscuration to bypass known enemy locations.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and has made contact with an enemy force or obstacle. The platoon initiates actions on contact and is directed by the company commander to conduct a bypass. The platoon's movement is covered by the remainder of the unit in an overwatch position. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon locates a suitable bypass route affording cover and concealment and/or weapon standoff. The platoon conducts the bypass without

becoming decisively engaged by the enemy element. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander reconnoiters to locate an available route, if the commander did not designate one.
2. Annotate graphic control measures in digital communications overlays and transmits information to the platoon using a combination of FM and digital SA.
3. Verify bypass affords routes away from enemy positions and obstacles.
4. Verify that terrain along the bypass route will support movement of platoon vehicles.
5. Verify bypass affords covered and concealed positions/routes beyond the enemy positions/obstacles.
6. If the platoon commander does not locate a suitable bypass route, he sends a SITREP (FM communications/digital communications) to the company commander and prepares the platoon to take actions as directed.
7. Platoon performs tactical movement along the route.
8. Use most advantageous formation and movement technique.
9. Maintain weapons orientation to provide all around security.
10. Identify and react to enemy forces along the route.
11. Call for indirect fire support, including smoke, to screen movement using digital communications or FM communications.
12. Platoon takes appropriate actions, after the completion of the bypass.
13. Report completion to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
14. Assume an overwatch/support by fire role to allow follow-on units to bypass, if so ordered.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1828 1812-TAC-2826

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5811: Conduct an Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company commander may direct the platoon to execute an assault, either on its own or as part of a larger assault force. The purpose of the assault is to seize key terrain or to close with and destroy the enemy while seizing an enemy-held position. Designation of the platoon as the assault force may be made as part of the company commander's original plan or on recommendation of the platoon commander. The platoon usually assaults the enemy while receiving supporting fires from an overwatch element. If supporting fire is not available, the platoon conducts tactical movement to a position of advantage over the enemy, then conducts the assault. A successful assault destroys the enemy elements or forces them to withdraw from the objective.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct an assault. The location of the assault position is designated in the order. The company commander has positioned the remainder of the unit in support-by-fire positions. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon seizes the position, resulting in the destruction, capture, or withdrawal of 100 percent of the enemy. The platoon sustains no more than 20 percent casualties due to enemy fire. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander receives and analyzes the OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Determine location of the objective.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to the assault position (if not specified in the FRAGO).
4. Confirm commander's direct and indirect fire scheme of maneuver (who has indirect fire control; when to lift and shift fires).
5. Issue FRAGO to the platoon.
6. Platoon moves to the assault position.
7. Use appropriate formation and movement technique (in many situations, bounding overwatch will be the most advantageous technique).
8. Orient weapons systems to provide all around security during movement.
9. Engage enemy forces, if necessary.
10. Platoon occupies the assault position.
11. If the platoon is unable to occupy the assault position, platoon commander determines/designates tactical information and relays it to the platoon and/or commander, through voice or digital means, prior to crossing LD.
12. Perform final checks of vehicles, weapons, and equipment and reports to the platoon commander when prepared to assault.
13. Come on line within the assault position (turret-down or hull-down positions, if METT-TC allows).
14. Scan the objective to determine enemy type, size, and locations of any obstacles.
15. Transmit SPOTREP to the company commander.
16. Platoon commander analyzes the situation and makes final preparations, as needed.
17. Develop an estimate of the situation to determine additional COAs that may

be required by the platoon and/or company/team prior to and after the assault but that were not in the commander's original OPORD/FRAGO.
18. Determine composition and disposition of the enemy force occupying the objective and identifies route(s) into enemy flanks and/or bypass routes around any known obstacles.
19. Send SPOTREP/SITREP to the commander with recommendations on COAs, using digital communications or FM communications.
20. Relay essential information from the platoon commander to the vehicle commanders as it is received.
21. Designate additional TRPs, targets, and routes through the objective, as necessary, and identifies them to TCs using FM communications.
22. Platoon commander orders the platoon to assault.
23. Fires are initiated by CO/TM commander as part of the assault plan.
24. Specify weapons orientation and LOA.
25. Request adjustment to direct/indirect fire support to suppress known or suspected enemy forces on or within range of the objective, using FM communications.
26. Platoon assaults.
27. Move out on line.
28. Maintain forward momentum along designated route(s) or IAW OPORD/FRAGO.
29. Lift and shift supporting fires beyond objective, as necessary, using FM communications.
30. Use all weapon systems to destroy or suppress enemy elements on the objective.
31. Move to designated position on the objective, if the objective is defensible maintaining alignment with other platoons using digital communications SA.
32. Assault through the objective to occupy defensible terrain beyond it IAW the commander's intent, if objective is not defensible.
33. Platoon occupies defensible positions.
34. Execute steps for hasty occupation of a BP.
35. Continue to use direct/indirect fires as appropriate to destroy identified enemy elements.
36. Platoon commander reports the situation.
37. Compile SITREPs from vehicle commanders.
38. Submit SITREPs by FM communications followed by digital communications reports as time permits, to the commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2831	1802-TAC-1832	1802-TAC-1833
1812-TAC-2830		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5812: Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Based on the original plan or recommendation from the platoon commander, the company commander may direct the platoon to execute reconnaissance by fire when enemy contact is expected or when contact has occurred but the enemy situation is vague. The platoon then conducts tactical movement, occupying successive overwatch positions until it makes contact with the enemy or reaches the objective. At each overwatch position, the platoon commander may designate TRPs. He then either requests indirect fires or employs direct fires on likely enemy locations to cause the enemy force to return direct fire or to move, thus compromising its positions.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting offensive operations in a tactical environment as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Enemy contact is expected or has already occurred, but the enemy situation is vague. The platoon commander directs the platoon to develop the situation, using reconnaissance by fire to force the enemy to react. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon causes the enemy to displace using indirect/direct fires, identifies enemy positions from return fire, or determines that there are no enemy forces in the suspected position. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander identifies suspected enemy location(s).
2. The platoon commander may annotate digital communications overlays with graphic control measures.
3. Target key terrain overwatching choke points or danger areas.
4. Target built-up areas that dominate the surrounding terrain.
5. Target uncleared wooded areas.
6. Designate platoon TRPs, and reports them to CO/TM, using digital communications or FM communications.
7. Platoon occupies an overwatch position.
8. Perform tactical movement to the overwatch location, using the cover and concealment provided by the terrain to protect against enemy fires.
9. Select a position that provides cover and concealment.
10. Occupy hull-down fighting positions, if possible.
11. Begin scanning sectors of fire as designated by the platoon commander.
12. Platoon employs indirect fire.
13. Send call for fire targeting suspected enemy locations(s) using digital communications or FM communications.
14. Observe for enemy reaction and adjusts indirect fires as necessary to destroy enemy forces.
15. Platoon employs direct fire.
16. Use one tank per section to fire short bursts of caliber .50 and/or coaxial machine gun fire into and around suspected enemy position(s).

17. The platoon uses caliber .50 and/or coaxial machine gun fire initially; use main gun fire only as necessary.
18. Use the other tank in each section to observe for enemy activity and uses machine gun and/or main gun fire to destroy any enemy elements forced to maneuver.
19. Execute actions as necessary, if enemy force is not destroyed by initial fires.
20. Platoon commander or platoon sergeant determine that no enemy elements are occupying the suspected position.
21. Send SITREP to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
22. Direct the platoon to continue the mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5809 TANK-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1866 1812-TAC-2863

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5813: Conduct Operations in an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Operations in a built-up urban area are planned and executed based on the factors of METT-TC and established doctrine. The platoon is usually employed as part of a larger force, such as a company/team or battalion task force, but may be task organized to support operations at the section level.

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting tactical operations in an urban environment as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The unit receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to support operations in a built-up area at the location and time specified. The built-up area may be a very small village (10 or fewer buildings), in a lateral strip area (along a road), or a concentration of structures/facilities. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer assets, and military intelligence assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Contact is possible. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may

be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon supports tactical operations in the urban built-up area IAW the SOP, the order, and/or the higher commander's guidance. The platoon task organizes according to mission needs and employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander, in coordination with the supported infantry unit leaders, conducts a physical or map reconnaissance, based on METT-TC, of the routes to be used by the CO/TM in the built-up area.
2. Identify primary and supporting routes.
3. Identify approach routes to the built-up area.
4. Identify restrictive locations along the route that may provide ambush positions.
5. Identify dominating structures along the route.
6. Identify routes out of the built-up area.
7. Coordinate locations within the built-up area and along routes of movement for rally points.
8. Evaluate the situation, including the following factors: building types (including layout and construction materials); subsurface entry and exit points and avenues of approach; and requirements for special equipment and materials.
9. Task organize the platoon to support the needs of the CO/TM assault and breach forces (may require platoon to support tactical operations at the section level).
10. If time allows, conduct detailed rehearsals with infantry units to ensure understanding of tactical requirements, local security for tanks, danger areas, tank strengths and limitations in MOUT, ammunition performance, tank/infantry phone employment, tank blade utilization, movement techniques, direct fire control and marking techniques, CSS requirements etc.
11. The tank platoon provides overwatch as the support force in order to protect the assault force during movement to the built-up area.
12. The tank platoon utilizes main gun fires and vehicle hulls to create breach holes into buildings for dismounted forces.
13. Employ tanks in support by fire (SBF) positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions, and cover high-speed avenues of approach.
14. Use covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.
15. Establish sectors of fire and direct fire responsibilities for tanks along the surface (ground, street, and water) level.
16. Direct tanks to provide support in the built-up area as necessary (utilize thermal sights to provide security at firm bases, tanks to carry emergency resupply to infantry squads, QRF missions etc.).
17. The CO/TM commander may direct the tank platoon to conduct the following urban offensive operations: neutralize enemy positions with machine gun fire, destroy enemy strongpoints with main gun fire, destroy obstacles across streets, force entry of infantry into buildings, emplace supporting fires as directed by the infantry, and establish roadblocks and barricades.

18. The CO/TM commander may employ the tank platoon for the following urban defensive operations: on the edge of the city in mutually supporting positions, on key terrain on the flanks of towns and villages, in positions from which they can cover barricades and obstacles by fire, and as part of the reserve.
19. Monitor the flow of battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.
20. Send updated SITREPs (voice or digital) as necessary during the operation.
21. Report the completion of clearance of the built-up area.
22. Tank platoon consolidates and reorganizes to prepare for future missions.
23. Treat and evacuate casualties; secure and process enemy prisoners of war (EPW), as required.
24. Continue operations as directed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5809	TANK-TAC-5811
TANK-TAC-5804		

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2873	1802-TAC-2805	1802-TAC-2809
1812-TAC-2866		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
9. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5814: Conduct a Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The tank platoon can conduct deliberate occupation of a BP when all of the following conditions exist: time is available, the enemy is not expected or has not been located within direct fire range, and a friendly element is forward of the BP with the mission of providing security for the occupying force. The platoon begins by occupying a hide position behind the BP. It assumes a formation that will provide 360-degree security based on considerations of METT-TC and OCOKA. TCs move to the platoon commander's vehicle and prepare to reconnoiter the position. The platoon commander briefs his gunner on actions to take if the reconnaissance group does not return by a specified time or if contact occurs.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operation as part of a company team (CO/TM) and is directed to conduct a deliberate occupation of a platoon battle position (BP). The platoon commander may or may not have conducted a ground reconnaissance of the BP with the company commander.

Using overlays, the platoon commander prepares a tentative platoon fire plan for the position and designated tentative vehicle positions, sectors of fire, TRPs, EAs, obstacles, and routes based on the ground or map reconnaissance. Enemy contact is not likely prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Sufficient time is available to conduct a deliberate occupation. The company commander specifies a time and location to conduct coordination between platoons. Engineer assets may or may not be available. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves into the BP, avoids detection by the enemy, and establishes security. The platoon commander and TCs reconnoiter the BP. The platoon commander finalizes the plan and completes coordination with adjacent units. The platoon completes the occupation by the "defend NLT" time stated in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon performs tactical movement to a hide position behind the BP.
2. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
3. Use the most advantageous formation and movement technique.
4. Maintain weapons orientation to provide all around security.
5. Platoon occupies a hide position behind the BP.
6. Execute herringbone formation.
7. Establish local security, with OPs emplaced as necessary (the platoon may have to coordinate with dismounted infantry for OP support).
8. Occupy individual vehicle hide positions (designated by the platoon commander using voice digital/visual signals) and perform simultaneous shutdown.
9. Platoon commander designates and briefs the reconnaissance group (the reconnaissance group usually consists of TCs and a security element).
10. Outline reconnaissance procedures, including required equipment, routes, security measures, and displacement plan.
11. Brief reconnaissance group on information that is already known about the BP.
12. Platoon commander designates his gunner as NCOIC for the platoon element remaining in the hide position and briefs him on requirements and procedures applicable during the reconnaissance.
13. Outline security and maintenance procedures.
14. Designate elements to provide overwatch for the reconnaissance group, if applicable.
15. Establish a contingency plan for actions to be taken if the reconnaissance group does not return by a specified time, or if enemy contact occurs during the reconnaissance element's absence.
16. Establish communications between the reconnaissance element tanks.
17. Platoon reconnaissance group moves to the BP.
18. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
19. Maintain local security.
20. Platoon commander (with reconnaissance group) reconnoiters BP and EAs and marks key locations in AO.
21. Move to a vantage point that allows the group to view the BP from the enemy's perspective, if possible.
22. Walk the EA (if time is available, if not drive the EA).
23. Mark TRPs in the EA.

24. Move to vantage point within the BP that affords a clear view of platoon's AO, if possible.
25. Identify locations of existing obstacles and tentative positions for reinforcing obstacles.
26. Point out terrain that corresponds to the platoon's and CO/TM's graphic control measures (EA, TRPs, BPs, routes between BPs).
27. Brief the CO/TM scheme of maneuver.
28. Designate primary and supplementary firing positions and sectors of fire to cover the EA.
29. Designate covered and concealed routes between primary and supplementary firing positions.
30. Designate OP positions to provide observation of the avenues of approach into the platoon's sector and route back to the BP.
31. Brief TCs on the platoon scheme of defense (to include trigger point, break point and disengagement plan).
32. Mark key locations in the BP and EA using daylight and limited visibility materials and records ten-digit grid coordinates for these locations.
33. Platoon commander emplaces OPs.
34. Assign overwatch responsibilities for OPs.
35. Establish a contingency plan for actions the OPs will take if enemy contact occurs.
36. Designate criteria and signals for displacement and return of the OPs.
37. Platoon commander coordinates with adjacent units.
38. Confirm location of OPs and patrols.
39. Designate overlapping sectors of fire and observation.
40. Verify location of adjacent units' vehicles and primary, alternate, and supplementary BPs and firing positions.
41. Identify dead space.
42. Determine location and types of obstacles.
43. Confirm indirect fire targets.
44. Exchange SOI information.
45. Coordinate routes into and out of the BP and routes to subsequent BPs.
46. Update graphic control measures in digital communications and transmit them to the platoon as necessary.
47. Platoon occupies the BP.
48. Start vehicles simultaneously following FM communications command or visual signals from the platoon commander.
49. Move along designated covered and concealed routes and occupies individual vehicle hide positions behind the primary fighting positions.
50. Move simultaneously into turret-down positions and scan platoon sector for enemy activity.
51. Move simultaneously into hull-down positions and make final adjustments.
52. Complete sketch cards (hard-copy) and forward one copy per vehicle to the platoon commander.
53. Back down into designated individual vehicle hide positions behind primary fighting positions, and shut the vehicles down individually.
54. One vehicle may be left in the turret-down position as a mounted OP.
55. Platoon commander consolidates sketch cards and finalizes the platoon fire plan.
56. Plot grid lines.
57. Identify: individual tank positions; platoon sector or EA; TRPs; range lines, trigger points, break points, and other key terrain features; locations of OPs and obstacles; indirect fire targets, including FPF (if allocated), and dead space.
58. Record appropriate marginal information, including (as required)

engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire pattern, and disengagement criteria.
59. Platoon commander informs the company commander that the BP is occupied and reports "ESTABLISHED".
60. Submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission).
61. Platoon commander updates platoon on any changes to the occupation plan.
62. Initiate necessary actions to be made as a result of coordination.
63. Direct platoon to conduct vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
64. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/TCs supervise improvement of the BP.
65. Coordinate with engineer assets (if available).
66. Supervise digging of firing positions, using engineers, if available.
67. Inspect dug-in firing positions and escort engineers to the next tank when finished.
68. Direct the platoon to camouflage vehicles and equipment.
69. Verify clear fields of fire.
70. Establish thermal TRPs IAW unit SOP.
71. Direct the platoon to establish wire communications.
72. Direct employment of chemical alarms, obstacles, and prestock ammunition and supplies.
73. Emplace decoys, if available.
74. Supervise/perform vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
75. Platoon performs rehearsals (the extent and complexity of platoon rehearsals will depend on the time available and the tactical situation; the platoon may conduct rehearsals by itself or in conjunction with the CO/TM).
76. Perform special rehearsals (individual/crew tasks), map rehearsals, key leader rehearsals, sand table, terrain model or digital communications rehearsals, force-on-force rehearsals, or a rehearsal with all crews observing a designated vehicle as it moves in the EA.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2878	1812-TAC-2877	1812-TAC-2846
1812-TAC-2845	1802-CBTS-1411	1802-TAC-1849
1802-TAC-1848	1802-TAC-1847	1812-CBTS-2427
1802-TAC-1850		

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
5. FM 5-101 Mobility
6. FM 5-102 Countermobility
7. FM 5-103 Survivability
8. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
9. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
10. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
13. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5815: Conduct a Hasty Occupation of a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Tank platoons conduct a hasty occupation of a battle position (BP) under a variety of circumstances. During a movement to contact, the platoon may prepare to destroy a moving enemy force by conducting a hasty occupation of BPs or attack by fire positions in defensible terrain. During defensive operations, hasty occupation may take place during counterattack missions, after disengagement and movement to subsequent BPs, or in response to FRAGOs reflecting a change of mission.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/ FRAGO and supporting overlays to defend a battle position (BP). The platoon is moving to the BP. Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the order, but there is insufficient time to conduct the steps of a deliberate occupation prior to enemy contact. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies the designated BP and avoids detection by the enemy. The platoon orients on the designated portion of the CO/TM's EA or sector of fire, and defends by the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon occupies the designated BP.
2. Enter the BP from the flank or rear.
3. Assume a modified line formation and orients all weapons toward the center of the EA.
4. Move simultaneously into turret-down positions within the limits of the BP.
5. Platoon commander designates defensive control measures.
6. Identify and reference the TRPs, EA, and/or sectors of fire for primary fighting positions.
7. Designate sectors of fire.
8. Identify tentative locations for each vehicle's primary fighting position.
9. Identify and reference the TRPs and/or EA for supplementary fighting positions.
10. Identify tentative locations for each vehicle's supplementary fighting positions.
11. Designate covered and concealed displacement routes in and out of the BP to subsequent BPs (if necessary).
12. Annotate simple graphic control measures (i.e. TRPs) and any CO/TM graphics in digital communications overlays and transmit the information to the platoon.
13. Platoon adjusts positions to cover the EA, as necessary.
14. Select alternate firing positions.
15. Select covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate and

supplementary positions.
16. Platoon commander directs the platoon to move into primary fighting positions.
17. Direct all vehicles move into turret-down positions and scan their sectors of fire.
18. Identify trigger line, engagement criteria, fire pattern, break point, and disengagement plan, as time permits.
19. Confirm SA of platoon and adjacent units.
20. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the commander, using digital or FM communications.
21. Perform a physical check of each position.
22. Platoon commander directs the additional steps of a deliberate occupation, as time permits.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5814

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2878	1812-TAC-2877	1802-TAC-1846
1812-TAC-2846	1812-TAC-2845	1802-CBTS-1411
1802-TAC-1850	1802-TAC-1849	1802-TAC-1848
1802-TAC-1847	1812-CBTS-2427	1812-TAC-2844

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 5-101 Mobility
5. FM 5-102 Countermobility
6. FM 5-103 Survivability
7. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5816: Defend a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Defense of a battle position is a technique that places a unit in a battle position (BP) to concentrate its fires, to limit its maneuver, or to place it in an advantageous position to counterattack. The BP is a general location on the ground. The commander positions his forces on the best terrain within and in the vicinity of the BP. The commander may position security forces forward of and about the BP. He can also locate combat support and combat service support elements outside the BP. The commander can maneuver his forces freely within the BP and seize the initiative to maneuver outside of the BP to attack enemy forces provided that it does not interfere with the commander's concept.

CONDITION: The tank platoon completes occupation of a BP as part of a company/team (CO/TM) defense or in preparation for a perimeter defense. The platoon commander prepares a platoon fire plan in digital communications or

on overlay and receives displacement criteria from the commander. The platoon observes an advancing enemy, or is alerted to an enemy unit by a digital or FM SPOTREP from the company commander or another element. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy force, or begins displacement IAW the commander's orders/intent. The platoon moves to a subsequent BP before being overrun by the enemy force in its sector, if necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon reacts to the enemy contact.
2. Alert the rest of the platoon with a SPOTREP (FM communications) of enemy contact (TC making initial contact).
3. Send a SPOTREP (FM communications) of enemy contact to the commander, or acknowledge the incoming SPOTREP or contact report.
4. Platoon commander analyzes the incoming message (voice/digital) if contact results from a report by another unit.
5. Identify mounted/dismounted avenues of approach you expect the enemy to use to enter the platoon sector.
6. Determine the enemy element's capabilities and objectives based on the information available.
7. Platoon commander disseminates information from the contact report/SPOTREP to TCs and OPs.
8. Identify enemy's expected avenues of approach and projected capabilities and objectives.
9. Provide other tactical information as available.
10. Direct crew making first contact with the enemy to alert the platoon with a SPOTREP or contact report (FM communications).
11. Platoon prepares for the enemy's arrival.
12. Adjust REDCON level as necessary.
13. Start engines simultaneously and move to turret-down positions on platoon commander's signal (visual, wire, FM communications).
14. Withdraw from dismounted positions and remount vehicles, if applicable.
15. Scan for targets and enemy activity.
16. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant calls for indirect fire, through CO/TM FiST.
17. Request indirect fire IAW the defensive fire plan, using digital communications or FM communications.
18. Adjust indirect fire to force the enemy to button up and deploy.
19. Platoon commander issues a platoon fire command.
20. Give alert (address the vehicle or vehicles to fire).
21. Describe target (number, type, and activity of enemy elements).
22. Specify orientation (location given by reference point, terrain feature, or direction to target).
23. Specify execution (such as "FIRE" or "AT MY COMMAND").
24. Platoon prepares to engage.
25. Lay main guns for direction.
26. Issue fire commands specifying "AT MY COMMAND."
27. Load specified ammunition.
28. Orient gunners on proper targets.

29. Report to platoon commander when ready to engage.
30. Platoon commander directs engagement of enemy elements with direct fire.
31. Direct the platoon to move simultaneously into hull-down positions within primary fighting positions.
32. Direct vehicles to engage targets within their sector IAW the platoon fire plan.
33. Order "FIRE" when the enemy crosses the trigger line.
34. Coordinate sections' movement to alternate positions with the platoon sergeant, so only one tank per section moves at a time.
35. Issue additional fire commands, as necessary, to destroy all enemy targets within the platoon sector, while controlling overkill and ammunition expenditure.
36. Direct all, or a portion of the platoon, to move to supplementary fighting positions, as necessary, to destroy enemy forces moving through different sectors of fire or avenues of approach.
37. Platoon continues to defend from its present location, if the enemy has been destroyed or halted.
38. Terminate direct fire engagements when platoon commander announces "CEASE FIRE."
39. Back into turret-down positions as directed by the platoon commander.
40. Scan for additional enemy targets.
41. Send a periodic and complete SITREP to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
42. Perform consolidation and reorganization.
43. Platoon displaces to subsequent or alternate BP (the platoon displaces if the enemy force advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the commander's guidance and/or OPORD/FRAGO).

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5815	TANK-TAC-5814

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1850	1812-TAC-2846

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-12.1 (FM 17-15) Tank Platoon
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5817: Establish a Perimeter Defense

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The purpose of the perimeter defense is to protect the force or hold key terrain when the force is not tied in with adjacent units. It is generally conducted in the same manner as a defense from a BP (hasty or deliberate) except that it orients on a full 360-degree sector, normally

through use of the coil formation. Common situations for the use of the perimeter defense include the following: defense of assembly areas, defense of specific installations, sites, or equipment (such as a TOC, downed aircraft, tactical bridge, or roadblock), defense of key terrain (such as a bridge, hilltop, pickup zone, or landing zone), when a unit has been isolated or bypassed by the enemy, as part of a larger force's perimeter defense; examples include the defense of lodgment areas, airfields, or assembly areas. The tank platoon will normally execute a perimeter defense while attached to company- or battalion-size dismounted infantry units. The platoon may also establish a perimeter defense when it is operating alone and requires 360-degree security, such as during screen missions or while occupying platoon hide positions.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/ FRAGO and supporting overlays to establish a perimeter defense. Enemy contact is expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the order, but there is insufficient time to conduct the steps of a deliberate occupation prior to enemy contact. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon establishes a perimeter defense in order to protect the force. The platoon orients on a full 360-degree sector and defends by the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander identifies location to establish perimeter defense or receives guidance from company commander for position as part of company/battalion perimeter.
2. When operating independently, the platoon uses the coil formation to establish a perimeter defense during extended halts or lulls in combat.
3. The lead vehicle, normally the platoon commander, will halt his vehicle in the direction of travel (12 o'clock) while the other vehicles position themselves to form a circular formation covering all suspected enemy avenues of approach.
4. The platoon commander establishes local security by emplacing OPs.
5. Identify location of sectors of fire, TRPs, preplanned targets, obstacles, adjacent units (if applicable) and enemy avenues of approach.
6. One section or the entire platoon orients on the most likely mounted avenues of approach.
7. A section or the entire platoon may occupy an assembly area within the perimeter of a company/battalion defense as a reserve or quick reaction force.
8. Missions of this force include the following: moving to BPs that block potential areas of enemy penetration, conducting counterattacks to repel or destroy an enemy penetration, and moving to BPs that add firepower to a portion of the defense.
9. To avoid disrupting other fighting positions, the platoon must carefully coordinate, reconnoiter, and conduct rehearsals on mounted movement routes to positions within the perimeter.
10. Tanks must never fire over the heads of unprotected personnel because the

concussion of the main gun as well as discarded sabot petals can endanger these troops.
11. Close coordination with dismounted infantry is critical; the tank platoon must know the location and routes of dismounted OPs and patrols to help prevent fratricide.
12. The platoon must rely on dismounted infantry to provide security against enemy infiltration of the perimeter as well as close-in protection from dismounted enemy attacks.
13. Platoon commander inspects each vehicles position within the perimeter to ensure maximum cover, concealment, observation, and fields of fire.
14. If part of a higher perimeter defense, the platoon commander conducts linkup with adjacent unit leaders to conduct coordination.
15. Platoon commander disseminates any changes to the perimeter defense resulting from coordination.
16. Platoon executes defensive mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5816 TANK-TAC-5815
TANK-TAC-5814

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1854 1812-TAC-2850

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5818: Conduct a Screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Company teams usually establish screen lines (for counterreconnaissance purposes) in front of a task force as part of a defense. Purposes of the screen include the following: provide early warning of enemy approach, provide real-time information, reaction time, and maneuver space to the protected force, impede and harass the enemy, facilitate counterreconnaissance operations, allowing the screening force, within its capability, to destroy enemy reconnaissance elements.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an operation order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a screen. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The initial screen line, lateral boundaries, and rear boundary or phase lines (PL) are established and provided by higher headquarters. Contact is possible. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance

with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the screen IAW the SOP, the order, and company commander's guidance. The platoon allows no enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The platoon maintains continuous surveillance, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO), provides early warning to the screened unit, maintains contact with the enemy, and reports any activity in the AO. The platoon maintains contact with the CO/TM and any security forces/platoons operating on its flanks. The platoon destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols, and harasses the enemy using available systems and support. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander coordinates with the protected force commander and disseminates intent and concept of operations to subordinate leaders.
2. Confirm the general trace of the screen and the time the operation will begin.
3. Confirm the area of responsibility (AOR) for the screen.
4. Conduct an analysis of the terrain to identify potential threat reconnaissance avenues of approach/infiltration routes.
5. Maintain the common operational picture (COP) throughout the operation to determine current and subsequent locations of the protected force.
6. Determine the distance between the screening force and the protected force.
7. During stationary screens, the tank platoon will normally occupy a hide position or a hasty defensive position in depth behind OPs.
8. OPs are provided by scout or mechanized infantry platoons.
9. When the OPs identify the enemy, the company commander issues FRAGOs for the tank platoon to conduct tactical movement and occupy a hasty defensive position or an attack by fire position.
10. The platoon also may conduct a hasty attack to destroy the enemy.
11. The tank platoon may occupy a hasty BP as part of the screen line, acquiring and killing the enemy forward of the position.
12. During the conduct of a stationary screen, the tank platoon may be required to break contact or conduct a withdrawal and then execute a passage of lines.
13. In a moving flank screen (platoons normally execute this as a follow and support operation, the tank platoon conducts tactical movement to the rear of scout platoons.
14. When the scouts identify enemy elements, the company commander issues a FRAGO for the tank platoon to occupy a hasty defensive position or attack by fire position or to conduct a hasty attack to destroy the enemy.
15. It is critical that the tank platoon commander considers OPSEC requirements: during screen missions, the platoon may be required to operate apart from other units.
16. It is critical that the tank platoon commander considers location and identification of friendly forces: the platoon commander should know all patrol routes and OP locations within the platoon's battle space; the platoon should maintain voice and digital (if available) communications

with the OPs.
17. It is critical that the tank platoon commander considers engagement criteria to reduce the potential for fratricide; engagement criteria should be as specific as possible when friendly units operate to the front and flanks of the tank platoon as it executes a screen mission.
18. The platoon displaces from screen line IAW company commander's order.
19. Defend a BP to assist disengagement of other platoon/elements if necessary.
20. Maintain communications with higher headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5805 TANK-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1865 1812-TAC-2862

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5819: Conduct a Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Linkup operations are conducted to join two forces and may occur in a variety of circumstances. They are most often conducted: to join two forces regardless of where they are on the battlefield, to join an attacking force with a force inserted into the enemy's rear, to complete the encirclement of an enemy force, or to assist the breakout or come to the relief of an encircled force.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and is ordered to linkup and conduct coordination with another unit. This can be an adjacent or moving unit while the platoon is stationary or a stationary unit while the platoon is on the move. Contact points are either given to the platoon commander as grid coordinates or depicted on the platoon's operational graphics (digital and/or hard copy). Control measures and tentative indirect fire targets are determined by the company commander or platoon commander. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts linkup with the other unit at the time and place specified in the OPORD/FRAGO, and completes all necessary coordination. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital

communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander analyzes the OPORD/FRAGO and performs troop-leading procedures.
2. Check and/or designate mission specific graphics provided by CO/TM OPORD control measures in digital communications overlays.
3. Verify call signs frequencies of other unit and adjust defaults in digital communications to correctly route digital message traffic.
4. Verify and/or designate visual recognition signals (far and near).
5. Verify and/or designate basic fire coordination measures in digital communications.
6. Verify the command relationship with the other units.
7. Verify command authority at contact point.
8. Platoon conducts linkup with an adjacent or moving unit while stationary if time permits.
9. Perform tactical movement to the designated contact point.
10. Evaluate suitability of designated contact point if face-to-face coordination is required.
11. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant verify that the contact point is a covered and concealed location that is easy to recognize; if the contact point is near a danger area or is otherwise unsuitable, the commander is notified and permission to change the location is requested.
12. Secure and occupy the contact point prior to the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO.
13. The platoon stops 50 to 100 meters short of the contact point and establishes overwatch; a 2-to-3 man team is used to clear and secure the contact point; if necessary, the platoon can request assistance from the other unit to secure the contact point and provide local security; the unit that first arrives at the contact point is responsible for its security (direct and/or indirect fire); however, units that have contact points within their AOs are responsible for their defense in the event of an enemy attack.
14. Exchange long-range (far) recognition signal with the other unit.
15. The platoon establishes digital communications and FM communications before the other unit enters the effective range of direct fire weapons; the platoon monitors the frequency of the other unit, and, as necessary, authenticates correctly and/or challenges the other unit using the SOI; the platoon informs the other unit of number, type, and orientation of vehicles at the contact point, and requests that the other unit identify number and type of vehicles, and direction from which it is traveling; the platoon confirms short-range (near) recognition signal (hand-and-arm, flags, VS-17, flashlight or pyrotechnics).
16. Linkup with the other unit.
17. The platoon exchanges short-range (near) recognition signal with the other unit and continues to monitor the other unit's frequency and observe digital communications SA to reduce the risk of fratricide.
18. Platoon conducts linkup with a stationary unit while on the move.
19. If both units are digital communications-equipped, there is no requirement to perform the steps leading up to and including the face-to-face meeting, unless specifically required by CO/TM
20. Information can be exchanged in digital communications, even when radio listening silence is imposed.
21. Perform tactical movement to the designated contact point.

22. Prior to movement, the platoon sergeant verifies digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles.
23. Exchange long-range (far) recognition signal with the stationary unit, if face-to-face coordination is required.
24. The platoon establishes digital communications and FM communications before entering the effective range of the stationary unit's direct fire weapons and, as necessary, authenticates correctly and/or responds to challenges IAW the SOI; the platoon informs the stationary unit of number and type of vehicles and direction from which the platoon is traveling, and requests the stationary unit identify number and type of vehicles, direction of weapons orientation and location of any dismounts; the platoon verifies that the contact point is secure and/or that additional security is needed at the contact point, and confirms short-range (near) recognition signals (hand-and-arm, flags, VS-17, flashlight, or pyrotechnics).
25. Linkup with stationary unit.
26. The platoon exchanges short-range (near) recognition signal with the stationary unit, completes tactical movement to the contact point, and, as necessary, assists stationary unit in securing contact point and maintaining local security.
27. Platoon coordinates with the other unit.
28. If both units are digital communications-equipped, there is no requirement to perform the steps leading up to and including the face-to-face meeting, unless specifically required to by CO/TM; information can be exchanged in digital communications, even when radio listening silence is imposed.
29. Coordinate control measures, including contact points and/or all labeled way points, checkpoints, OPs, BPs, TRP locations, and sectors of responsibility.
30. Coordinate friendly forces information, including unit designations and dispositions, friendly obstacles, mines, contaminated areas, CP locations, SOI information, and tactical plans and situations (routes, indirect fire data, location of flanks, OPs, and/or other patrols, sectors of fire).
31. Coordinate enemy information, including number and types of units (if known), specific locations (if known), obstacles, mines, contaminated areas, and suspected avenues of approach (mounted/dismounted).
32. Coordinate mission-specific information designated in OPORD/FRAGO or requested by the commander.
33. Determine time and place of next coordination.
34. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant keeps commander informed throughout the linkup.
35. Send updated SITREPs (voice/digital) as necessary during the linkup.
36. Report information obtained during coordination as previously specified by the commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
37. Report completion of the linkup/coordination.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1845	1812-TAC-2843

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force

4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5820: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The tank platoon participates in a passage of lines, in which one unit moves through the stationary positions of another, as part of a larger force. If it is part of the stationary force, the platoon occupies defensive positions and assists the passing unit. If it is part of a passing unit, the platoon executes tactical movement through the stationary unit. A passage may be forward or rearward, depending on whether the passing unit is moving toward (forward) or away from (rearward) an enemy unit or area of operations.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct either a forward or rearward a passage of lines. Contact is possible; enemy forces could include disruption, battle, support zone forces, or asymmetrical threat. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the passage of lines at the time and place specified in the OPORD or FRAGO with no compromise of security. The platoon completes the passage of lines as specified with no friendly casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon commander, if selected as the passing force's liaison officer, moves to the contact point to make coordination.
2. The passing and stationary force liaison elements identify and authenticate each other at the contact point by using recognition signals (day or night) based on the CEOI or unit SOP, prior to the exchange of information.
3. The passing and stationary force liaison elements secure the contact point by providing 360-degree security.
4. The stationary force's liaison officer provides critical information to include: identification of unit to support the passage; threat situation to the front; friendly situation and location of units; stationary unit's mission and battle plans; location of stationary unit's trains and fire support elements; locations of contact points, passage lanes, passage points, RP, traffic control points, and guides; locations of OPs and patrol routes; obstacle locations and types; combat support and combat service support to be provided and location of units; supporting direct and indirect fires available; NBC conditions and contaminated areas; CEOI

information and stationary unit's recognition signals (day and night); additional procedures for passage.

5. The passing force's liaison officer provides critical information to include: identification of the unit to pass; additional threat information; friendly situation and location of units; passing unit's mission and battle plans; order of march of passing unit; type and number of vehicles to pass; priority of traffic on the passage lane; time the passage will begin and end; requests for supporting direct and indirect fires to cover the passage and the initial movement forward; CEOI information and passing unit's recognition signals (day and night).
6. At the time designated in the OPORD, the passing force's liaison officer moves to the contact point and makes contact with the assisting (stationary) unit's liaison officer.
7. Exchange recognition signals per coordination.
8. Confirm that the stationary unit is prepared to support the passage and that the passage lane is open, and coordinate any changes to information previously exchanged.
9. Confirm that the passing unit is prepared to execute the passage, to include time of impending passage, number and types of vehicles to pass, and confirm the recognition signals.
10. On order or per the OPORD, the passing force exits the attack position (forward passage) or moves rearward to the passage lane and begins the passage.
11. Move directly to the contact point.
12. Display recognition signal on vehicles as per coordination.
13. Platoon commander contacts the liaison officer or guides and confirms number of vehicles in column.
14. Use traveling technique of movement and column formation to pass through the contact point.
15. Do not stop or block contact point.
16. Platoon commander reports arriving at the contact point to the company commander.
17. The platoon conducts movement along the passage lane.
18. Use traveling technique of movement and column formation.
19. Do not stop, block, or deviate from the lane.
20. Take directions from guides at all traffic control points.
21. Platoon commander reports passing of passage point, LD, RP, and additional graphic control measures along the route to the company commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5819	TANK-TAC-5821

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1862	1812-TAC-2859

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5821: Assist in a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The tank platoon provides assistance while it is in stationary defensive positions. This can occur after the platoon has consolidated on an objective or has occupied a BP. Coordinating instructions may be in the form of a company OPORD or a FRAGO issued over the radio. The platoon commander may or may not have coordinated directly with the passing unit. If the platoon is to provide guides to assist the passing unit, he selects the personnel and briefs them on the points of coordination. The guides are responsible for linking up with and guiding the passing unit through the passage lane and for closing obstacles as necessary. Control of direct fires is a critical role for the element that is assisting the passage of lines. In a forward passage, the stationary unit engages known enemy targets until the passing unit moves past the RFL.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is stationary and is in a hasty or deliberate defensive battle position as part of a company/team (CO/TM) position. The platoon receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to assist the passage of another force through the CO/TM position. Contact is possible. The passing force is either to the rear of the platoon and will conduct a forward passage of lines or is fighting a defensive battle forward of the platoon and must conduct a rearward passage through the platoon. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon assists the passing force so that no personnel or equipment losses are inflicted due to fratricide and no breaches of security occur.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander requests information about the passing unit from the company commander, if it is not covered in the OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Identify composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
3. Identify passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
4. Identify recognition signals and guide activities.
5. Identify location of attack position (forward passage) or assembly area (rearward passage) to be occupied by the passing force.
6. Identify CEOI information.
7. Identify moving unit arrival time at contact points.
8. Identify battle handover procedures (rearward passage only).
9. Identify threat situation.
10. Identify barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
11. The platoon deploys to assist the passage.
12. Establish contact points and/or passage points if so directed by higher headquarters.
13. Establish overwatch positions.
14. Reconnoiter and mark routes for passing unit.
15. Man obstacles the platoon is responsible to execute.

16. The platoon guides passing units.
17. Guide the passing unit along specified routes to the designated location.
18. Reports completion of the passage.
19. Close passage lanes through the obstacle.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-CMDC-5207 TANK-TAC-5820 TANK-TAC-5819

RELATED EVENTS:
1802-TAC-1862 1812-TAC-2859

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5822: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A relief in place occurs when one unit assumes the mission of another unit. It may be accomplished during either offensive or defensive operations, preferably during periods of limited visibility. There are two methods by which to conduct a relief in place: Simultaneous. All elements are relieved simultaneously. Sequential. The relief takes place one element at a time (by individual vehicle or by section). A relief in place requires detailed planning, coordination, and reconnaissance before the operation is executed and precise movement and effective communications once execution begins. OPSEC is critical throughout the operation.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. Coordination may or may not be completed. Enemy contact is not likely. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon performs the relief in place IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The platoon conducts linkup with the relieving or relieved unit and exchanges required information. The platoon completes the relief in place by the time specified in the OPORD and avoids exposing the units to the enemy detection. The platoon performs continuous observation of the sector of fire (defensive relief). The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander performs troop-leading procedures if the company commander has completed coordination.
2. Determine the time the relief in place is to begin and end, and conduct reconnaissance if time permits.
3. Determine method for conducting the relief in place.
4. Verify control measures.
5. Determine when responsibility will change.
6. Identify OPSEC considerations and deception plan.
7. Verify location of and transfer procedures for obstacles.
8. Determine contingency plans in case of enemy attack during the relief in place.
9. Determine responsibilities and requirements for transfer of supplies and equipment.
10. Platoon commander coordinates linkup with relieving/relieved unit if the commander has not completed coordination.
11. Move to the designated contact point.
12. Coordinate time that the responsibility for the BP/sector will pass to the relieving unit.
13. Coordinate time, method, and sequence of relief in place.
14. Coordinate procedures for use of guides.
15. The unit being relieved provides guides to each vehicle of the relieving platoon.
16. Coordinate routes and control measures into and out of positions.
17. Coordinate graphics depicting primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions.
18. Coordinate handover procedures for artillery and AD.
19. Fire support is normally provided by the relieved unit until the relieving units accepts responsibility for the BP.
20. Coordinate actions on contact.
21. Coordinate sketch cards and fire plans for all positions (hard copy and/or digital versions, as applicable).
22. Coordinate procedures for transfer of supplies and wire lines (if necessary).
23. Coordinate procedures for turnover of obstacles.
24. Exchange communications data (including digital link-up information).
25. Platoon prepares for the relief in place as the relieving unit.
26. Maintain OPSEC.
27. The platoon changes frequencies on all radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit and verifies digital communications message routing matrices have been correctly converted.
28. Units must verify that frequency change does not take place on channel one; digital links are established IAW OPORD or unit SOP; the platoon maintains radio listening silence, and noise, light, and litter discipline.
29. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieved unit.
30. Initiate movement.
31. The platoon maintains radio listening silence and moves to predetermined contact points (using covered and concealed routes and maintaining all-round security) to meet the guides from the relieved unit; platoon moves into hide positions and coordinates any final information; TCs report to the platoon commander when occupation is complete; platoon commander reports to the company commander that the platoon is prepared to perform the relief in place.
32. Occupy preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief in

place and determine the method of relief.
33. Platoon commander directs platoon to prepare for relief in place as the relieved unit, and exchanges required information with the relieving platoon commander.
34. Direct platoon to maintain communications as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD.
35. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieving unit.
36. Update and/or prepare necessary range cards, sector sketches, minefield records, and prestock supplies for transfer to the relieving unit.
37. Meet relieving platoon commander at the prescribed contact point.
38. Exchange information on the enemy situation.
39. Provide sketch cards and platoon fire plans (hard copy or digital versions, as applicable).
40. Transfer obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
41. Reconnoiter positions.
42. Report to the company commander that preparations for the relief in place are complete, using digital communications or FM communications.
43. Platoon performs the relief in place as the relieving unit.
44. Meet the relieved unit at the designated contact points.
45. Follow guides to positions in the determined sequence of relief.
46. Transfer equipment and supplies (as required).
47. Assume relieved unit's mission when entire platoon is in position.
48. Report completion of the relief in place to the company commander, using digital or FM communications.
49. Platoon performs the relief in place as the relieved unit.
50. Send guides to designated contact points.
51. Guide relieving units to positions in the determined sequence of relief.
52. Transfer equipment and supplies as necessary.
53. Transfer responsibility for mission when entire relieving unit is in position.
54. Report completion of relief in place to the company commander, using digital or FM communications
55. Move to a predetermined rally point to account for vehicles/personnel.
56. Move to designated assembly area.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1859	1812-TAC-2856

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5823: Conduct a Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Obstacle breaching entails the employment of a combination of tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) and equipment to project combat power to the far side of an obstacle. The platoon commander must understand the challenges presented by various types of obstacles and the capabilities and limitations of the assets the platoon and its parent unit can employ to defeat them.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting offensive operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The CO/TM encounters an obstacle that must be breached to complete the mission. The platoon is designated as the breach force with other CO/TM elements assigned as the support and assault forces. Engineer support is not available. The obstacle is under enemy observation and within range of enemy fire. Reconnaissance of the obstacle is completed and breach site(s) selected. The platoon is equipped with one mine plow. Smoke is employed to obscure enemy observation of the obstacle. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves along covered and concealed routes to the breach site and clears, proofs, and marks lanes through the obstacle. The platoon sustains no more than 50 percent casualties. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon moves to the designated breach site.
2. Move along covered and concealed routes using appropriate technique of movement and formation based on the enemy situation.
3. Occupy overwatch/support by fire position.
4. Platoon breaches the obstacle.
5. Lower the plow to the depth prescribed in the OPORD.
6. Traverse the main gun of plow tank to the side of the hull (main gun can still be fired if situation dictates).
7. Maintain a straight course through the minefield maintaining a speed of 12-16 mph (8-10 mph).
8. Continue to plow at least 10 meters beyond the edge of the minefield.
9. Move to the far side of obstacle and establish positions to provide overwatch/SBF for the remaining platoon vehicles and assault force.
10. Notify platoon commander/platoon sergeant that the lane has been cleared.
11. Platoon proofs and marks the lane.
12. Use mine roller (if available) to proof the lane.
13. Mark the lane using available means (engineer stakes or tape, chem lights, smoke, pyrotechnics, or guides).
14. Platoon moves remaining vehicles to the far side of the obstacle to provide security for the assault force.
15. Move rapidly through the cleared lane.
16. Join breaching and proofing vehicles in overwatch/SBF positions on the far side of the obstacle.
17. Scan designated platoon sector.
18. Platoon commander reports completion of the breach to the company commander.
19. Report that the obstacle has been breached and the far side secured.

20. Report the ten-digit grid coordinates of the entrance and exit for each lane.
21. Report method(s) used to mark the lane.
22. Platoon supports remainder of the breaching operation.
23. Execute support by fire against known/suspected enemy positions to support movement of the assault force.
24. Provide continuously updated reports to the assault force and/or company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5809	TANK-TAC-5827
TANK-TAC-5811		

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-CBTS-2426	1812-CBTS-2425	1812-CBTS-2421
1812-CBTS-2420	1812-CBTS-2419	1812-CBTS-2418
1802-CBTS-1404	1802-CBTS-1410	1802-CBTS-1409
1802-CBTS-1408	1802-CBTS-1407	1802-CBTS-1406
1802-CBTS-1405	1812-CBTS-2417	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
5. FM 5-101 Mobility
6. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
11. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
13. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5824: Conduct a Delay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A delay operation is a continuous series of defensive actions over successive positions in depth. The purpose is to trade the enemy space for time while retaining freedom of action. Units involved in a delay maximize the use of terrain and obstacles, maintaining contact with the enemy but avoiding decisive engagement. In some instances, local counterattacks are used to assist units during disengagement or to take advantage of battlefield opportunities. The tank platoon conducts the delay as part of a company team. In some cases, it will occupy either a hasty or deliberate BP; it will then disengage and occupy successive BPs in depth as part of the delaying force. The platoon may also be required to conduct local counterattacks or to support the movement of other platoons during the delay. The considerations involved in planning and executing a delay at platoon level are the same as for offensive operations and defensive operations.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting an operation as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Enemy forces have advanced in sufficient force to meet disengagement criteria IAW the OPORD/FRAGO, or the company commander has ordered displacement to a subsequent or alternate position due to a change of mission. The platoon's movement may or may not be overwatched. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon executes the delay and conducts displacement and hasty occupation of the subsequent/alternate BP. The platoon defends or provides overwatch for the remainder of the CO/TM IAW the commander's intent. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander orders platoon to displace.
2. Direct the platoon sergeant to verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications or get status from TCs in all vehicles.
3. Designate an overwatch element if the displacement is not covered.
4. If in a defensive position initiate final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.
5. Use FM voice command or visual signals to order the platoon sergeant to begin displacement.
6. Platoon displaces while overwatched by another element.
7. Back down into hide positions, keep weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact, and turn toward the subsequent/alternate BP.
8. Use on-board smoke salvos IAW METT-TC.
9. Perform tactical movement to the subsequent/alternate BP, using covered and concealed routes and keep all weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact.
10. Enter subsequent/alternate BP from the rear or flank.
11. If the platoon displaces not overwatched by another element: use overwatch section to observe and/or engage the enemy as necessary; back maneuver section down into a hide position, and keep weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact, and begin movement toward the subsequent/alternate BP; back overwatch section down into a hide position once the maneuver section is under way, keep weapons oriented in the direction of the last enemy contact, and begin movement toward the subsequent/alternate BP; perform tactical movement on covered and concealed routes to the subsequent/alternate BP; use on-board smoke salvos IAW METT-TC; enter subsequent/alternate BP from the flank or rear.
12. Platoon performs a hasty occupation of the subsequent/alternate BP
13. As time permits, the platoon performs additional steps of a deliberate occupation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804 TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1856 1812-TAC-2852

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5825: Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The company commander establishes disengagement criteria and develops the disengagement plan to support the company scheme of maneuver. Disengagement criteria are primarily based on a specified number and type of enemy vehicles reaching a specified location (normally called the break point) to trigger displacement, in order to break contact with the enemy and move to a point where the enemy can neither observe nor engage the unit by direct fire. A withdrawal is a retrograde operation to free a force in contact with the enemy so it can execute a new mission. Conducting a withdrawal at platoon level is identical to disengagement. The withdrawal may be conducted under pressure (with direct or indirect fire enemy contact) or with no pressure.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and is in contact with enemy elements. The company commander orders the platoon to disengage/withdrawal, and specifies a route for the disengagement/withdrawal and a location to which the platoon is to move. Another element may or may not be available to cover platoon movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon breaks contact with the enemy and moves to the designated point where neither the enemy nor the platoon can engage the other with direct fire. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon commander issues a FRAGO.
2. Use digital communications or FM communications.
3. Designate the location to which the platoon will move.
4. Designate the route to the new location (using GPS or way points as applicable).
5. Designate the order of march.
6. Platoon disengages/withdrawals from enemy contact with another platoon providing overwatch.
7. Use digital communications SA to assist with control between units and disengage force.
8. Perform tactical movement to the predesignated location.

9. Use appropriate formation and movement technique.
10. Maintain weapons orientation toward the enemy and engage enemy elements, as necessary.
11. Uses on-board smoke salvos as appropriate, to screen movement.
12. Occupy the new position and establish local security.
13. Platoon disengages/withdrawals from enemy contact without overwatch support.
14. Designate one section to lead the movement (maneuver section) and the other to provide overwatch (overwatch section).
15. Begin disengagement/withdrawal with overwatch section remaining in place and provide direct/indirect fires (including smoke) to suppress, destroy, and/or screen the enemy.
16. Perform tactical movement to the designated location, with the maneuver section keeping weapons oriented toward the enemy and engaging enemy forces, as necessary.
17. The maneuver section smoke salvos, as appropriate.
18. Disengage/withdrawal the overwatch section at the appropriate time.
19. Overwatch section calls for final indirect fires as appropriate, begins tactical movement toward designated location, and maintains weapons orientation toward the enemy, engaging as necessary; uses on-board smoke generators and smoke grenades as needed.
20. Occupy the new position and establish local security.
21. Platoon commander completes disengagement/withdrawal actions.
22. Send a report of completion of disengagement to the commander using digital communications or FM communications.
23. Direct reorganization activities as required to prepare platoon for future operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5804	TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1857	1812-TAC-2853

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5826: Conduct a Displacement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Displacement may become necessary in several types of situations. For example, a numerically superior enemy may force the platoon to displace to a subsequent BP. In another situation, a penetration or enemy advance on a secondary avenue of approach may require the platoon or section to occupy supplementary BPs or fighting positions. Conducting a withdrawal

at platoon level is identical to disengagement. The purpose of this retrograde operation is to free a force in contact with the enemy so it can execute a new mission. The withdrawal may be conducted under pressure (with direct or indirect fire enemy contact) or with no pressure.

CONDITION: The tank platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The platoon is being engaged by a numerically superior enemy force and is forced to conduct a displacement. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the displacement in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit receives guidance form higher headquarters whether the platoon will be assisted in the displacement/withdrawal. The platoon executes the displacement and moves all equipment and personnel to the designated position. All supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated are destroyed and all EPWs and casualties are evacuated.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander establishes disengagement criteria and develops the disengagement plan to support the company scheme of maneuver.
2. Disengagement criteria are primarily based on a specified number and type of enemy vehicles reaching a specified location (normally called the break point) to trigger displacement.
3. Other considerations, such as ammunition supplies and friendly combat power, also influence the decision to displace.
4. The platoon commander chooses between two methods of displacement depending on whether or not the move is conducted with overwatch (and cover) by an adjacent platoon.
5. Displacement with cover: if the displacement is covered, the entire platoon usually displaces as a whole.
6. Employ smoke grenades and on-board smoke generators to screen the displacement.
7. Caution: on-board smoke (VEESS) will be used only when the vehicle is burning diesel fuel, use of VEESS when burning any other type of fuel will cause a fire hazard.
8. The platoon commander issues instructions or uses a prearranged signal to initiate movement.
9. The platoon simultaneously backs down to hide positions, keeping front hulls toward the enemy until adequate cover protects each tank.
10. Individual tanks orient weapon systems toward the enemy as they move to the subsequent or supplementary positions along previously identified and reconnoitered routes.
11. Displacement with cover from another element (entire platoon moves at once).
12. Displacement without cover: if the displacement is not covered by another element, the platoon commander designates one section to overwatch the displacement of the other section; the overwatch section is responsible for providing suppressive fires covering the entire platoon sector of fire; it also initiates artillery calls for fire, mixing smoke with tank-killing munitions, to help cover the displacement.

13. When overwatch is no longer necessary to cover the displacing section's movement, the overwatch section may request one last artillery call for fire in front of its own position, then displace to the subsequent BP.
14. In some instances, the platoon may have to use bounding overwatch to the rear during tactical movement to the subsequent or supplementary position.
15. This may become necessary when such factors as the distance to the new position, the enemy's rate of advance, and terrain considerations (fields of fire) do not allow the original overwatch section to displace without the benefit of an overwatch of its own.
16. Completion of displacement.
17. The displacement is complete when the platoon has occupied the subsequent BP and all vehicles are prepared to continue the defense.
18. If the platoon commander and TCs were able to reconnoiter and rehearse the disengagement and occupation, the occupation should go quickly.
19. If reconnaissance and rehearsals were not possible, the platoon commander must conduct the steps of a hasty occupation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-TAC-5825	TANK-CMDC-5207

RELATED EVENTS:

1812-TAC-2878	1812-TAC-2877	1802-TAC-1847
1802-TAC-1849	1802-TAC-1848	1812-TAC-2845

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK-TAC-5827: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A tactical road march is a rapid movement used to relocate units within a combat zone in order to prepare for combat operations. Although contact with enemy ground forces is not anticipated, security against air attack, enemy Special Forces, and sympathizers is maintained and the unit is prepared to take immediate action against an enemy threat.

CONDITION: The tank platoon has received an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to conduct a tactical road march as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The order specifies the arrival time at the start point (SP) as well as the march speed, interval, and order of march. All planning and preparations are complete, including reconnaissance to determine the time-distance factor to the SP. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves through the start point (SP), checkpoints, and release point (RP) at times specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon moves IAW OPORD/FRAGO and completes movement to the designated location. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon prepares for road march: perform PMCS, resupply (water, rations, ammunition), inspect personnel, and make a communications check and report REDCON, using digital communications or FM communications.
2. Platoon commander initiates road march and controls platoon movement toward the SP.
3. Direct platoon to begin movement using designated formation, movement technique, vehicle interval, and speed.
4. Use visual signals, FM communications, or digital communications to communicate with platoon.
5. Platoon commander positions himself where he can best control the movement of the platoon.
6. Platoon performs road march.
7. Cross the SP at the designated time, using the proper formation, movement technique, interval, and speed as prescribed in the OPORD/FRAGO.
8. Maintain march speed and reach checkpoints at times specified in the order.
9. Report control measures IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
10. Maintain proper weapons orientation to provide all around security throughout the road march.
11. Each vehicle designates an air guard.
12. Maintain all around observation, including aerial observation.
13. Verify that vehicles which drop out of the march formation rejoin the formation at the rear or continue along the route of march with follow on unit, or stand by for maintenance or recovery.
14. Platoon takes actions at scheduled halts.
15. Execute a herringbone formation.
16. Establish security.
17. Post guides to direct traffic as necessary.
18. Perform during-operation PMCS.
19. Refuel, if scheduled.
20. Verify GPS is tracking properly.
21. Report status to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
22. Platoon takes actions at unscheduled halts.
23. Clear the route of march and execute a herringbone or coil formation.
24. Establish local security (manning caliber .50 machine guns, radios, and OPs as necessary).
25. Determine the cause of the halt.
26. Report unscheduled halt to the commander, using digital communications or FM communications, providing as much information as possible.
27. Eliminate the cause of the halt, if possible.
28. Continue the march when directed by the commander, or as soon as possible.
29. Platoon takes actions when a vehicle becomes disabled.
30. Move the disabled vehicle off the road, if possible, so it does not block traffic, and makes maintenance and recovery assessment.
31. Post guides to direct traffic around vehicle, if necessary.

32. Crew establishes local security and radio watch.
33. Report status of disabled vehicle to the commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
34. Perform repairs within capability and rejoin the rear of the formation.
35. Request assistance if unable to repair the vehicle, assists maintenance personnel, and rejoin the rear of the formation once the vehicle is repaired.
36. Platoon arrives and clears the RP.
37. Avoid stopping or blocking traffic at the RP.
38. Report arrival at and clearance of the RP to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Follow guides and moves to the designated area.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TANK-CMDC-5207	TANK-TAC-5805	TANK-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:

1802-TAC-1816	1812-TAC-2815

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ANTI-TANK TOW PLATOON

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	6001	6-2
EVENT CODING	6002	6-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	6003	6-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	6004	6-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA	6005	6-4
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	6006	6-5

CHAPTER 6

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ANTI-TANK TOW PLATOON

6001. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level Anti-Tank TOW unit events (5000 Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to the platoon and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Additionally, unit training managers should reference NAVMC DIR 3500.87 (Infantry Training and Readiness Manual) in order to identify all individual events specific to the 0352 occupational specialty as referenced in this manual.

6002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TOW" indicating that the event is for the Anti-Tank TOW unit organic to the Tank Battalion in the Infantry Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

CMDC - Command and Control
CSS - Combat Service Support
TAC - Tactical Operations
CBTS - Combat Support
OTH - Other Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

6003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6004. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, and participates in operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Conducts a passage of lines.

4. Conducts a relief in place.

5. Conducts overwatch and support another unit by fire.

6. Participates and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

7. Participates in and conducts operations in urban environments.

8. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with dismounted, mechanized and motorized forces.

9. Prepares for and conducts platoon level offensive, defensive, and security operations.

10. Defends against air attack.

11. Processes enemy prisoners of war.

12. Executes platoon formations.

13. Executes platoon fire and movement.

14. Conducts route reconnaissance and participates in zone reconnaissance operations.

15. Prepares for, plans, and executes platoon level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, defend, screen, ambush, disengage, linkup, and consolidate.

16. Participates in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW).

6005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TOW-CMDC-5201		Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	6-5
TOW-CMDC-5202		Conduct Risk Management	6-8
TOW-CMDC-5203		Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	6-10
TOW-CMDC-5204		Conduct a Rehearsal	6-12
TOW-CMDC-5205		Establish an Observation Post	6-14
TOW-CBTS-5401		Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack	6-16
TOW-CBTS-5402		React to a Chemical/Biological Attack	6-17
TOW-CBTS-5403		Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	6-19
TOW-CBTS-5404		React to a Nuclear Attack	6-20
TOW-CBTS-5405		Conduct Operational Decontamination	6-21
TOW-CBTS-5406		React to Enemy Indirect Fire	6-22
TOW-CBTS-5407		Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack	6-23
TOW-CBTS-5408		React to Enemy Air Attack	6-24
TOW-CSS-5501		Conduct Resupply Operations	6-26
TOW-CSS-5502		Prepare and Evacuate Casualties	6-28
TOW-CSS-5503		Process Enemy Prisoners of War	6-29
TOW-OTH-5701		Conduct Convoy Security	6-31
TOW-TAC-5801		Occupy an Assembly Area	6-33
TOW-TAC-5802		Conduct Consolidation	6-36
TOW-TAC-5803		Conduct Reorganization	6-37
TOW-TAC-5804		Conduct Tactical Movement	6-38
TOW-TAC-5805		Follow and Support	6-43
TOW-TAC-5806		Conduct an Attack by Fire	6-44
TOW-TAC-5807		Conduct an Anti-Armor Ambush	6-46
TOW-TAC-5808		Conduct an Overwatch/Support by Fire	6-47
TOW-TAC-5809		Conduct a Bypass	6-49
TOW-TAC-5810		Conduct an Assault	6-50
TOW-TAC-5811		Conduct Operations in an Urban Area	6-52
TOW-TAC-5812		Conduct a Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position	6-54
TOW-TAC-5813		Defend a Battle Position	6-57
TOW-TAC-5814		Conduct a Linkup	6-59
TOW-TAC-5815		Conduct a Passage of Lines	6-62
TOW-TAC-5816		Conduct a Relief in Place	6-63
TOW-TAC-5817		Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy	6-65
TOW-TAC-5818		Conduct a Tactical Road March	6-67

6006. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

TOW-CMDC-5201: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Troop-leading is a dynamic process that begins when the platoon receives a new mission or is notified by warning order that a new mission is imminent. Most tactical decisions are made by the company commander, who then announces them in the form of orders that include his intent and concept of the operation. Based on these orders, the platoon commander uses troop-leading procedures to organize his time during planning and preparation and to translate the operation into instructions his Marines can understand. He can then lead the platoon more effectively in the execution of the mission.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO, or WARNO from the company commander or S-3 officer while preparing for tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) or battalion task force. The order specifies the time of movement and describes the enemy situation. The platoon has conducted linkup with any attachments. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves by the time specified in the order with operational weapons, equipment, and basic load of supplies as specified by the order and/or platoon commander. The platoon commander verifies all personnel can explain the higher's mission, commander's intent, the platoon's mission, and their specific tasks and duties to support the mission. The platoon commander briefs and inspects all attachments. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant receive and analyze the mission.
2. Obtain clarification on all aspects of the mission from the commander.
3. Coordinate with higher command, adjacent units, and CS elements (as necessary), using digital or FM communications.
4. Disseminate all pertinent information as quickly as possible, using digital or FM communications.
5. Perform initial METT-TC analysis, focusing on mission and time requirements.
6. Develop reverse planning schedule to accomplish all tasks.
7. Platoon commander uses 1/3 of available time for planning, to include issuing the OPORD; allocate the remaining 2/3 to the squad leaders to plan and prepare for the upcoming mission.
8. Platoon commander issues the WARNO, using digital communications or FM communications.
9. The platoon commander issues the initial WARNO as soon as possible after receiving the mission so squad leaders can start their planning and preparation; issue subsequent WARNOs as more information becomes available or as the situation changes.
10. Provide task organization of the platoon; give the situation; provide

operational graphics; give the time and nature of the operation; give the earliest time of movement; give the time and place the OPORD will be issued; delegate/assign preparatory tasks to the platoon sergeant, section leaders, and squad leaders.

11. Tasks include but not limited to graphics production, development of terrain model, coordination requirements, CSS requirements, PCIs, and rehearsals.
12. Platoon commander makes a tentative plan, when the commander's OPORD specifies the platoon plan.
13. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon commander throughout METT-TC analysis and development of the plan; the scope of the platoon commander's activities in this troop-leading step is directly affected by the amount of detail and instruction in the commander's OPORD; the OPORD normally will specify the platoon plan and maneuver requirements; the platoon commander is responsible for analyzing higher command's scheme of maneuver and adapting them to the platoon level; the platoon commander must be prepared to develop his own plan with a minimum of information and direction from the commander; this involves a detailed METT-TC analysis and development of platoon tasks and COAs.
14. Review the platoon's role in the scheme of maneuver in relation to the factors of METT-TC.
15. Identify critical METT-TC considerations that affect the platoon plan (these considerations may or may not have been addressed in the OPORD).
16. Identify deficiencies and/or issues in the plan and report them to the CO/TM commander or S-3 officer.
17. Adjust reverse planning schedule as required.
18. Platoon commander makes a tentative plan when the commander's OPORD does not provide a detailed platoon plan.
19. Perform mission analysis: the platoon commander identifies the mission and the intent of the commander two levels up, and specified, implied, and essential tasks.
20. Perform enemy analysis: the platoon commander identifies current and/or probable enemy locations, composition and capabilities, and most probable COA).
21. Perform terrain and weather analysis, including visibility for missile gunners.
22. Perform terrain and weather analysis: the platoon commander identifies locations of all existing and reinforcing obstacles, and determines how they will affect maneuver and how the platoon can use them to its advantage; most likely locations for enemy emplaced obstacles and how the platoon can bypass or breach them; most advantageous avenues of approach for both the enemy and the platoon; key terrain and how it can be used by the platoon to support the mission; positions from which the enemy can observe and engage the platoon; positions from which the platoon can effectively observe and engage the enemy; routes and natural firing positions that offer cover and concealment; effects of current and expected weather on smoke or NBC operations; effects of recent weather on the AO; and effects of weather and light conditions on future operations.
23. Perform troop analysis: the platoon commander identifies the platoon's supply status; present condition of vehicles, launchers, equipment, and personnel; present state of training and morale; amount of sleep personnel have had, or will be able to get prior to the mission; and attachments the platoon has and/or needs to accomplish the mission.
24. Perform the time analysis: the platoon commander identifies movement times and other milestones specified in the order, including likely times

the enemy may conduct operations; effects of the weather and NBC operations on movement times; priorities of work the platoon can accomplish in the time available prior to the start of the mission; and a revised timeline that will enable the platoon to accomplish all necessary tasks; the platoon commander uses backward planning to refine tentative timeline.

25. Incorporate products developed in the IPB process into the METT-TC analysis.
26. Develop one or more COAs that address all specified, implied, and essential tasks, using results of the METT-TC analysis and IPB process.
27. Identify reconnaissance requirements.
28. Identify other coordination requirements.
29. Evaluate advantages and disadvantages of each COA and make a tentative selection of the most favorable COA.
30. Adjust reverse planning schedule as required to incorporate the selected COA.
31. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant initiate movement.
32. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles prior to movement.
33. Direct platoon to assume the appropriate REDCON level.
34. Dispatch quartering party, as necessary.
35. Direct platoon to begin priorities of work.
36. Designate a leader to perform a time-distance check of the route to the SP, as necessary.
37. Position the platoon in an advantageous location to prepare for the upcoming mission.
38. Perform ground or map reconnaissance.
39. Confirm the initial march route to the LD, SP, or initial positions, and check some of the area beyond the LD.
40. Information should be used to verify, and if necessary, to update maps and overlays to verify correctness.
41. Adjust the tentative plan based on the reconnaissance.
42. Platoon commander completes the plan.
43. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon commander through out the process of finalizing and updating the plan.
44. Select the best available COA based on METT-TC analysis and reconnaissance.
45. Complete the details of how the platoon will accomplish each task.
46. Annotate overlays to further define his area of responsibility and to aid in command and control of the platoon, as necessary.
47. Integrate the fire support plan into platoon operations to support the scheme of maneuver.
48. Develop a communication plan.
49. All vehicle commanders should verify communications are up unless radio silence is ordered.
50. Integrate CS and CSS elements into the plan.
51. Continue to update the plan and verify plan complies with S-3's original OPORD/FRAGO based on information from the S-3 or S-2 and subsequent reconnaissance.
52. Platoon commander issues the order.
53. Use the five-paragraph OPORD format.
54. Distribute the order and supervise squad leaders and section leaders issuing their own orders.
55. Direct platoon sergeant to verify that squad leader have posted overlays on their maps and that all overlays match the platoon commander's overlay.

56. Verify squad leaders understand the enemy and friendly situations as well as all tasks for which they are responsible.
57. Use confirmation briefing to verify section leaders understand the order.
58. If time permits, the platoon commander should lead the subordinate leaders in a walk-through rehearsal using a sand table or realistic terrain model.
59. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/squad leaders supervise and refine platoon preparations.
60. Brief squads on the platoon mission based on the platoon commander's OPORD.
61. Perform back-briefs and rehearsals.
62. Direct and supervise resupply operations, using FM and/or digital communications.
63. Supervise precombat checks.
64. Perform precombat inspections (PCI): the platoon sergeant identifies key inspection areas/items (based on METT-TC) and develop PCI plan; platoon commander or platoon sergeant assigns area of responsibilities for the PCI and determines time line for PCI requirements; the platoon commander/sergeant or designated representatives inspect required areas/items to verify they are present, functional, clean, and/or complete; the platoon commander tests individual knowledge of the mission.
65. Continue to supervise and refine throughout execution of the operation.

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CMDC-5202: Conduct Risk Management

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The primary objective of risk management is to help units protect their combat power through accident prevention, enabling them to win the battle quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. The TOW platoon commander, his NCOs, and all other Marines must know how to use risk management, coupled with fratricide reduction measures, to ensure that the mission is executed in the safest possible environment within mission constraints.

CONDITION: The TOW Platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All

necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. Fratricide prevention is addressed. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards.
3. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, and or ROE; identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks; integrate safety into every phase of planning process; identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards; conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
4. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
5. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions; identify unwarranted risks; compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives; calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records; describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental) and the following categories.
6. Compute overall risk factor.
7. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.
8. Include failures in direct fire control plan, land navigation failures, failures in combat identification, inadequate control measures, failures in reporting and communications, weapons errors, and battlefield hazards.
9. Platoon commander, platoon sergeant, and squad leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
10. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk.
11. Develop procedures that reduce risk.
12. Provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation.
13. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.
14. Marines implement risk control procedures.
15. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations.
16. Correct unsafe acts on the spot.
17. Report all risk and safety violations to S-3 officer or HQSVC company commander.
18. Platoon commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.
19. Enforce standards and controls.
20. Evaluate effectiveness of controls and adjust and or update as necessary.

21. Comply with orders, SOP, commander's guidance, ROE and ROI.

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

TOW-CMDC-5203: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The maintenance of operations security (OPSEC) is a process of identifying critical information and subsequently analyzing friendly actions attendant to military operations and other activities to: identify those actions that are observed by adversary intelligence systems; determine indicators hostile intelligence systems might obtain that are interpreted or pieced together to derive critical information in time to be useful to adversaries; and select and execute measures that eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level the vulnerabilities of friendly actions to adversary exploitation. All measures taken to maintain security and achieve tactical surprise. It includes countersurveillance, physical security, signal security, and information security. It also involves the identification and elimination or control of indicators that are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. OPSEC is a component of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) are operational and information is being passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs OPSEC measures in accordance with the standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and eliminates or controls indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The unit practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications discipline to deny friendly information to enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive

noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.

2. Identify indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.
3. Develop a deception plan when planning missions.
4. Platoon prepares for OPSEC; brief subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success; conduct extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
5. Unit executes the OPSEC plan.
6. Enforce measures that protects friendly information: prohibit fraternization with local civilians; make sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle; conduct inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials; ensure all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas.
7. Man and perform surveillance from observation posts (OPs).
8. Conduct counter-reconnaissance patrols if possible.
9. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.
10. Conduct stand-to procedures.
11. Establish local security.
12. Establish specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
13. Use camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions: cover all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick; use terrain and vegetation for concealment.
14. Avoid footpaths, trails, and roads where possible.
15. Erase tracks leading into positions.
16. Control movement.
17. Use the proper movement formation and movement technique: move as fast as the situation permits and along covered and concealed routes.
18. Enforce radio discipline.
19. Enforce the use of proper radio procedures.
20. Ensure subordinate elements: change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and SOP; use varied transmission schedules and lengths; use established formats to expedite transmissions; use encoded messages or use secure voice; use brevity codes when possible; use the lowest power settings possible; avoid transmission patterns; use and maintain radio silence as directed.
21. Ensure subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected: continue to operate, disconnect the antenna, switch to the highest power, relocate the radio, use directional antennas, turn the squelch off, use messenger and wire whenever possible, and use the radio in the quiet/message mode.
22. Enforce litter discipline: collect and back-haul trash during logistics runs during stationary periods and carry trash until it can be disposed of securely.
23. Enforce light discipline: ensure subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map; ensure all flashlights have filters; ensure subordinate elements remove or tape personal items that may reflect light; ensure subordinate elements prohibit use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke and or fire may be observed by the enemy; ensure subordinate elements use only passive night observation equipment if possible.
24. Enforce noise discipline: identify shortcomings in noise discipline during inspections; ensure subordinate elements tape down or remove items

that make noise; ensure subordinate elements use normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible; ensure subordinate elements prohibit talking except as required to conduct or plan operations; ensure subordinate elements use hand and arm signals to the fullest extent possible during daylight hours or with night vision devices.

25. Enforce information assurance.
26. Unit leaders assess OPSEC measures.
27. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
28. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
29. Direct adjustments as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems

TOW-CMDC-5204: Conduct a Rehearsal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A rehearsal is a practice session conducted to prepare units for an upcoming operation or event. The platoon commander should never underestimate the value of a rehearsal. They are his most valuable tools in preparing the platoon for the upcoming operation. Effective rehearsals require crewmen to perform required tasks, ideally under conditions that are as close as possible to those expected for the actual operation. Participants maneuver their actual vehicles or use vehicle models or simulations while interactively verbalizing their elements' actions. The primary types of rehearsals available to the tank platoon are the following: confirmation brief, backbrief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal, and battle drill or SOP. The techniques of rehearsal listed in descending order of preparation time and resources are the following: full dress rehearsal, reduced force rehearsal, terrain model rehearsal, sketch map rehearsal, map rehearsal, and radio/digital rehearsal.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is preparing for a mission. Mission planning and coordination is accomplished. The unit operations order (OPORD) is developed and briefed. The platoon commander directs the unit to conduct a rehearsal. All section leaders, squad leaders, and operational control (OPCON) or attached leaders are present. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations

of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon plans, prepares, and executes the rehearsal in accordance with the appropriate reference, standard operating procedures (SOP), and commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key and or critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate leaders and attachments to execute their mission. The platoon commander develops a rehearsal script. The platoon commander identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed. The platoon commander coordinates and allocates time for the key events requiring rehearsal. The platoon commander briefs rehearsal participants and directs adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The platoon commander reinforces the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander gains and or maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.
3. Select rehearsal criteria.
4. Select one of the following rehearsal techniques: full dress, reduced force, terrain model, sketch map, map, or radio/digital.
5. Select one of the following rehearsal types: confirmation brief, backbrief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal, and battle drill or standing operating procedures (SOP) rehearsal.
6. Select place of rehearsal, attendees, and enemy course of action (COA) to be portrayed during the rehearsal.
7. Develop a rehearsal script that includes the following: an agenda, a response sequence, an actions checklist, and a sequence of events.
8. Perform the following tasks: ensure rehearsal time and location are published in the unit operations order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO); complete any rehearsals with the staff; determine rehearsal products.
9. Platoon commander prepares for rehearsal: identify and prioritize key events to be rehearsed, allocate time, ensure completeness of task organization, ensure readiness of personnel and material, and ensure unit level of preparation for the assigned mission.
10. Platoon sergeant prepares for rehearsal: coordinate and allocate time for the key events requiring rehearsal, establish rehearsal time limits according to the platoon commander's guidance and factors of METT-TC, verify rehearsal site preparation, and determine the method for controlling the rehearsal and ensuring its logical flow.
11. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal: complete their planning process, identify issues derived from the unit order, and conduct personal preparation similar to that of the unit commander.
12. Platoon/leaders move to rehearsal site.
13. Platoon/leaders executes rehearsal.
14. Platoon commander briefs participants: orient participants to the training aid and the terrain, define the standard, visualize and synchronize the concept of operations, focus on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy, and address any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur.
15. Direct the rehearsal: conduct a formal roll call and ensure that necessary equipment is on hand; validate task organization for the

mission; rehearse synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units; synchronize the timing and contribution of each operating system; use the OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix to accomplish disciplined leader movements, enforce brevity, ensure completeness; keep the rehearsal within established time constraints; ensure selected events receive appropriate attention; ensure absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.

16. Direct the rehearsal: conduct a formal roll call and ensure that necessary equipment is on hand; validate task organization for the mission; rehearse synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units; synchronize the timing and contribution of each operating system; use the OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix to accomplish disciplined leader movements, enforce brevity, ensure completeness; keep the rehearsal within established time constraints; ensure selected events receive appropriate attention; ensure absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.
17. Assist the commander in the fight forward: portray his actions during the fight; ensure compliance with the plan.
18. Base execution actions on the enemy COA the commander has selected during the planning process: portray best assessment of the enemy COA; communicate the enemy commander's presumed concept of operation, desired effects, and intended end state.
19. Use an established format: articulate their unit's actions and responsibilities effectively; record changes on their copies of the graphics or OPORD.
20. Unit leaders assess the rehearsal.
21. Monitor continuously the situation and progress.
22. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
23. Rehearse again, if the standard is not met and time is available.
24. Recorder accomplishes the following, after the rehearsal is complete.
25. Restate any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander.
26. Estimate the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.
27. Unit provides staff updates.
28. Issue OPORD.
29. Platoon commander assembles participants to conduct an after action review (AAR).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CMDC-5205: Establish an Observation Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A position from which military observations are made, fires are directed and adjusted, and which possesses appropriate communications.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to establish observation post (OPs), or the platoon commander, as a result of his METT-TC analysis, determines that the platoon must establish OPs to provide early warning of enemy activity. The OPs can be occupied by dismounted personnel or by a vehicle (mounted OP). Enemy contact is possible or expected during emplacement of the OPs. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon commander positions the OPs to observe likely enemy avenues of approach. Platoon OP personnel provide early warning to the platoon commander in the event of enemy activity. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander selects OP sites.
2. Determine how many OPs are needed based on avenues of approach/NAIs the platoon must cover.
3. Determine whether OPs will be mounted or dismounted.
4. Select sites that provide unobstructed observation of the desired area.
5. Select sites that provide cover and concealment.
6. Verify covered and concealed routes into and out of the sites.
7. Verify positions do not skyline the observers.
8. Dismounted OPs should be emplaced within effective machine gun range of the unit and a minimum of two personnel should man a dismounted OP.
9. Review the task force mission.
10. Orient OPs by relating mission graphics to the terrain (TRPs, trigger point, break point).
11. Specify primary/secondary avenues of approach, means of communications (visual, wire, radio), covered/concealed routes to and from the OPs, and displacement criteria for the OPs.
12. Platoon OP personnel assemble required equipment for dismounted OPs.
13. Verify all required personnel equipment (kevlar helmet, weapons, MOPP gear) is on hand/serviceable.
14. Verify proper communications equipment (visual, wire, radio, digital) is on hand/serviceable.
15. Verify digital communications settings and defaults with graphics are correct or map with graphics is on hand.
16. Verify binoculars are on hand/serviceable.
17. Verify night vision goggles are on hand/serviceable.
18. Platoon OP personnel occupy dismounted site.
19. Move to OPs using covered and concealed routes.
20. Verify positions provide adequate cover and concealment until they can be improved.
21. Perform hasty occupation of the OPs.
22. Report to platoon commander when set.

23. Run hot loop (wire) to tank section.
24. TOW squad occupies mounted OP site.
25. Dismount and move forward to verify routes to the sites provide adequate cover and concealment.
26. Verify OP sites afford cover and concealment and unobstructed observation of mounted avenues of approach in platoon area.
27. Brief VCs of vehicle OPs on avenues of approach, dead space, and routes into and out of OPs.
28. Direct TOW/machine gunners to establish local security of OP sites and return to vehicles with platoon commander.
29. Brief gunners/drivers and move vehicles forward into OP positions (VCs of OP vehicles).
30. Develop range cards/sector sketches in hard copy or in digital communications and send copy to platoon commander using digital communications.
31. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant inspects dismounted/mounted OPs.
32. Verify OPs are camouflaged and afford adequate cover and concealment (including overhead cover for dismounted OPs), OP personnel are alert, and required equipment is on hand/serviceable.
33. Check OPs means of communication with TOW section/squad.
34. Check range cards/sector sketches for accuracy.
35. Platoon OP personnel observe the sector.
36. Maintain constant surveillance of the sector and/or NAI.
37. Maintain local security as necessary.
38. Send updated SITREPs to the platoon using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Identify enemy forces entering sector along designated avenues of approach.
40. Report enemy activity to platoon commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
41. Platoon OP personnel improve positions as time permits.
42. Develop a complete sector sketch or map with mission graphics, using digital communications or in hard copy.
43. Dig in to enhance cover and concealment.
44. Camouflage the site.
45. Establish wire communications.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5401: Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect itself against chemical or biological attack based on the enemy's capabilities.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a chemical attack in its area of operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit constructs or reinforces positions, briefs or inspects personnel, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander orders Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask, and gloves (MOPP 4).
2. Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
3. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expandable or readily decontaminated.
4. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
5. Vehicle crews prepare their vehicles.
6. Store water, rations, and unused equipment inside vehicles.
7. The platoon commander ensures that designated personnel conduct periodic monitoring with a chemical-agent detector.
8. conduct continuous monitoring with a chemical alarm.
9. Report results to company commander.
10. Platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for a chemical/biological attack
11. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
12. Platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
13. The platoon is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for 6 hours.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
9. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
13. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
14. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

15. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
16. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5402: React to a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect itself and respond to a chemical or biological attack based on the enemies capabilities.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Chemical/Biological weapons are being used in the area of operations. The platoon must respond immediately to a chemical or biological attack, when the unit's automatic chemical agent alarm system(s) sounds, detector paper changes color, and/or a Marine displays symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Platoon members react to the chemical or biological attack within time standards and give the appropriate alarm. All unmasked Marines put on their protective masks and other MOPP gear. They assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes and put the vehicle overpressurization system into operation. The platoon initiates use of the M256/M256A1 chemical agent detector kits to determine the type of agent. As soon as mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) permits, the platoon conducts unmasking procedures. The platoon suffers no casualties as a result of heat injury or improper preparation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack.
2. Crewmen recognize and react to a chemical/biological hazard.
3. Put on protective mask within 15 seconds.
4. Alert the remainder of the platoon.
5. Within 8 minutes, assume MOPP 4.
6. Administer self-aid and buddy-aid to crewmen with symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning.
7. Ensure individual crewmen decontaminate their skin.
8. Conduct operator's spraydown and decontamination of equipment as necessary.
9. Initiate continuous monitoring with M256/M256A1 detection kits, and submit NBC-1 and follow-up reports as needed.
10. Continue the mission.
11. Monitor for chemical/biological agents; as the situation warrants, initiate actions to reduce MOPP levels and discontinue agent monitoring.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-CBTS-5401

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations

2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
8. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
10. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
11. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
15. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
16. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
17. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
18. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5403: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes to protect itself and harden equipment against a nuclear attack and to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, or the platoon is alerted to a nuclear attack. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes immediate actions to minimize the initial effects of a nuclear detonation within its area of operations and then continues its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack.
2. The platoon commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
3. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
4. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicles.
5. Make sure the vehicles are dug in.
6. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
7. Wet down sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
8. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas (one radio is left on in the offense).
9. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicle.
10. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles.
11. Marines position themselves as low as possible within the fighting

positions.
12. Marines wear helmets with chin strap secured and brace for the blast.
13. The platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for nuclear attack.
14. Vehicles are ready, equipment is secured, and Marines are prepared.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
13. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
14. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
15. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
16. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5404: React to a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and mushroom cloud from a nuclear explosion. The platoon has taken actions to prepare for the explosion, but has sustained some casualties from the blast. Some iterations of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the task force commander is reached and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Take immediate protective actions.
2. If mounted, close vehicle doors.
3. If time permits, position the vehicle behind a protective terrain feature, and turn off the master power until the effects of the blast have passed.
4. Dismounted crewmen drop to the ground and cover exposed skin until blast effects have passed.

5. Implement SOPs and accomplish related actions.
6. Reestablish communications.
7. Prepare and forward an NBC-1 report.
8. Implement continuous monitoring.
9. Submit a SITREP to the task force commander/S-3.
10. Reorganize the platoon.
11. Evacuate casualties and fatalities.
12. Redistribute personnel as needed.
13. Conduct essential maintenance.
14. Continue the mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-CBTS-5403

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
13. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
14. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
15. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5405: Conduct Operational Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A decontamination operation consists of two techniques, the mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange and the vehicle/equipment wash-down. Decontamination is carried out by an individual and/or a unit, restricted to specific parts of operationally essential equipment, material and/or working areas, in order to minimize contact and transfer hazards and to sustain operations. This may include decontamination of the individual beyond the scope of immediate decontamination, as well as decontamination of mission-essential spares and limited terrain decontamination.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is contaminated. The platoon is directed to conduct an operational decontamination. Decontaminants and new overgarments are available and a decontamination site is selected. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon completes operational decontamination within 1 hour from start of decontamination. The platoon decontaminates without sustaining additional casualties to personnel or damage to equipment and without spreading contamination. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon occupies the decontamination site.
2. Form a coil upwind of the actual decontamination location.
3. Locate in a forward position, so that vehicles can move to and from the decontamination site in a minimum amount of time.
4. Establish all around security.
5. Determine order in which vehicles are to be decontaminated.
6. Platoon performs MOPP gear exchange.
7. Decontaminate gear.
8. Remove old overgarments and put on new overgarments.
9. Secure gear.
10. Move to the decontamination location.
11. Close all vehicle hatches.
12. Move through decontamination site and wash vehicles and equipment for two to three minutes with hot soapy water.
13. Return to the coil/defensive position immediately after decontamination.
14. Decontaminate individuals to reading level consistent with surrounding area.
15. Monitor decontaminated personnel with AN/PDR 27 for level of contamination decontaminate if required.
16. Report decontamination status to battalion commander/S-3, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TOW-CBTS-5402

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
8. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
10. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
11. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
12. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
13. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
14. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
15. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
16. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
17. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
18. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
19. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

20. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
21. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5406: React to Enemy Indirect Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures and steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of enemy indirect fires on combat power. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to an indirect fire attack. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task is conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon reacts to an indirect fire attack in accordance with standing operating procedures and appropriate field manual. If moving, the unit continues movement until at least 300 meters from the impact area. If stationary, the unit takes cover within 10 seconds or move out of the impact area within 3 minutes of the impact of the first round. The unit takes no more than 10 percent casualties. The unit reports attack to higher headquarters.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The unit reacts to indirect fire while moving.
3. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("incoming", "snowstorm", or appropriate code word).
4. Alert is pasted to all elements over the radio.
5. All personnel close doors of vehicles with in 5 seconds.
6. All elements continue direction of movement and movement, unless redirected by unit commander.
7. Platoon commander reports attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
8. The unit reacts to indirect fire while stationary.
9. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("incoming", "snowstorm", or appropriate code word).
10. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
11. All Marines are under cover within 10 seconds.
12. If directed Marines mount vehicles within 3 minutes and move out to a rally point.
13. All vehicles move to a designated rally point at distance and direction given by the unit commander.
14. Platoon commander reports attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
15. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
16. Casualties are less than 10 percent.
17. Marines or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver)

first aid on all casualties within 5 minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
18. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the situation dictates.
19. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
20. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
21. Unit continues operations as directed.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5407: Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The passive defensive measures or steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of an enemy air attack.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Hostile aircraft are observed or the platoon receives a report that hostile aircraft are operating in the area. The platoon is directed to take passive air defense measures. Weapons control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon uses attack avoidance and damage-limiting measures (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, and concealment) to avoid detection and/or engagement by hostile aircraft. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon uses attack avoidance measures and available resources (camouflage, cover, and concealment) to hide from hostile aircraft and limit vulnerability while stationary or moving.
2. Erect/install camouflage nets.
3. Use vegetation to camouflage vehicles.
4. Cover vehicle tracks.
5. Avoid silhouetting or positioning vehicles against contrasting terrain.
6. Cover shiny objects (windshield, optics) with mud, tape, burlap, sacks, or other materials.
7. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures if occupying a tactical position.
8. Disperse in an assembly area.
9. Occupy OPs (day and night) to provide early warning of approaching aircraft.

10. Establish and rehearse air attack alarms and procedures.
11. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and report to S-3 using digital communications or FM communications.
12. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures while moving.
13. Maintain prescribed march speed and interval during road marches.
14. Stagger vehicles as necessary to avoid creating a linear target.
15. Use terrain driving techniques to prevent detection.
16. Use air guards to provide all around observation, maintaining coverage until movement is completed.
17. Use appropriate air attack alarms, drills, and procedures, as necessary.
18. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and report to S-3 using FM communications.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
9. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CBTS-5408: React to Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: When the platoon observes high-performance aircraft, helicopters, or unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) that could influence its mission, it initially takes passive air defense measures then active measures to engage enemy aircraft in order to destroy it or reduce the effectiveness of its attack.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Hostile aircraft are observed or the platoon receives a report that hostile aircraft are operating in the area. The platoon is directed to take passive air defense measures. Weapons control status is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon uses attack avoidance and damage-limiting measures (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, and concealment) to avoid detection and/or engagement by hostile aircraft. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon uses attack avoidance measures and available resources (camouflage, cover, and concealment) to hide from hostile aircraft and limit vulnerability while stationary or moving.
2. Erect/install camouflage nets.
3. Use vegetation to camouflage vehicles.

4. Cover vehicle tracks.
5. Avoid silhouetting or positioning vehicles against contrasting terrain.
6. Cover windshields and windows with mud, tape, burlap, sacks, or other materials.
7. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures if occupying a tactical position.
8. Disperse in an assembly area.
9. Occupy OPs (day and night) to provide early warning of approaching aircraft.
10. Establish and rehearse air attack alarms and procedures.
11. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and reports to S-3 using FM communications and/or digital communications.
12. Platoon members visually identify hostile aircraft and alert platoon with a FM communications and/or digital communications contact report e.g. "CONTACT, BANDITS, NORTH"; on order of the platoon commander, VCs and gunners prepare to engage aircraft with a high volume of machine gun fire; hovering helicopters maybe engaged with the TOW missile; if required to engage the aircraft, the platoon executes a react-to-air-attack drill and reports aircraft to the S-3.
13. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures while moving.
14. Maintain prescribed march speed and interval during road marches.
15. If identified by aircraft during the march, vehicles disperse, seek the nearest concealed position and stop.
16. Stagger vehicles as necessary to avoid creating a linear target.
17. Use terrain driving techniques to prevent detection.
18. The platoon uses folds of the earth, depressions, and covered and concealed routes, whenever possible.
19. Use air guards to provide all around observation, maintaining coverage until movement is completed.
20. Use appropriate air attack alarms, drills, and procedures, as necessary.
21. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and reports to S-3 using FM communications and/or digital communications.
22. Platoon members visually identify hostile aircraft and alert platoon with a FM communications and/or digital communications contact report e.g. "CONTACT, BANDITS, NORTH."; on order of the platoon commander, VCs and gunners prepare to engage aircraft with a high volume of machine gun fire; hovering helicopters maybe engaged with the TOW missile; if required to engage the aircraft, the platoon executes a react-to-air-attack drill and reports aircraft to the S-3.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TOW-CBTS-5407

REFERENCES:

1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations

10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CSS-5501: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Resupply is the act of replenishing stocks of all classes of supply in order to maintain the combat power of the unit. The HQ section is responsible for and organized to process supply requests and to receive, issue, and temporarily store supplies. Distribution priorities for items in short supply are determined by the platoon commander based on recommendations by the platoon sergeant and operational requirements of the unit.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is directed to receive supplies or determines that resupply operations are necessary while conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. The platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO and has a unit SOP detailing all required communications report formats. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon successfully completes resupply operations to replenish its basic load of critical supplies and maintains security at a level consistent with METT-TC factors. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon sergeant monitors supply and reports status as required by SOP.
2. Status reports cover Class I (rations), Class II (supplies and equipment), Class III (POL), class IV (construction materials), Class V (ammunition), Class VI (personal demand items), Class VII (major end items), Class VIII (medical supplies focusing on critical times such as first aid dressings, refills for first aid kits, and combat lifesaver bags), and Class IX (repair parts).
3. The platoon should cross-level supplies before submitting resupply reports/requests.
4. Compile status reports from all VCs and sends consolidated status reports to the Platoon Sergeant and/or Platoon Commander.
5. Platoon reports personnel status, requests replacements using proper formats, and processes reassignments/replacements as required.
6. Report personnel strength and losses to the platoon commander/platoon sergeant.
7. Compile vehicle reports and sends consolidated reports to S-3/S-4 per SOP.
8. Reassign remaining personnel to fill key positions and man critical weapons.
9. Assign replacements using same criteria as above.
10. Platoon reports vehicle, equipment, fuel, and ammunition status and requests resupply or other support as necessary.
11. Report vehicle and equipment status.
12. Report maintenance, recovery and evacuation support requirements.

13. Compile vehicle reports/requests and submit consolidated reports/requests to S-3/S-4.
14. Platoon sergeant coordinates LOGPAC support/activities with supply trains NCOIC.
15. Verify platoon's personnel, vehicle, equipment fuel and ammunition status.
16. Submit specific resupply requests.
17. Coordinate for linkup at designated contact point if tailgate resupply is appropriate.
18. Coordinate LOGPAC location and other resupply details if service station resupply is appropriate.
19. Platoon performs tailgate resupply.
20. Select accessible routes affording adequate cover and concealment into and out of vehicle positions.
21. Establish and maintain local security to provide early warning of enemy activity, if necessary.
22. Meet LOGPAC at designated linkup point and lead it to the first vehicle to be resupplied.
23. Replenish basic load critical supplies as available.
24. Based on supply availability and the unit's logistical capability, the LOGPAC should carry all requested resupply items and maintenance support assets.
25. Maintain control over the LOGPAC and guides it to the next location when resupply of each vehicle is completed.
26. Monitor progress of resupply operations.
27. Lead the LOGPAC to the linkup point or another point as designated by the S-4 chief when all vehicles have completed resupply.
28. Coordinate with the S-4 chief for additional requirements.
29. Keep S-3/S-4 informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.
30. The tailgate method is the slowest resupply technique; however, it is useful during defensive and security missions because stealth and security can be more easily maintained (depending on METT-TC factors) than with the service station method.
31. Platoon performs service station resupply.
32. Move to the resupply location.
33. Establish local security for LOGPAC activities.
34. Determine which section will be resupplied first and when each section will move if platoon does not move together.
35. Determine order of movement to the resupply location if platoon moves together.
36. Rotate to different supply points as directed to replenish basic load of supplies (as available).
37. Coordinate with the S-4 chief for additional requirements.
38. Keep S-3/S-4 informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Platoon performs refuel on the move (ROM).
40. Move to the ROM site.
41. Refuel IAW OPORD/FRAGO (OPORD/FRAGO should designate location, time and amount of fuel per vehicle).
42. Maintain local security and dispersion.
43. Keep the S-3/S-4 informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.

RELATED EVENTS:

0352-MOBL-2401 0352-EMPL-2301

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
6. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
11. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
12. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CSS-5502: Prepare and Evacuate Casualties

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: It is the vehicle commander's responsibility to make sure that wounded in action (WIA) crewmen receive first aid and that the platoon commander or platoon sergeant is notified of all casualties. The use of crewmen who are trained as combat lifesavers is absolutely critical. As a minimum, one crew member of each squad should be a trained combat lifesaver.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting continuous operations as part of a battalion task force and sustains casualties during combat. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize casualties and evacuates casualties to the higher headquarters casualty collection point.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon identifies casualties requiring evacuation.
2. Crewmen administer combat lifesaving techniques.
3. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant report casualties to the S-3/S-4.
4. The platoon assists in the evacuation of casualties.
5. Prepare casualties for evacuation by air or ground transportation to aid station or clearing station.
6. Request helicopter or ground evacuation of casualties.
7. Select and mark the best available covered and concealed landing zone (air evac only).
8. Extract casualties from vehicles or dangerous situation without causing further injury.
9. Move casualties by best available means to LZ or ground pickup point and continue treatment.
10. Assist the flight or ambulance crew with casualty loading.
11. Retain classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays) previously controlled by casualty.

12. Maintain security of landing site or pickup point including coordinating any suppressive fires required.
13. Platoon evacuates contaminated casualties.
14. Decontamination is initiated prior to loading.
15. If decontamination is impossible, the hazards en route are minimized by covering casualties.
16. Platoon evacuates EPW casualties by the same standard as U.S. casualties.
17. Security of EPWs is continuously maintained.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
4. FM 4-02.7 Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-02G First Aid
7. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
8. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
9. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-CSS-5503: Process Enemy Prisoners of War

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: If enemy prisoners want to surrender, it is the TOW platoon's responsibility to take them into custody and control them until they can be evacuated. EPWs are excellent sources of combat intelligence; however, this information will be of tactical value only if the prisoners are processed and evacuated to the rear quickly. The unit SOP or company/team OPORD should designate specific EPW handling procedures, such as collection points, responsibilities for safeguarding prisoners, and procedures for movement of prisoners.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. During the conduct of operations enemy soldiers are captured. The platoon is responsible for processing EPWs in accordance with (IAW) the commander's intent, OPORD, and unit standard operating procedure (SOP). The platoon is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.